

# **Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita**

Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

2<sup>nd</sup> Edition

Geoffrey Steadman

Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita  
Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

2<sup>nd</sup> edition

© 2017 by Geoffrey Steadman

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The author has made an online version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at [creativecommons.org](http://creativecommons.org).

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter, and distribute this work freely under the following conditions:

- (1) You must attribute the work to the author (but not in any way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
- (2) You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- (3) If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

ISBN-13: 978-0-9913860-2-4

Published by Geoffrey Steadman  
Cover Design: David Steadman

Fonts: Times New Roman

[geoffreysteadman@gmail.com](mailto:geoffreysteadman@gmail.com)

# Table of Contents

	Pages
Introduction to <i>Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita</i> .....	v-vi
How to Use This Commentary.....	vii
Running Core Vocabulary List.....	viii-xv
Abbreviations.....	xvi
Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives.....	130-31
Verb Synopses.....	132-39
Subjunctives.....	140
Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List.....	141-48

## Facilities Ab Urbe Condita

### Part I

1. Aeneas.....	1	11. Tarquinius Superbus.....	33
2. The Founding of Alba Longa.....	4	12. The Banishment of Tarquinius.....	42
3. Romulus and Remus.....	5	13. Horatius Cocles.....	46
4. The Founding of Rome.....	8	14. Mucius Scaevola.....	49
5. The Sabine Women.....	10	15. Cloelia.....	51
6. Numa Pompilius.....	15	16. The Secession of the Plebs.....	52
7. Tullus Hostilius.....	18	17. Menenius Agrippa.....	54
8. Ancus Marcius.....	21	18. Cincinnatus.....	55
9. Tarquinius Priscus.....	24	19. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC.....	58
10. Servius Tullius.....	29		

### Part II

20. Pyrrhus and Fabricius.....	65	26. Gaius Marius.....	91
21. Regulus and the 1 <sup>st</sup> Punic War.....	69	27. Lucius Cornelius Sulla.....	96
22. Hannibal and the 2 <sup>nd</sup> Punic War.....	74	28. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus.....	102
23. Quintus Fabius Maximus.....	77	29. Gaius Julius Caesar.....	107
24. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.	79	30. Marcus Tullius Cicero.....	121
25. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE....	88		



## Introduction to *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*

This book, just as its counterpart *Ritchie's Fabulae Faciles*, should be on the bedstand of every intermediate Latin student. This volume is a graded reader of Roman legends and biographies, which the modern authors Frederick Sandford and Harry Scott heavily adapted in part from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita* Books 1 and 2 and in part from Charles Lhomond's 1779 *De viris illustibus urbis Romae a Romulo ad Augustum*. The purpose of the stories is to give students who have already completed their study of elementary grammar additional practice before reading authentic Latin in Caesar's *Gallic War*. Sanford and Scott's book begins with the travels of Aeneas, continues with accounts of the seven kings and the heroics of the early Republic, traces the main figures of the Punic wars, and finishes with several short biographies including those of Caesar and Cicero.

The Latin stories in this commentary were first published in 1919 by Sandford and Scott in a volume called *A Junior Latin Reader*, which contained just the Latin text with a complete vocabulary in the glossary. In 1922, the authors greatly expanded the volume to include brief grammatical notes and vocabulary on the same page as the Latin text. The book was republished once again in 1929 under a new title, *A Second-Year Latin Reader*. In 1992 Gilbert Lawall and David Perry copied these same stories verbatim and added their own vocabulary and grammatical notes in a textbook entitled *Fabulae Romanae*. To my knowledge, the authors of *Fabulae Romanae* do not credit Sandford and Scott or their textbook as the source of the Latin stories.

The aim of this current edition is to make Sandford and Scott's stories even more accessible to intermediate-level Latin readers. To accomplish this goal, I have adopted the best features of Clyde Pharr's *Aeneid*. Below the ten lines of Latin text on each page is a commentary divided into halves. The top half includes all of the corresponding vocabulary that occur four or fewer times in the book, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The bottom half is devoted to grammatical notes, which are organized according to line numbers and arranged in two columns. One of the advantages of this format is that it allows me to include as much

information as possible on a page and at the same time ensure that the commentary entries are distinct and immediately accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a running core word list at the beginning of this book that includes all words occurring five or more times. An alphabetized form of this same list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the running core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Latin text and facing notes and not need to turn a page or consult outside dictionaries.

Although this volume may be used as a supplement in the classroom, I hope that teachers will encourage students to keep a copy by their bedsides for casual reading and rereading during the summer months and winter breaks. While there is no substitute for meaningful classical and medieval Latin texts, much authentic Latin prose still remains beyond the reach for intermediate level students. This current commentary is made in the hopes that the short sections of connected prose will help readers of varying abilities develop reading proficiency and provide them with the knowledge and confidence necessary to read authentic Latin authors.

Geoffrey Steadman, Ph.D.  
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com  
geoffreysteadman.com

## How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

### 1. Master the core vocabulary list as soon as possible.

**Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary and forms before you begin reading.** Start with an intensive review of the running core list on the next page. Although a substantial number of core vocabulary words come within the first few lessons of the commentary, readers have encountered most of these words in first-year Latin and should be able to master the list quickly. Once readers have reviewed these words, I recommend that they consult and memorize slightly less frequent words in *Fabulae Faciles* as they encounter them.

### 2. Read actively.

**Read in Latin word order.** Initially, readers have a tendency both (a) to scan through the entire Latin sentence quickly to order to attain a sense of the constructions and (b) to treat the sentence as a puzzle and jump around the passage from subject to verb to object and so on. As you acquire more vocabulary and your comfort with the Latin increases, make reading in Latin word order your primary method. It is a lot of fun and with persistence very satisfying as well.

**Develop the habit of making educated guesses as you read.** The purpose of the graded reader to provide you with an opportunity to encounter difficult constructions, particularly subjunctive clauses and indirect discourse, so frequently that you cannot help but to develop proficiency identifying and translating them. Make educated guesses as you read. If you guess correctly, the commentary will reaffirm your knowledge of the Latin. If you answer incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and therefore more capable of correcting them.

### 3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.

Repeated readings not only help you commit Latin to memory but also increase your ability to read the Latin as Latin. Always read the words out loud (or at least whisper them to yourself). While you may be inclined to translate the text into English as you reread, develop the habit of reading Latin as Latin.

### 4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.

This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

## Running Core Vocabulary (Words 8 or More Times)

The following running core vocabulary list includes all words that occur eight or more times in *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*. These dictionary entries are not included in the commentary itself and therefore must be learned as soon as possible. The number in the left column indicates the page where the word first occurs. The number at the end of each entry indicates the frequency of the word in the commentary. For an alphabetized list, please consult the glossary.

page

- 1 **Aenēās, -ae m.**: Aeneas, 7
- 1 **ager, agrī m.**: land, field, territory, 19
- 1 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum**: drive, lead, spend, 26
- 1 **annus, -ī m.**: year, 36
- 1 **appellō (1)**: call (by name), name, 17
- 1 **Asia, -ae f.**: Asia Minor, 9
- 1 **atque**: and, and also, and even, 43
- 1 **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum**: to take, seize, 25
- 1 **clārus, -a, -um**: clear, distinguished, famous 8
- 1 **constituō, -ere, -ūi, -ūtum**: decide, establish, 13
- 1 **cum**: with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 127
- 1 **dux, ducis m/f.**: leader, guide, chieftain, 28
- 1 **et**: and, also, even, 179
- 1 **ē, ex**: out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 58
- 1 **filius, -ī m.**: son, child, 22
- 1 **ibi**: there, in that place, 13
- 1 **in**: in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 256
- 1 **inter**: between, among (+ acc.), 27
- 1 **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum**: kill, slay, 26
- 1 **is, ea, id**: this, that; he, she, it, 167
- 1 **Ītalia, -ae f.**: Italy, 17
- 1 **Latīnus, -a, -um**: Latin (people); or King Latīnus 20
- 1 **locus -ī m.** (pl. loca): place, region, situation 16
- 1 **multitudō, -tūdinis f.**: multitude, 10
- 1 **omnis, omne**: every, all, 59
- 1 **parō (1)**: prepare, make (ready), 13
- 1 **pars, partis, f.**: part; direction; faction, 26
- 1 **pauci, -ae, -a**: little, few, scanty, 10
- 1 **post**: after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 15
- 1 **praeda, -ae f.**: plunder, spoils (often, cattle) 7
- 1 **que**: and, 149

- 1 **quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?)**: who, which, that, 253
- 1 **rēx, rēgis m.**: king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 83
- 1 **sed**: but, moreover, however, 46
- 1 **sum, esse, fuī, futūrum**: to be, 412
- 1 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum**: to hold, keep, 8
- 1 **ubi**: where, when, 17
- 1 **urbs, urbis, f.**: city, 59
- 1 **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum**: come, go, 29
- 2 **ā, ab, abs**: (away) from, out of, 87
- 2 **ante**: before, in front of ; adv. before, 8
- 2 **auxilium, -ī n.**: help, aid, assistance, 11
- 2 **bellum, -ī, n.**: war, 53
- 2 **condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum**: to found, store away, hide, 6
- 2 **deinde**: then, thereupon, 31
- 2 **dō, dare, dedī, datum**: give, put; grant, 36
- 2 **duo, duae, duo**: two, 19
- 2 **Etrūscus, -a, -um**: Etruscan, 13
- 2 **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum**: make, do, 67
- 2 **ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum**: carry, bear, endure, 22
- 2 **filia, -iae f.**: daughter, child, 12
- 2 **habeō, -ere, habuī, -itum**: have, hold, 26
- 2 **īdem, eadem, idem**: the same, 8
- 2 **ille, illa, illud**: that (famous); he, she, it, 32
- 2 **inde**: from there, then, afterward, 30
- 2 **iūs, iūris n.**: justice, law, right, 20
- 2 **māter, mātris f.**: mother, 11
- 2 **mātrimōnium, -ī n.**: marriage, 7
- 2 **nōmen, nōminis, n.**: name, 19
- 2 **novus, -a, -um**: new, 19
- 2 **pāx, pācis f.**: peace, 31
- 2 **petō, -ere, -īvī, petītum**: to seek, head for, 20
- 2 **postēā**: after this, afterwards, 26
- 2 **sub**: under, 8
- 2 **suus, -a, -um**: his, her, its, their (own), 38
- 2 **tantus, -a, -um**: so great, so much, so large, 14
- 2 **tōtus -a, -um**: whole, entire, 12
- 2 **Turnus, -ī m.**: Turnus, 9
- 2 **ut**: as, when (+ ind.); so that, in order that, 76
- 2 **uxor, uxōris f.**: wife, spouse, 10

- 2 **victor, -ōris m.**: conquerer, vanquisher, 9  
2 **vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum**: conquer, defeat, 19  
3 **ad**: to, toward; near, 108  
3 **adversus, -a, -um**: opposite, facing (acc) 13  
3 **anteā**: before, earlier, formerly, previously, 9  
3 **arma, -ōrum n.**: arms, equipment, tools, 14  
3 **crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**: believe, trust; lend, 7  
3 **deus, -ī m.**: god, divinity, deity, 10  
3 **enim**: for, indeed, in truth, 24  
3 **gēns, gentis f.**: clan, race, nation, herd, 9  
3 **igitur**: therefore, then, accordingly, 14  
3 **multus, -a, -um**: much, many, abundant, 24  
3 **nōn**: not, by no means, not at all, 47  
3 **possum, posse, potuī**: be able, can, avail, 33  
3 **pugna, -ae f.**: fight, 10  
3 **sē**: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 89  
3 **tamen**: nevertheless, however, 22  
3 **trānseō, -īre, -ī (īvī), -itum**: pass (by), 14  
3 **uterque, utraque, utrumque**: each (of two), both, 6  
4 **Albānus, -a, -um**: of Alba Longa, Albans, 10  
4 **alius, -a, -ud**: other, another, else, 29  
4 **frāter, -tris m.**: brother, 10  
4 **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum**: carry (on), wage, 15  
4 **hic, haec, hoc**: this, that; he, she, it, 62  
4 **honor, -ōris m.**: honor; offering, sacrifice, 8  
4 **imperium, -ī n.**: power to command, rule, 23  
4 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**: -self; the very, 29  
4 **legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum**: read, choose, 7  
4 **mons, montis m.**: mountain, mount, 11  
4 **Numitor, -ōris, m.**: Numitor, 7  
4 **per**: through, over, across, 28  
4 **propter**: on account of, because of, 8  
4 **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**: certain, 22  
4 **rēgnō (1)**: to rule, reign, 17  
4 **rēgnūm, -ī n.**: kingdom, realm, power, 21  
4 **relinquō, -ere, -līqui, -lictum**: leave behind, 10  
4 **tum**: then, at that time, 34  
5 **ēducō (1)**: to bring up, rear, train, 5  
5 **forte**: by chance, 11

- 5 **itaque**: and so, 12  
5 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**: to order, command, 36  
5 **nascor, nascī, nātus**: be born, grow, 14  
5 **nec**: and not, nor; nec...nec (neither...nor), 16  
5 **neque**: and not; neither...nor, 14  
5 **pater, patris, m.**: father, 40  
5 **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum**: put, place, 9  
5 **prīmus -a -um**: first, 30  
5 **puer, puerī, m.**: boy, 15  
5 **Remus, -ī m.**: Remus, 12  
5 **Rōmulus, -ī m.**: Romulus, 22  
5 **Tiberis, is m.**: Tiber, 13  
6 **aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertum**: open, disclose, 5  
6 **apud**: among, in the presence of , 9  
6 **audiō, -ire, -ivī, audītum**: to hear, listen to, 10  
6 **coepī, coepisse, coeptum**: begin, 13  
6 **expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**: set forth, explain, 5  
6 **impetus, -ūs m.**: attack, onset, assault, 8  
6 **īrātus, -a, -um**: anger, 6  
6 **perīculum, -ī n.**: risk, danger, peril, 8  
6 **quoque**: also, 18  
6 **rēs, reī, f.**: thing, matter, affair, business, 55  
7 **animus, -ī m.**: soul, spirit, breath; pride, 17  
7 **ita**: so, thus, 33  
7 **iuvenis, -is m.**: youth, young man, 11  
7 **nōbilis, -e**: noble, 10  
7 **restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum**: replace, restore, 9  
8 **addō, -ere, -didi, -ditum**: to bring to, add, 7  
8 **cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum**: desire, long for, 8  
8 **dum**: while, as long as, until, 16  
8 **rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum**: to seize, snatch, 6  
8 **sōlus, -a, -um**: alone, only, lone, sole, 13  
8 **verbum, -ī n.**: word, speech, 8  
9 **causa, -ae f.**: reason, legal case; causā, for the sake of, 8  
9 **creō (1)**: to create, 21  
9 **etiam**: besides, also, even, 29  
9 **fīnitimus, -a, -um**: neighboring, bordering, 10  
9 **Rōma, -ae f.**: Rome, 54  
9 **populus, -ī m.**: people; population, 35

- 9 **profugiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** flee, escape, 8
- 9 **vocō (1):** call, name; invite, summon, 9
- 10 **ac:** and, and also, 17
- 10 **cīvitās, cīvitātis f.:** city-state; citizenship, 16
- 10 **coniūnx, -iugis m/f:** husband, wife, spouse, 9
- 10 **iam:** now, already, soon, 28
- 10 **lēgātus, -ī m.:** ambassador, envoy, legate, 21
- 10 **līberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 9
- 10 **lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6
- 10 **medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 8
- 10 **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum:** to send, let go, 26
- 10 **nam:** for, 12
- 10 **pār, paris:** equal, similar, even, 8
- 10 **Rōmānus, -a, -um:** Roman, 91
- 10 **Sabīnus, -a, -um:** Sabine, 6
- 10 **statuō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtum:** decide, establish, set up, 8
- 10 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see, 27
- 10 **vīs, vīs, f.:** force, power; *pl.* **vīrēs,** strength, 13
- 11 **at:** but; mind you; but, you say, 9
- 11 **aut:** or , 17
- 11 **dē:** (down) from, about, concerning (abl.), 29
- 11 **inquam, inquis, inquit:** to say, 19
- 11 **spēs, -eī f.:** hope, 8
- 11 **tempus, -poris n.:** time, 17
- 11 **quamquam:** although, 8
- 11 **virgō, virginis f.:** maiden, virgin, 11
- 12 **arx, arcis m.:** citadel, hilltop, 5
- 12 **diēs, -ēī m./f.:** day, time, season, 24
- 12 **exercitus, -ūs m.:** army, 37
- 12 **hostis, -is m./f.:** stranger, enemy, foe, 26
- 12 **maximus, -a, -um:** greatest; especially 15
- 12 **mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 5
- 12 **orior, orīrī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 8
- 12 **resistō, -ere, -stītī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7
- 12 **tēlum, -ī n.:** weapon, arrow, spear, 6
- 12 **vir, virī m.:** man, male, 20
- 12 **volō, velle, voluī:** will, wish, be willing, 18
- 12 **vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 7
- 13 **caput, capitīs, n.:** head; life, 18

- 13 **dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum:** say, speak, tell, 37
- 13 **sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 6
- 13 **sequor, -ī, secūtus sum:** follow, attend, pursue, 17
- 13 **ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 18
- 14 **cīvis, -is m/f:** citizen, fellow citizen, 12
- 15 **lēx, lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 11
- 14 **nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, not any, 12
- 14 **nuntiō (1):** announce, 7
- 14 **proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, next, 5
- 15 **claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum:** to close, enclose, 6
- 15 **consensus, -ūs m.:** agreement, consent, 5
- 15 **Numa, -ae m.:** Numa, 6
- 15 **plebs, plēbis, f.:** common people, masses, 31
- 15 **prō:** before, in front of, for, 11
- 15 **senātus, -ūs f.:** senate, 38
- 16 **īnstituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtum:** set up, establish, 12
- 16 **sacer, sacra, sacram:** sacred, holy, 8
- 17 **trēs, tria:** three, 12
- 18 **Cūriātius, -ī m.:** Curiatius, 7
- 18 **ferōx, -ōcis:** fierce, savage, 8
- 18 **moriōr, morī, mortuum:** to die; *mortuus*, dead 13
- 18 **proelium, -īī n.:** battle, 19
- 19 **alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), second, 7
- 19 **conficiō, -ere:** to finish (off), accomplish, 10
- 19 **fugiō, -ere, fūgī:** to flee, hurry away, 11
- 19 **magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; important, 27
- 19 **mīlēs, mīlitis m.:** soldier, 16
- 19 **superior, -ius:** higher, upper, 6
- 20 **victoria, -ae f.:** victory, 9
- 21 **Ancus, -ī m.:** Ancus, 6
- 21 **Lucumō, Lucumōnis m.:** Lucumo, 5
- 21 **pōns, pontis m.:** bridge, 7
- 22 **acciō -ere -cēpī -ceptum:** receive, accept, 12
- 22 **cōsilium, -īī n.:** plan, advice; council, 14
- 22 **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus:** lead, draw, 10
- 22 **iter, itineris n.:** way, road, journey, 11
- 22 **L.:** Lucius, 13
- 22 **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9
- 22 **Tanaquil, -is f.:** Tanaquil, 6

- 22 **Tarquinius, -ī m.**: Tarquinius, 46  
24 **forum, -ī n.**: forum, 8  
24 **opus, -eris n.**: work, deed, toil, 9  
24 **pūblicus, -a, -um**: public, of the people 19  
25 **aqua, -ae f.**: water, 8  
25 **praesidium, -īī n.**: garrison, protection, 5  
25 **proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum**: set out, depart, 16  
25 **rēgia, -ae f.**: palace, 9  
25 **Servius, -ī m.**: Servius, 13  
25 **servus, -ī, m.**: slave, 6  
25 **tam**: so, so much, so very, such, 8  
25 **vērus, -a, -um**: true, real, 8  
27 **sī**: if (only), whether, in case that, 18  
28 **gravis, -e**: heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 8  
28 **redeō, -ire, -ivī**: go back, return, come back, 22  
29 **princēps, -cipis m.**: leader; foremost, first 9  
30 **conciliō (1)**: win over, unite, 9  
30 **domus, -ī f.**: house, home, dwelling, 9  
31 **Cūria, -ae f.**: senate house, Curia, 7  
31 **ego**: I, 14  
32 **bonus, -a, -um**: good, kind, useful, 9  
32 **corpus, corporis, n.**: body, 10  
32 **via, -ae, f.**: way, road, 9  
33 **exsilium, -īī n.**: exile, 5  
34 **gladius, -ī m.**: sword, 6  
34 **nox, noctis, f.**: night, 10  
34 **quidem**: indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 10  
36 **Gabīī, -ōrum m.**: Gabii (town), 6  
36 **Sex.**: Sextus, 5  
36 **Sextus, -ī m.**: Sextus, 4  
37 **Gabīnus, -a, -um**: of Gabii, 6  
37 **nihil**: nothing, 13  
37 **summus, -a, -um**: highest, greatest, top of, 8  
39 **Brūtus, -ī m.**: Brutus, 13  
42 **Collātinus, -ī m.**: Collatinus, 5  
44 **castra, -ōrum n.**: camp, 12  
45 **cōsul, -is m.**: consul, 33  
46 **Clūsīnus, -a, -um**: of Clusium (town), 5  
46 **flūmen, -inis n.**: river, stream, 12

- 46 **nē**: lest, that not, no, not, 12
- 46 **Porsena, -ae m.**: Lars Porsena, 8
- 48 **virtūs, -ūtis f.**: valor, manhood, excellence, 12
- 49 **contrā**: against , 11
- 49 **Mūcius, -ī m.**: Mucius, 7
- 49 **adulēscens, -ntis m./f.**: youth, 9
- 52 **magistratus, -ūs m.**: magistrate, officer, 5
- 53 **concordia, -ae f.**: harmony, agreement, 8
- 53 **pecūnia, -ae f.**: money, 8
- 54 **tribūnus, -ī m.**: tribune, officer, 11
- 54 **voluptās, -tatis f.**: pleasure, delight, 8
- 55 **Quīncius, -ī m.**: Quintius, 5
- 56 **dictātor, -oris m.**: dictator, 16
- 58 **Gallus, -a, -um**: Gallic; Gaul, 17
- 58 **superō (1)**: to overcome, defeat, 12
- 60 **imperātor, -ōris m.**: commander, 10
- 61 **autem**: however, moreover, 16
- 63 **patria, -ae f.**: fatherland, country, 9
- 65 **captīvus, -ī m.**: captive, 10
- 65 **Fabricius, -ī m.**: Fabricius, 10
- 65 **Pyrrhus, -ī m.**: Pyrrhus (King of Epirus), 8
- 67 **vīta, -ae f.**: life; livelihood, 9
- 69 **Carthāginiēnsis, -is m.**: Carthaginian, 14
- 69 **Āfrica, -ae f.**: Africa, 12
- 69 **Rēgulus, -ī m.**: Regulus, 9
- 70 **Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.**: Carthage, 12
- 74 **Hispānia, -ae f.**: Hispania, 16
- 74 **Hannibal, -is m.**: Hannibal, 10
- 77 **Fabius, -ī m.**: Fabius, 9
- 79 **Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis m.**: Scipio, 27
- 84 **ingēns (1)**: huge, immense, vast, 8
- 91 **Marius, -ī m.**: Marius, 24
- 92 **Sulla, -ae m.**: Sulla, 23
- 93 **cīvilis, -e**: civil, of a citizen, 10
- 102 **Pompeius, -ī m.**: Pompey, 26
- 105 **Caesar, -is m.**: Caesar, 31
- 111 **Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.**: Cicero. 19

## Abbreviations

1s, 1p	1 <sup>st</sup> person singular, 1 <sup>st</sup> plural	ll.	lines
abs.	absolute	m.	masculine
acc.	accusative	n.	neuter
act.	active	nom.	nominative
adj.	adjective	obj.	object
adv.	adverb	p. pl.	plural
app.	appositive	PPP	perfect passive participle
comp.	comparative	pple.	participle
dat.	dative	pass	passive
dep.	deponent	pf.	perfect
d.o.	direct object	plpf.	pluperfect
f.	feminine	pred.	predicate
fut.	future	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pres.	present
imp.	imperative	pron.	pronoun
impf.	imperfect	reflex.	reflexive
imper.	imperative	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative	s, sg.	singular
i.o.	indirect object	seq.	sequence
inf.	infinitive	subj.	subject or subjunctive
inter.	interrogative	superl.	superlative
l.	line	voc.	vocative

“There is properly no history, only biography.”

-Ralph Waldo Emerson

“To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.”

-von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff

## Three Period of Roman History

- 753 – 509      Roman Kings
- 509 – 31        Roman Republic
- 31 – AD 476     Imperial Period

## Seven Legendary Kings of Rome

- 753 – 715      Romulus
- 715 – 673      Numa Pompilius
- 673 – 642      Tullus Hostilius
- 641 – 617      Ancus Martius
- 617 – 579      Lucius Tarquinius Priscus
- 578 – 535      Servius Tullius
- 535 – 509      Lucius Tarquinius Superbus

## Early Roman Republic

- 509              First Consuls, Lucius Junius Brutus and Collatinus
- 508              King Porsenna besieges Rome for Tarquinus Superbus
  - Horatius Cocles
  - Mucius Scaevola
  - Cloelia
- 494              First Secession of the Plebs and Menenius Agrippa
- 458              Cincinnatus as Dictator
- 390              Gauls sack Rome

## 1a. Aeneas

Ōlim in Asiā erat urbs antīqua, quae Troia appellāta est. Eam 1  
urbem Graecī decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque cēpērunt.  
Priamō rēge filiīsque interfectīs, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās,  
quī inter clārissimōs dēfensōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucīs comitibus  
ex urbe effūgit; cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in 5  
Ītaliā migrāre constituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Italiae ubi erat urbs  
Laurentum. Ibi cum Troiānī praedam ex agrīs agerent, Latīnus rēx  
Aborīginēsque, quī ea loca tenēbant, agrōs dēfendere parāvērunt.  
Sed Latīnus, postquam in colloquiō orīginem multitūdinis ducisque 10

**Aborīginēs, -um m.:** Aborigines, 2

**Aenēās, -ae m.:** Aeneas, 7

**antīquus, -a, -um:** ancient, 1

**cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -actūm:** to collect, compel, 6

**colloquium, -ī n.:** conversation, conference, 4

**comes, -itis m. f.:** companion, comrade, 3

**decem:** ten, 2

**dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēnsūm:** to defend, 6

**dēfensor, -ōris m.:** defender, 1

**deleō, -ere, -ēvī, delētūm:** to destroy, 1

**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee away, escape, 2

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 4

**Laurentēs, -um m.:** Laurentines, 2

**migrō (1):** to travel, migrate, 3

**obsideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum:** beset, besiege 5

**ōlim:** once, formerly, 3

**orīgō, orīginis f.:** origin, 1

**postquam:** after, when, 6

**praeda, -ae f.:** plunder, spoils 7

**Priamus, -ī m.:** Priam, 1

**profugus, -ī m.:** a fugitive, refugee, 2

**septem:** seven, 4

**sex:** six, 1

**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6

**Troia, -ae f.:** Troy, 1

**Troiānī, -ōrum m.:** Trojans, 4

1 **Troia:** nom. pred.

**eam urbem:** *this city*; is, ea, id before a noun that it modifies is a demonstrative adj. and may be translated as ‘this,’ or ‘that’ in the sg. and ‘these’ or ‘those’ in the plural.

2 **decem annōs:** *for...;* acc. duration of time  
**tandemque:** enclitic *-que*, ‘and,’ attaches to the end of a word and is equivalent to the word ‘et’ preceding the word: ‘et tandem’

3 **Priamō rēge...interfectīs:** abl. absolute with the PPP of interficiō; note how the enclitic *-que* joins the two subjects of the abl. abs.: ‘Priamō rege et filiīs’

4 **inter:** *among...;* translate as ‘between’ with two items or as ‘among’ with more than two  
**clārissimōs:** superlative degree, clārus

**fuerat:** plpf. sum

5 **cum...coēgisset:** *when...;* plpf. subjunctive of cōgō, cōgere; translate this verb as one

would a plpf. indicative

**post:** *after...;* a preposition governing an acc., while postquam, ‘after,’ in line 10 is a conjunction introducing a temporal clause

7 **eam partem:** see note regarding eam urbem in line 1

8 **Laurentum:** in apposition to urbs

**cum...agerent:** *while...drove;* impf. subj.

agō: translate the verb in the impf. tense. We may imagine praeda, ‘loot,’ as a treasure chest of gold or silver, but in the ancient world ‘cattle’ was a moveable form of wealth and often the source of plunder, as it is in the passage above. The idiom praedam agere is ‘to drive away the cattle,’

9 **ea loca:** *these...;* neut. pl. see note for line 1

10 **ducisque:** et ducis

## 1b. Aeneas

cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque posteā eī Lāvīniam filiam in mātrimōnium dedit. Troiānī urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnum appellāvit. Deinde Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, cui Lāvīnia ante adventum Aenēae dēspōnsa erat, bellō Latīnum Troiānōsque aggressus est.

15

Victī sunt Rutulī, sed victōrēs ducem Latīnum āmīsērunt. Inde Turnus auxilium petiit ab Etrūscīs, quī tōtam Italiam fāmā nōminis suī implēverant; illī metuentēs novam urbem multitūdine et opibus crescentem laetī auxilium tulērunt. Aenēās in tantō discrīmine, ut Aborīginēs Troiānōsque sub eōdem iūre atque nōmine habēret, 20

**Aborīginēs, -um m.**: Aborigines, 2  
**adventus, -ūs m.**: arrival, approach, 2  
**Aenēās, -ae m.**: Aeneas, 7  
**aggredior, -i, -gressus**: go to, attack, 3  
**āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum**: lose, let go, 6  
**cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum**: learn, know, 4  
**condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum**: found, store, 6  
**crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum**: grow, increase, 4  
**dēspondō, -ere, -spondī**: to betroth, 3  
**discrīmen, -crīminis n.**: crisis, peril, 5

- 11 **Aenēā**: abl., Aenēās is 1<sup>st</sup> decl. masc.  
ē: to him; dat. sg. is, ea, id; although the placement at the beginning of the clause suggests that eī is nom. pl., this pronoun is a dat. sg.; see pg. 130 for the forms  
posteā: an adv., compare post, postquam
- 12 **quam...Lāvīnum appellāvit**: called (x) (y); this verb governs a double accusative construction (acc. dir. object and acc. pred.)
- 13 **uxōris**: i.e. Lavinia, mentioned in line 11; Aeneas' first wife and mother to the son Ascanius was Creusa, who was killed as the family escaped the fall of Troy
- 14 **cui**: to whom; dat. sg.; note that pronouns very often have an ‘-i’ in the dat.
- 15 **Latīnum**: i.e. Latinus, king of the Latins  
**aggressus est**: pf. aggredior: the passive endings in the dictionary entry indicates that this verb is deponent and therefore should be translated as pf. active with acc. object
- 16 **victī sunt**: pf. pass. vincō; Rutulī is subject

**fāma, -ae f.**: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7  
**impleō, -ere, -evī, implētum**: to fill , 3  
**laetus, -a, -um**: happy, joyful, glad, 4  
**Lāvīnia, -ae f.**: Lavinia, 3  
**Lāvīnum, -ī n.**: Lavinium , 2  
**mātrimōnium, -ī n.**: marriage, 7  
**metuō, -ere, -uī**: to fear, dread, 3  
**ops, opis f.**: power; pl. resources, influence, 6  
**Rutulus, -ī m.**: Rutulians, 3  
**Troiānī, -ōrum m.**: Trojans, 4

- 17 **ducem Latīnum**: acc. sg. Latinus  
18 **sui**: gen. sg. of the reflexive possessive adj. suus, -a, -um modifying nōminis; since the antecedent of a reflexive is always the subject, translate this adj. as ‘their own’  
illī: nom. pl. ille; i.e. Etruscans  
**metuentēs**: pres. pple metuō  
**multitūdine et opibus**: in (respect to)...and in (respect to)...; abl. of respect qualifies and clarifies the meaning of an adjective, in this case, the pres. pple crescentem
- 19 **laetī**: happily; ‘happy,’ adjectives in the nom. are often translated as adverbs  
**tulērunt**: 3p pf. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum  
**ut**: so that...might....; purpose + impf. subj.
- 20 **Aborīginēs**: i.e. the native inhabitants; in this case, the Latin people  
**eō-dēm**: abl. sg., īdem, eadem, idem (is, ea, id + indeclinable –dem)  
**atque**: ‘and,’ or, as often, it can emphasize the second term: ‘and even’ or ‘and also’

## 1c. Aeneas

Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit. Cum adversus Etrūscōs sē moenibus dēfendere posset, tamen in aciem copiās ēdūxit. Etrūscī victī sunt; victōrēs tamen ducem ut anteā āmīsērunt; post pugnam enim Aenēam reperiēre nōn potuērunt; multī igitur eum ad deōs trānsīsse crēdidērunt.

25

aciēs, -ēt f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum: lose, let go, 6  
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5  
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7  
dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēnsum: to defend, 6

- 21 **utramque**: acc. sg., uterque  
**appellāvit**: governs a double acc. (acc. dir. obj. and acc. pred.), see note for line 11  
**cum...posset, tamen...**: although...; cum clause + impf. subj. possum. When a cum-clause is followed by the word ‘tamen’ in the main clause, clause is concessive in sense and cum should be translated as ‘although’  
**sē**: himself; reflexive, the antecedent is the subject, Aeneas  
23 **victī sunt**: 3p pf. pass. vincō

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum: lead out, draw, 1  
moenia, -ōrum n.: walls, 2  
reperiō -ire -pperi -pertum: find, discover, 3  
uterque, utra-, utrum-: each , both, 6

- ut anteā**: as before; ut introduces a clause of comparison  
24 **enim**: for...; or ‘indeed;’ enim is a postpositive (placed second) but should be translated first in English  
**potuērunt**: 3p pf. ind. possum  
**multī**: a substantive, an adjective which functions as a noun: if masculine, add the word ‘men’ or ‘people,’ if feminine, add ‘women,’ if neuter, add ‘things’  
**eum...trānsīsse**: that he...; ind. disc., eum is acc. subject; pf. inf. of trānseō

## 2. The Founding of Alba Longa

Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascānius, Aenēae filius,adolēvit. 1  
Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīniī multitūdinem mātrī urbem  
relīquit; ipse novam aliam urbem sub Albānō monte condidit, quae  
Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascāniū imperium  
Albānum gessērunt. Quīdam ex hīs, cui nōmen Proca erat, duōs 5  
filiōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, quī māior erat,  
rēgnū relīquit. Pulsō tamen fratre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Fīlium fratris  
necāvit; filiam Rhēam Silviam per speciem honōris sacerdōtem  
Vestae lēgit. 9

- abundō:** to overflow, 2  
**adolescō, -ere, adolevi:** to grow up, 3  
**Aenēas, -ae m.:** Aeneas, 7  
**Alba Longa, -ae f.:** Alba Longa , 1  
**Amūlius, -ī m.:** Amulius, 4  
**Ascānius, -ī m.:** Ascanius, 2  
**condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum:** found, store, 6  
**Lāvīnia, -ae f.:** Lavinia, 3  
**Lāvīnum, -ī n.:** Lavinium , 2  
**legō, -ere, lēgi, lectum:** read, choose, 7

- 2 **ille:** *that one;* i.e. Ascanius  
**propter...multitūdinem:** abundantem is a pres. pple modifying multitūdinem, which in turn is the obj. of the preposition propter  
**mātrī:** *to...;* dat. ind. object  
3 **ipse:** *(he) himself;* nom. sg. intensive pronoun; as often, the noun is missing but can be inferred from masc. sg. ipse  
**sub...:** i.e. at the foot of Mt. Alba  
4 **Alba Longa:** nom. pred., translate after appellāta est, quae is fem. sg. nom. subject  
5 **gessērunt:** *carried out;* pf. gerō  
**Quīdam:** *a certain one;* quīdam, quaedam, quoddam is a common indefinite pronoun, which declines just as quī, quae, quod but with minor variations; the ending ‘-dam,’ however, is indeclinable  
5 **cui...erat:** *to whom was...;* dat. sg. relative pronoun; a dat. of possession with the verb sum, esse and may be translated three different ways: (1) ‘to whom...was,’ (2) ‘whose...was,’ or (3) ‘who had...’  
6 **Numitōrī:** *to...;* dat. ind. obj.  
**māior (natū):** *older;* this comparative adj. of magnus is often translated as ‘greater,’
- maior, maius:** greater, larger; older, 4  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 6  
**Numitor, -ōris, m.:** Numitor, 7  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum:** drive, beat, 6  
**Proca, -ae m.:** Proca, 1  
**quoad:** how far, as far as, as long as, 2  
**Rhea, -ae f.:** Rhea, 1  
**sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.:** priest, 4  
**species, -ēi f.:** sight, look, appearance, 3  
**Vesta, -ae f.:** Vesta, 1
- but in the context of age is often translated as ‘greater (by birth)’ or ‘older.’ The Romans often used the plural form maiōrēs, ‘the elders,’ as a synonym for ‘ancestors.’
- 7 **Pulsō...fratre:** abl. absolute; as so often, translate the noun before the PPP, pellō  
**tamen:** as a postpositive, this word is not part of the abl. absolute and should be translated first in the sentence  
**fratris:** i.e. of Numitor; Numiter had one son and one daughter. Amulius kills the son so that he cannot grow up to reclaim the throne. The daughter is conveniently made a Vestal Virgin, so that she may promise to be celibate and not have children for 30 years.
- 8 **necāvit:** Amulius is the subject.  
**Rhēam Silviam:** Rhea Silvia is her name, here in apposition to filiam  
**per speciem honōris:** i.e. through the pretence of honor; as mentioned above, Amulius’ real purpose is to keep his niece from giving birth to heirs to the throne  
**sacerdōtem Vestae:** *as...;* acc. predicate, the verb governs a double acc

### 3a. Romulus and Remus

Ex hāc fīliā nātī sunt duo filiī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, 1  
ut fāma est, Mars deus erat. Sed nec deī nec hominēs matrem et  
puerōs ā crudelitāte regiā defendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data  
est; puerōs rex in Tiberim inīcī iussit. Forte Tiberis abundāverat,  
neque eī quī puerōs ferēbant adīre ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque 5  
puerōs in alveō posuērunt atque in tenuī aquā reliquērunt.

Sed alveus in siccō sēdit. Deinde lupa sitiēns, sīc enim est  
trāditum, ex montibus quī circā sunt ad puerōrum vāgītum cursum  
flexit. Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, eam invēnit puerōs nūtrientem. Ab  
eō atque Lārentiā uxōre puerī ēducātī sunt. Cum prīnum 10

**abundō (1):** to overflow, 2

**adeō:** to such a degree, so, 2

**altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty, tall, 2

**alveus, -ī m.:** basket, small vessel, 2

**circā:** about, around, 4

**crūdēlitās, -tātis f.:** cruelty, crudeness, 3

**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 6

**custōdia, -ae f.:** guard, watch, 1

**dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēnsum:** to defend, 6

**ēducō (1):** to bring up, rear, train, 5

**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7

**Faustulus, -ī m.:** Faustulus , 1

**flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum:** turn, bend, 3

**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 4

**iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw in or upon, 1

**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** to come upon, find, 5

**Lārentia, -ae f.:** Larentia , 1

**lupa, -ae n.:** she-wolf, 1

**Mārs, Mārtis m.:** Mars, 2

**nūtriō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:** to feed, nourish, 1

**pāstor, -is m.:** shepherd, 4

**rēgius, -a, -um:** royal, of the king or queen, 6

**sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.:** priest, 4

**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī:** to sit, sit down; set, 7

**sīc:** thus, in this way, 6

**siccum, -ī n.:** dry land, 1

**sitiēns, sitiēntis:** thirsty, 1

**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** hand over, give, 7

**vāgītus, -ūs m.:** wailing, crying, 1

1 **Ex hāc fīliā:** i.e. Rhea Silva,

**nātī sunt:** 3p pf. deponent nascor: translate as pf. active

2 **ut:** as; with indicative introducing a clause of comparison

**nec...nec:** neither...nor

4 **inīcī:** pass. inf. of iniciō (in + iaciō)

**iussit:** 3s pf., iubēō

**Forte:** by chance; abl. as adv. formed not from the adj. fortis, -e, ‘brave,’ but from the noun fors, fortis, ‘luck’

5 **eī quī:** those who...; ‘they who...’ nom. pl. from is, ea, id and relative pronoun

**altam:** altus can mean ‘high’ or ‘deep’

**poterant:** impf. possum

6 **posuērunt:** 3p pf. pōnō

**tenuī:** abl. sg., 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adjectives will have an ‘-i’ in the abl. sg.

7 **sīc enim...:** for thus...; or ‘indeed’ enim is a postpositive and should be translated first

**est trāditum:** it...; trāditum est, impersonal

pf. passive trādō, hence the neuter -um

9 **eam:** i.e. the fem. sg. lupa

**nūtrientem:** pres. pple nūtriō

**Ab...:** by...; abl. of agent

10 **ēducātī sunt:** note that this 3p pf. passive comes from 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation ēdūcō, -āre and not 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation ēdūcō, ēdūcere

**Cum prīnum:** As soon as...; ‘When first...’ prīnum is an adverbial acc.

### 3b. Romulus and Remus

adolēvērunt, venārī coepērunt et in latrōnēs praedā onustōs impetūs facere pāstōribusque praedam dīvidere .

Dum quoddam lūdicrum celebrātūr, latrōnēs īrātī ob praedam āmissam impetum in Rōmulum et Remum fēcērunt; captum Remum rēgī Amūliō trādidērunt. Puerōs praedam ex agrīs 15 Numitōris ēgisse incūsābant. Sīc ad supplicium Numitōrī Remus dēdītur.

Ab initiō Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs iussū rēgis expositōs apud sē ēducārī. Tum perīculō Remī mōtus rem Rōmulō aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātrēs geminōs esse; tum comparāns et 20

adolescō, -ere, adolevī: to grow up, 3  
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6  
Amūlius, -ī m.: Amulius, 4  
aperiō, -ire, -ūī, -ertus: open, disclose, 5  
celebrō (1): celebrate, visit frequently, 1  
comparō (1): prepare, collect, 2  
crēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7  
dēdō, -ere: to give over, surrender, 7  
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7  
ēducō (1): to bring up, rear, train, 5  
expōnō, -ere, -posūī, -positum: set forth, 5  
Faustulus, -ī m.: Faustulus , 1  
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, 3  
incūsō (1): to accuse, complain of, 3  
initium, -ī n.: beginning, initiation, entrance 2

11 coepērunt: 3p pf.; coepī is a defective verb and is used only in the pf. system  
in: against...  
praedā: the loot is often cattle, not treasure  
impetūs facere: to make attacks; a common idiom; impetūs is 4<sup>th</sup> decl. acc. pl.  
12 pāstoribusque: and among...; dat. ind. object of dīvidere  
13 quoddam: a certain; indefinite pronoun  
14 in: against...  
14 captum...trādidērunt: In English, we prefer to use two main verbs, 'cēpērunt et trādidērunt,' whereas in Latin, the Romans typically made the first action into a participle, here PPP, and employ one finite verb  
Puerōs...ēgisse: that..., ind. disc. with pf. inf. agō; since the praeda are cattle, it is sensible that the verb means 'drive'

īrātūs, -a, -um: anger, 6  
iussus, -ūs m.: order, iussū by order, 2  
latrō, -ōnis m.: robber, 2  
lūdibrium, -ī n.: object of mockery, 1  
moveō, -ēre, -vī, mōtum: to move, arouse, 5  
Numitor, -ōris, m.: Numitor, 7  
ob: on account of , 5  
onustus, -a, -um: loaded, burdened, 1  
pāstor, -is m.: shepherd, 4  
praeda, -ae f.: plunder, spoils 7  
sīc: thus, in this way, 6  
supplicium, -ī n.: punishment, supplication 5  
trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7  
venor, -ārī, venātūm: to hunt, 1

ad: for...; ad + acc. often expresses purpose  
18 puerōs...ēducārī: that...; ind. disc., pres. pass. of 1<sup>st</sup> conj. ēducō, not 3<sup>rd</sup> conj. ēducō  
apud: at the house of...; + acc.  
19 sē: reflexive, in ind. disc. the antecedent, as often, is the subject of the main clause and not the acc. subj. of the ind. disc.  
perīculō: by...; abl. of cause  
mōtus: having been upset; PPP, moveō very often denotes emotion rather than physical motion; Faustulus is the subject  
Rōmulō: to...; dat. ind. obj.  
Forte: by chance; ablative as adv., from fors, fortis and not fortis, forte  
20 frātrēs geminōs esse: that..., ind. disc., with inf. sum, esse; the second acc. is an acc. predicative noun  
comparāns: nom. sg. pres. pple

### 3c. Romulus and Remus

aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum Remī nepōtem agnōvit. Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in rēgem Amūlium impetum facit; Remus, aliā parātā manū, adiuvat. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium Albānum Numitōrī avō ab iuvenibus restitūtum est. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus in eīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant 25 urbem condere constituērunt.

---

**adiuvō** (1): to help, assist, 4

**aetās, aetātis f.**: age, lifetime, time, 7

**agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum**: to recognize, 2

**Amūlius, -iī m.**: Amulius, 4

**avus, avī m.**: grandfather, 1

**condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum**: found, store, 6

21 **et aetātem...et nōbilem**: both...and...; all objects of the pple

**e-ōrum**: gen. pl. of is, ea, id

**Remī**: gen. possession with animum. The story assumes that admirable traits and a virtuous character found among the nobility are inheritable and therefore that Romulus and Remus can easily be distinguished from everyone else.

22 **manū**: a group; elsewhere ‘hand’

**in**: against...

**impetum facit**: idiom

23 **aliā parātā manū**: abl. absolute, as often,

**ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum**: lead out, draw, 1

**expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum**: set forth, 5

**manus, -ūs f.**: hand; group 7

**nepōs, nepōtis m.**: grandson, decendent, 3

**Numitor, -ōris, m.**: Numitor, 7

**pāstor, -is m.**: shepherd, 4

translate the noun ‘aliā manū’ first then the PPP

24 **Albānum**: *Alban*; i.e. of Alba Longa

**Numitōrī avō**: dat. of interest

25 **eīs**: those; a demonstrative adj., translate this form of is, ea, id as ‘these’ or ‘those’

25 **ubi expositī (erant)**: where...; ellipsis, a relative clause; plpf. pass., supply ‘erant’ which is missing through ellipsis, a stylistic device where the author leaves out words that must be understood

**ubique**: et ubi

## 4a. The Founding of Rome

Uterque iuvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere 1  
cupiēbat. Sed quod geminī erant nec rēs aetāte dēcernī poterat,  
auguriī ūsī sunt. Ā Remō prius vīsī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō  
posteā duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amīcīs rēx  
appellātus est atque rēgnūm postulābat. Cum īrātī arma rapuissent, 5  
in pugnā Remus cecidit.

Ex alia fāmā Remus illūdēns frātrem novōs mūrōs urbis  
trānsiluit, inde imperfectus est ab īrātō Rōmulō, quī haec verba  
quoque addidit: “Sīc deinde pereat quīcumque aliis trānsiliēt  
moenia mea.” Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus; conditam 10

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: to bring to, add, 7  
aetās, aetātīs f.: age, lifetime, time, 7  
amīcus, -ī m.: friend, 4  
augurium, -ī n.: augury, divination, 2  
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: to fall, 4  
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6  
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5  
duodecim: twelve, 3  
fāma, -ae f.: fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7  
geminī, -ae, -a: twin, 3  
illūdō, -ere, -lūstī, -lūsum: mock, ridicule, 1  
īrātus, -a, -um: anger, 6  
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6  
moenia, -ōrum n.: walls, 2  
mūrus, -ī m.: wall, rampart, 3

- 1 **Uterque:** nom. sg. adj. with iuvenis  
**eamque:** et eam; et joins the two inf. and  
eam refers to the fem. sg. urbs
- 2 **quod:** because...; causal quod clause  
**rēs:** nom. sg., the noun is 5<sup>th</sup> decl.  
**dēcernī:** pres. pass. inf.
- 3 **ūsī sunt:** 3p pf. ūtor, translate this deponent  
in the active voice and governs an ablative  
**prius:** comparative adverb  
**vīsī sunt:** 3p pf. pass. videō  
**Rōmulō:** dat. ind. obj.
- 4 **duodecim (vultūrēs):** nom. subj.; ellipsis,  
supply the missing noun  
**sēsē:** emphatic form of the reflexive sē  
**uterque:** each (one)  
**rēx:** nom. pred. following pf. pass.  
appellātus est
- 5 **rēgnūm:** this word may mean ‘kingship,’ or

ostendō (1): show, display, 7  
pereō, -ire, perī: to pass away, perish, 3  
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5  
potior, -īrī, potītum: possess , 1  
prior, prius: before, earlier , 5  
quīcumque, quae-, quod-: whosoever, 1  
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum: to seize, snatch, 6  
regō, regere, rēxī, rectum: to rule, be king, 1  
sex: six, 1  
sīc: thus, in this way, 6  
trānsiliō, -ire, -ui: to jump across or over, 2  
uterque, utra-, utrum-: each , both, 6  
ūtor, ūtī, ūsum: to use, employ, enjoy , 5  
vultur, -is, m.: vulture, 1

- ‘kingdom’ depending on the context  
**cum...rapuissent:** when...; plpf. subj.;  
translate as you would an plpf. indicative  
**īrātī:** they angrily...; nom. adjectives are  
often translated as adverbs in English
- 7 **ex alia fāmā:** i.e. in another version of the  
story  
**illūdēns frātrem:** nom. sg. pres. pple  
9 **pereat:** May...perish; optative subj. (subj.  
of wish), 3s pres. subj. pereō.  
**quīcumque:** whosoever...; or ‘anyone  
who,’ a relative pronoun introducing a  
relative clause that ends with mea. The  
missing antecedent is subject of pereat.  
**trānsiliēt:** 3s fut.
- 10 **potītus est:** 3s pf. potior; translate in the  
active voice. Just as ūtor in line 3, this verb  
governs an abl. object.

## 4b. The Founding of Rome

urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

Palātium prīmūm, in quō ipse erat ēducātus, mūnīvit. Vocātā ad concilium multitūdine, iūra dedit. Īnsignia quoque imperiī, sellam curūlem togamque praetextam, duodecim līctōrēs sūmpsīt. Asylum aperuit in monte Capitōlinō, quō multī ex finitimīs populīs profūgērunt. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honōris causā patrēs appellātī sunt. 15

**aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 5

**Asylum, Asylī n.:** Asylum; refuge, 1

**Capitōlinus, -a, -um:** Capitoline, 4

**centum:** hundred, 1

**concilium, -ī n.:** meeting, rendezvous, 3

**curūlis, -e:** curule, 1

**duodecim:** twelve, 3

**ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum:** lead out, draw, 1

**īsigne, -is n.:** badge, decoration, mark, 1

11 **urbem...Rōmam appellāvit:** called (*x*)  
(*y*); this verb governs a double accusative  
(acc. obj. and acc. pred.)

**suō:** a reflexive possessive adjective, the  
antecedent is the subject

12 **prīmūm:** first (*of all*); an adverbial acc.  
**ipse:** he himself; intensive pronoun,  
**Vocātā...multitūdine:** abl. absolute, as  
always, translate the noun first

13 **iūra:** neuter acc. pl., iūs, iūris

14 **sellam...togam...līctōrēs:** all three are  
in apposition to acc. plural īsignia; the  
curule chair is a specially designed chair,  
the toga praetexta has a purple-dyed border  
worn later by senator and equestrian class,  
and the lictors are bodyguards who  
accompany the king

**sūmpsīt:** i.e. adopted

**līctor, līctōris m.:** lictor (bodyguard), 5

**mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum:** to fortify, build, 5

**Palātium, -ī n.:** Palatine hill, 1

**praetextus, -a, -um:** bordered, 1

**sella, -ae f.:** chair, 2

**senātor, -ōris m.:** senator, 1

**sumō, sumere, sumpsī, -ptum:** to take (up), 5

**toga, -ae f.:** toga, 5

15 **Asylum:** acc. obj.; his is the proper name  
for the ridge located between the two peaks  
of the Capitoline Hill; our word for ‘refuge’  
is derived from Romulus’ use of the location  
in this passage

**in monte Capitōlinō:** on the Captioline  
hill; Although described as a mountain, the  
Capitoline is actually a large hill

15 **quō:** to where; a relative adverb, not a  
relative pronoun: quō is often employed to  
express place to which

16 **causā:** for the sake of...; + preceding gen.;  
causā is a preposition

17 **patrēs:** a predicate nom.; translate after  
appellātī sunt; the senators were likely the  
patres familias, leading fathers, of the  
most powerful families in Rome

## 5a. The Sabine Women

Iam rēs Rōmāna firma et finitimīs cīvitātibus bellō pār erat. Sed 1  
Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum finitimīs iūs cōnūbiī habēbant.  
Tum Romulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in vīcīnās gentēs mīsit  
quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam 5  
benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; nam finitimī nōn sōlum Rōmānōs  
spernēbant, sed etiam tantam in mediō crescentem urbem  
metuēbant. Itaque īrātī Rōmānī vī ūtī statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, finitimōs ad spectāculum  
invītāvit. Multī convēnērunt ut lūdōs spectārent et novam urbem  
vidērent. Sabīnōrum omnis multitudō cum līberīs ac coniugibus 10

**benignus, -a, -um:** kind, kindly, 3

**cōnūbium, -ī n.:** marriage, 1

**conveniō -ire -vēnī -ventus:** come together, 6

**crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētūm:** grow, increase, 4

**fīrmus, -a, -um:** strong, steadfast, 3

**invītō (1):** to invite, summon, 2

**īrātus, -a, -um:** anger, 6

**lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6

**metuō, -ere, -uī:** to fear, dread, 3

**nusquam:** nowhere, 1

**Sabīnus, -a, -um:** Sabine, 6

**societās, -tātis f.:** association, alliance, 5

**spectāculum, -ī n.:** spectacle, 3

**spectō (1):** to watch, look at, 2

**spērnō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētūm:** spurn, reject, 3

**ūtor, ūtī, ūsum:** to use, employ, enjoy , 5

**vīcīnus, -a, -um:** neighboring, 3

1 **rēs Rōmāna:** the Roman state

**fīnitimīs cīvitātibus:** dat. of special adj. pār  
**bellō:** in (*respect to*)...; abl. of respect often  
qualifies or clarifies an adjective

2 **neque...neque:** neither...nor

**fīnitimīs:** neighbors; a substantive (adj.  
used as a noun)

**iūs:** the right; elsewhere ‘law;’ neut. acc. sg.

3 **quōsdam...lēgātōs:** certain...; indefinite  
adj., quīdam

4 **qui...peterent:** who would...; a relative  
clause of purpose (qui = ut eī) with impf.  
subj. petō

**novō populō:** for...; dat. of interest

5 **benignē...audītī sunt:** i.e. the neighbors  
did not respond positively to the envoys  
requests; benignē is an adverb

**fīnitimī:** see line 2

**nōn sōlum...sed etiam:** not only...but also;

sōlum is an adv. (adverbial acc.)

7 **vī:** abl. obj. of inf. ūtī; the irregular abl. of  
vīs

**ūtī:** pres. inf. ūtor. Although passive in  
form, translate this deponent in the active.  
Ūtor governs an ablative object.

8 **Ad...:** For...; as often, expressing purpose  
**eam:** this; a demonstrative adj.; translate this  
form of is, ea, id as ‘this’ or ‘that’

**lūdīs parātīs:** ablative absolute with PPP

9 **ut...spectārent...vidērent:** so that...might;  
purpose clause governing impf. subj.

10 **Sabīnōrum:** a partitive gen. governed by  
the nom. sg. multitudō

**omnis:** entire

**līberīs:** children; līberī can easily be  
confused with the adj. līber, lībera, līberum,  
therefore readers must often use context to  
determine which word is intended

## 5b. The Sabine Women

vēnit. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit omnēsque intentī in lūdōs erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmantēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptae virginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem habēbant. Sed ipse Rōmulus circumībat ostendēbatque id 15 patrum virginum superbiā factum esse. “Quamquam vī captae estis,” inquit, “omnia iūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis.”

Iam multō minus perturbātī animī raptārum erant. At parentēs eārum cīvitātēs fīnitimās, ad quās eius iniūriae pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae cīvitātēs omnēs ā Rōmulō victae sunt. 20

**circumeō, -ire, -ir:** go around, 1

**clāmō (1):** to cry, shout out, 6

**concitō (1):** stir up, incite, impel, 3

**hospitium, -ī n.:** (rules of) hospitality, 2

**indignatiō, -tiōnis f.:** indignity, outrage, 4

**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 5

**intentus, -a, -um:** attentive, intent, 3

**lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6

**melior, melius:** better, 4

**minor, minus:** smaller, less, 6

**ostendō (1):** show, display, 7

**parens, -rentis m.:** parent, ancestor, 4

**pertineō, -ere, -tinui:** to pertain to; reach, 1

**perturbō (1):** disturb, throw into confusion, 3

**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, snatch, 6

**signum, -ī n.:** sign, signal; standard, 6

**spectāculum, -ī n.:** spectacle, 3

**superbiā, -ae f.:** arrogance, pride 2

**violō (1):** to violate, commit outrage, 4

11 **intenti:** i.e. focused; a pred. after erant  
in: upon...

12 **signō datō:** abl. abs. with PPP dō, dare  
**rapere:** to kidnap; or ‘to snatch,’ Although  
the derivative denotes sexual assault, the  
Latin verb rapiō denotes the act of grabbing  
or stealing

**virginēs:** maidens; a common term for an  
unmarried young woman

13 **clāmantēs:** pres. pple. modifying parentēs  
**Rōmānōs...violāvisse:** that...; ind. disc.  
with pf. inf. governed by clāmantēs  
**hospitium:** i.e. the rules of hospitality: a  
guest should not steal from his host

14 **nec...habēbant:** and...did not have; apply  
the negative to the main verb

**raptae:** PPP, rapiō, see note 12 above

**aut...aut:** either...or

**dē:** concerning...; abl. of respect

**meliorem:** more; elsewhere ‘better,’ the  
comparative of bonus, -a, -um

**indignatiōnem:** this word describes the  
resentment of being treated in a manner not  
(in-) worthy (dignus-a-um) of one’s status

15 **minōrem:** comparative parvus

**ipse: he himself;** intense

**id...factum esse:** that it had been...; ind.  
disc. with pf. pass. inf.; id refers to the  
kidnapping; The ind. disc. is in secondary  
sequence (main verb past), translate inf. as  
plpf. pass.

16 **superbiā:** because of...; abl. of cause  
**vī:** abl. means, from the irregular noun vīs,  
**captae estis:** 2p pf. pass., Romulus speaks  
directly to the kidnapped women

17 **inquit:** he says; this verb of speaking  
always indicates direct discourse  
**iūra:** rights; neuter acc. pl. iūs

18 **multō:** much; ‘by much,’ abl. degree of  
difference often with comparative degree  
**minus:** comparative adverb

**perturbātī:** PPP as a predicate nom.;

animī is nom. subject

**raptārum:** of (the girls)...; PPP rapiō

19 **ad quās:** relative, cīvitātēs is antecedent

**eius iniūriae:** of this...; partitive gen.

20 **victae sunt:** pf. pass. vincō

## 5c. The Sabine Women

Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in monte Capitōlīnō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem recipere cōnātī sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostīlius, dux exercitūs Rōmānī, cecidit, cōfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est. At Rōmulus templum vōvit Iovī Statōrī 25 orāvitque auxilium. Tum crēdēns precēs suās audītās esse “hinc,” inquit, “Rōmānī, Juppiter optimus maximus nōs resistere ac renovāre pugnam iubet.” Resistērunt Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce iussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia inferre, ut pācem ā patribus virīsque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn 30

aciēs, -ēt f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
arx, arcis m.: citadel, hilltop, 5  
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: to dare, venture, 5  
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: to fall, 4  
caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; subs. gods, 2  
Capitōlīnus, -a, -um: Capitoline, 4  
cōfestim: at once, immediately, 3  
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātūs sum: to try, attempt, 7  
crēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditum: believe, trust, 7  
dolus, -ī m.: trick, deceit, 2  
hinc: from here, hence, 3  
Hostīlius, -ī m.: Hostilius, 2  
Hostius, -ī m.: Hostius, 1  
implōrō (1): to implore, beg, beseech, 1  
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus: bring in, wage, 5  
Iuppiter, Iovis m.: Jupiter, 4  
moveō, -ēre, -vī, mōtūm: to move, arouse, 5

- 21 **novissimum:** *the last;* or ‘most recent,’ superlative adj.  
**ab Sabīnīs:** *from the Sabines*  
**ortum est:** pf. dep. orior: translate active  
**quod:** relative pronoun  
**multō:** *far;* ‘by much,’ abl. of degree of difference, often with comparative degree  
**dolō:** abl. of means  
23 **posterō diē:** *on...;* abl. of time when  
**cōnātī sunt:** pf. dep. cōnōr, make active  
24 **exercitūs:** gen. sg. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun  
**cecidit:** 3s pf. cadō, a euphemism for dying  
25 **Iovī Statōrī:** *to...;* dat. ind. obj., Jupiter has an irregular declension: nom. Jupiter, gen. Iōvis, dat. Iōvī, acc. Iōvem, abl. Iōve  
26 **crēdēns:** nom. sg. pres. pple crēdō  
**precēs suās...audītās esse:** *that...;* ind.

**mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 5  
**nōs:** we, us, 3  
**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 6  
**ōrō (1):** pray , entreat, beseech, 3  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsūm:** drive, beat, 6  
**posterus, -a, -um:** following, next, 2  
**precēs, -um:** prayer, entreaty, 1  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptūm:** accept, take, 4  
**renovō (1):** to renew, make new, 2  
**resistō, -ere, -stītī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7  
**Sabīnus, -a, -um:** Sabine, 6  
**Stator, -ōris m.:** the Stayer , 1  
**tamquam:** as if, as much as, so to speak, 6  
**tēlūm, -ī n.:** projectile, arrow, spear, 6  
**templūm, -ī n.:** temple, 5  
**voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtūm:** vow, swear, 2  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 7

- disc. with pf. pass. inf.; suās is a possessive reflexive adj. (his own, her own, etc.)  
**inquit:** *he says;* indicating direct discourse  
**Rōmānī:** voc. direct address  
27 **optimus (et) maximus:** supply ‘et’  
28 **tamquam:** *as if;* formed from correlative adverbs tam, ‘so,’ and quam, ‘as’  
**caelestī:** abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. are i-stem  
**iussī:** PPP iubeō  
29 **mulierēs:** i.e. the women once kidnapped  
**ausae sunt:** 3p pf. of semi-deponent audeō  
**sē...inferre:** *that...;* ind. disc.  
**volantia:** pres. pple, neuter pl.  
30 **ut...implōrārent:** *so that...might;* purpose  
**virīsque:** *and husbands*  
**eā rē:** *by...;* abl. of cause  
**mōtī:** *having been moved;* i.e. emotionally

## 5d. The Sabine Women

modo pācem sed etiam cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt; rēgnū quoque cōnsociant atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī. Multitūdō ita [aucta novō] nōmine Quirītēs appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs caput Sabīnōrum erat.

Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā dīvīsō, nōmina 35 mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit. Post aliquot annōs Tatius ab Laurentib⁹ interfectus est. Rōmulus posteā sōlus rēgnāvit. Annīs sequentibus bella secunda cum Fidēnātibus Veientibusque, populīs Etrūscīs, gesta sunt.

Dum Rōmulus quōdam tempore exercitum in Campō Mārtiō 40

---

**aliquot:** several, 5

**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum:** increase, enrich, 6

**campus, -ī m.:** plain, field, 1

**cōnsociō (1):** to associate, unite, 1

**Curēs, ium m.:** Cures , 2

**cūria, ae f.:** curia, ward , 2

**dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum:** divide, separate, 7

**Fidēnātēs, -ium m.:** people of Fidenae, 1

**Laurentēs, -um m.:** Laurentines, 2

**Mārtius, -a, -um:** of Mars, 4

**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 3

**mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 5

**Quirītēs, -ium m.:** Quirites (Romans), 2

**rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptum:** to seize, snatch, 6

**Sabīnus, -a, -um:** Sabine, 6

**secundus, -a, -um:** following, favorable, 3

**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 6

**Tatius, -ī m.:** Tatius, 1

**trīginta:** thirty, 3

**Veīens, -entis m.:** Veientian , 1

31 **nōn modo...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*

modo, ‘just’ or ‘only,’ is an adverb distinct from the noun modus, modī  
**duābus:** abl. pl., duo, duae, duo is a 1<sup>st</sup>/2<sup>nd</sup> decl. adj. whose abl. and dat. forms are -ōbus (masc.) and -ābus (fem.)

32 **faciunt:** *make (x) (y);* governs a double acc.the first acc. is a dir. obj. while the second is an acc. pred.

**Multitūdō:** fem. nom. sg.

33 **Quirītēs:** nom. predicate, following appellata est

**Curibus:** Cures; a single city with a plural name, just as Athens and Los Angeles

**quae urbs:** *which city...;* a relative adj.

35 **populō...dīvīsō:** abl. abs. with PPP in: *into*

**trīginta:** indeclinable trīgintā modifies

cūriās; numbers

above trēs are indeclinable

36 **raptārum:** PPP rapiō with mulier-um

**cūriīs:** *to...;* dat. ind. obj.; tradition claims that each curia was named after one of the Sabine women kidnapped by the Romans

**aliquot:** an indeclinable adj. with annōs

**Tatius:** Although not mentioned earlier, Tatius was a Sabine king and was ruling jointly with Romulus.

37 **Annīs sequentibus:** abl. abs. with a pres. pple sequor

38 **secunda:** *favorable*

40 **quōdam tempore:** *at...;* abl. of time when, again, the indefinite pronoun quīdam

**Campō Mārtiō:** a plain in the northwest beyond the walls of Rome, where the army trained.

## 5e. The Sabine Women

recēnset, tempestās subitō coōrta eum nimbō operuit. Patrēs quī proximī steterant dīxērunt rēgem sublīmem raptum esse. Deinde ūniversī clāmant: “Salvē, deus deō nāte.” Rōmulus dīcitur posteā cuidam cīvī sē ostendisse et eum hīs verbīs allocūtus esse: “Nuntiā Rōmānīs deōs velle meam Rōmam caput orbis terrārum esse; 45 proinde rēs mīlitāris colenda est; nam nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs resistere possunt.” Posteā nōmen Quirīnus Rōmulō additum est. Rēgnāvit septem et trīgintā annōs. 48

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 7  
**alloquor, loquī, locūtus:** to speak, address, 3  
**clāmō (1):** to cry, shout out, 6  
**colō, -ere, colū, cultum:** cultivate; worship, 3  
**coōrior, -orīrī, -ortus sum:** to arise, 2  
**hūmānus, -a, -um:** human, humane, 3  
**meus, -a, -um:** my, mine, 6  
**mīlitāris, -e:** military, warlike, 2  
**nimbus, -ī m.:** thundercloud, rainstorm, 1  
**nuntiō (1):** announce, report, 7  
**operiō, -ire, -uī, opertum:** cover, conceal, 1  
**ops, opis f.:** power; pl. resources, influence, 6  
**orbis, -is m.:** sphere, orb, 2  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 7  
**proinde:** then, therefore, consequently, 2

- 41 **coōrta:** pf. dep. pple is often translated ‘having Xed,’ coōrior  
**Patrēs:** i.e. the senators
- 42 **rēgem...raptum esse:** *that...;* ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. rapiō; the senators suggest that the gods raised him up into the sky
- 43 **ūniversī: (they) one and all**  
**Salvē:** sg. imperative, a common greeting  
**deus:** voc., direct address; the word ‘deus’ does not assume the -e vocative ending  
**deō:** *from...;* abl. of source  
**nāte:** vocative sg. of nātus, the pf. pple of deponent nascor
- 44 **cuidam cīvī:** *to a certain citizen;* ind. obj.  
**ostendisse:** pf. inf. following dīcitur  
**eum:** *him;* i.e. the quīdam cīvis, the lack of a reflexive pronoun is a clear indicator that this pronoun does not refer to the subject  
**allocūtus esse:** pf. dep. inf.: translate as active; the -us ending is nom. sg. because it refers ultimately to the subject Rōmulus

**proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, next, 5  
**Quirīnus, -ī m.:** Quirinus , 1  
**rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, snatch, 6  
**recēnseō, -ēre, -uī:** number, reckon, review 1  
**resistō, -ere, -stītī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7  
**salveō, -ēre:** be well, be in good health, 1  
**septem:** seven, 4  
**stō (1):** to stand, 3  
**subitō:** immediately, straightaway, 3  
**sublīmis, -e:** on high, aloft, uplifted, 1  
**tempestās, -tātis f.:** weather; storm, 2  
**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 7  
**trīginta:** thirty, 3  
**ūniversus, -a, -um:** entire, whole, 2

- Nuntiā:** sg. imperative, nuntiō  
45 **deōs velle...esse:** *that...;* ind. disc. with an irregular pres. inf. of volō, velle; esse is a complementary inf. governed by velle  
**orbis terrārum:** *of the world;* ‘of the sphere of lands,’ gen. sg.; a common expression for the earth or world  
**esse:** inf. sum
- 46 **rēs mīlitāris:** *military affairs;* or ‘military science,’ nom. sg.  
**colenda est:** *must be...;* ‘is (going) to be cultivated;’ a passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses necessity  
**armīs Rōmānīs:** dat. obj. of compound verb resistere; a common method of translation is to remove the prefix (here, re-) and make the dat. the object: ‘against Roman arms’
- 47 **Rōmulō:** dat. ind. obj.  
48 **septem...annōs:** *for...;* acc. of duration of time

## 6a. Numa Pompilius

Certāmen inde dē rēgnō inter factiōnēs ortum est. Sabīnī rēgem 1  
suae factiōnis creārī cupiēbant. Rōmānī veterēs peregrīnum rēgem  
recūsābant. Interrēgnō secūtō, senātus imperium gessit. Deinde  
plēbs clāmāre coepit multōs dominōs prō ūnō factōs esse.  
Optimum igitur vīsum est sine morā rēgem creāre. 5

Habitābat eō tempore Curibus Numa Pompilius, vir iūstissimus  
perītusque omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī iūris. Rēgnum eī omnium  
cōnsēnsū dēlātum est. Is urbem novam quae ā Rōmulō armīs  
condita erat, iūre lēgibusque firmāvit. Arcum portīs īstructum  
fēcit, quī arcus Iānī appellātus est; apertus bellī index erat, clausus 10

aperiō, -tre, -uī, -ertus: open, disclose, 5  
Arcus, -ī m.: bow, 2  
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4  
clāmō (1): to cry, shout out, 6  
claudō, -ere, -di, -sum: to close, enclose, 6  
condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum: found, store, 6  
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5  
Curēs, ium m.: Cures , 2  
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum: offer, give over 6  
dīvīnus, -a, -um: divine, 2  
dominus, -ī m.: master, 2  
factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6  
firmō (1): make strong, strengthen, support, 3  
habitō (1): to inhabit, dwell, live, 2  
hūmānus, -a, -um: human, humane, 3  
Iānus, -ī m.: Janus, 1

- 1 **ortum est:** pf. dep. orior: translate as active  
**factiōnēs:** *factions*; The Romans did not  
have political parties in the modern sense.
- 2 **suae factiōnis:** *of their own...;* gen.
- 3 **interregnō secūtō:** abl. abs., The pf. pple  
for a deponent verb, here sequor, is often  
translated ‘having Xed.’ An interregnum is  
a period of time between (inter) kingships  
(regnum) when a new king is selected.  
**gessit:** possessed, carried on; pf. gerō
- 4 **multōs...factōs esse:** *that...had been...;*  
ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.; in secondary  
sequence: translate as plpf. pass.  
**prō:** *in place of...*
- 5 **vīsum est:** *it seemed;* pf. pass. videor,  
‘seem,’ and governing a nom. pred.
- 6 **eō tempore:** *at that...;* abl. of time when  
Curibus: *in...;* locative, place where

index, indicis m/f: informer, witness, 1  
īnstuō, -ere, -ūxī, -uctum: draw up, arrange 1  
interrēgnō, -ī n.: interregnum, 1  
iūstus, -a, -um: just, 1  
mora, -ae f.: delay, hesitation, hindrance, 1  
Numa, -ae m.: Numa, 6  
optimus, -a, -um: best, noblest, finest, 6  
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; noun foreigner 5  
perītus, -a, -um: experienced , 4  
Pompilius, -ī m.: Pompilius, 2  
porta, -ae f.: gate, 3  
recūsō (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5  
Sabīnus, -a, -um: Sabine, 6  
sine: without , 5  
veter, vetera, veterum: old, experienced, 2

- 7 **iūstissimus:** superlative adj. iūstus  
**perītus:** an adj. that governs a gen. object  
**iūris:** of law; elsewhere ‘right’ gen. sg. iūs,  
eī: *to him*; dat. ind. obj.
- 8 **omnīum:** subjective gen. pl. modifying  
cōnsēnsū
- 9 **Is:** i.e. Numa
- 9 **iūre lēgibusque:** abl. of means, here iūre  
means ‘rights’ to set it apart from lēgibus  
**Arcum:** this arch was simply a large  
doorway (two posts and a horizontal lintel)  
with two gates (portae) in the center  
**īstructum:** PPP
- 10 **arcus Iānī:** predicate nom. following  
appellātus est  
**(arcus) apertus:** *(when) opened, the gate...;*  
supply the missing nominative ‘arcus’  
**(arcus) clausus:** again, supply the noun

## 6b. Numa Pompilius

pācis. Per omne rēgnūm Numae clausus fuit. Pāx cum cīvitātibus finitimīs societāte ac foederibus facta est.

Rēx inde ad mōrēs populī cultumque deōrum animum convertit. Ut populī fidem conciliāret, simulāvit sē cum deā Ēgeriā congressūs habēre et monitū eius sacra īstituere sacerdōtēsque 15 legere. Annum ad cursum lūnae in duodecim mensēs discrīpsit. Quōsdam diēs nefāstōs fēcit, per quōs diēs comitia nōn habēbantur. Virginēs Vestālēs lēgit, quās caerimōniās quibusdam sanctās fēcit.

Multa etiam alia ā rēge īstitūta sunt, rītūs, caerimōniae, 20

**caerimōnia, -ae f.**: ceremony, rite, 3  
**claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum**: to close, enclose, 6  
**comitīa, -ōrum, n.**: assembly, elections 1  
**concilium, -ī n.**: meeting, rendezvous, 3  
**congressus, -ūs m.**: meeting, assembly, 2  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus**: turn, reverse, 6  
**cultus, -ūs m.**: culture, refinement, 3  
**cursus, -ūs m.**: course, running, haste, 6  
**discrībō, -ere, -scripsi**: distribute, divide, 2  
**duodecim**: twelve, 3  
**Ēgeria, -ae f.**: Egeria , 1  
**fidēs, eī f.**: faith, trust, 7  
**foedus, -eris n.**: treaty, alliance, 5

**legō, -ere, legī, lectum**: read, choose, 7  
**lūna, -ae n.**: moon, 3  
**mensis, -is m.**: month, 2  
**monitus, -ūs m.**: warning, admonition, 1  
**mōs, mōris m.**: custom, manner, law, 3  
**nefāstus, -a, -um**: unholy, unhallowed, 1  
**Numa, -ae m.**: Numa, 6  
**rītus, -ūs m.**: rite, ceremony, 1  
**sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.**: priest, 4  
**sanctus, -a, -um**: sacred, holy, 2  
**simulō (1)**: feign, pretend, make like, 2  
**societās, -tātis f.**: association, alliance, 5  
**Vestalis, -e**: Vestal, of Vesta, 1

- 11 **pācis (index erat)**: ellipsis; gen. sg., add a predicate nom. and verb from the previous clause  
**fuit**: *it was...*; i.e. the arch was...; the PPP clausus is a predicate adj.  
12 **societāte ac foederibus**: abl. of means  
13 **mōrēs**: the pl. of mōs may mean ‘habits,’ ‘customs’ or ‘character’  
**animūm**: *his attention*  
14 **Ut...conciliāret**: *so that...might...*; a purpose clause with impf. subj  
**sē...habēre...īstituere...legere**: *that he...*; ind. disc. with one acc. subject and three infinitives; the reflexive sē does not need to retain the ending ‘self’ as acc. subj.

- 15 **congressūs**: acc. pl. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun  
**eius**: *her*; i.e Egeria’s, gen. sg.  
**sacra**: *sacred (rites)*; neut. pl.  
16 **ad**: *according to...*  
17 **fēcit**: *made (x) (y)*; governs a double acc.: (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)  
**per quōs diēs**: *over which days*; relative adjective  
**comitia...habēbantur**: plural in form but singular in translation  
18 **lēgit**: pf., not ‘read’ but ‘choose’ or ‘pick’  
19 **fēcit**: see note on line 17  
20 **rītus, caerimōniae...**: nom. in apposition to the pl. subject, multa alia

## 6c. Numa Pompilius

sacerdōtia. Multitūdō, hīs rēbus ā vī et armīs conversa, rēgis mōrēs imitābātur. Fīnitimī populī cīvitātem Rōmānam tōtam, in cultum deōrum versam, violāre nōlēbant. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, Rōmulus bellō, Numa pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Numa annōs trēs et quadrāgintā rēgnāvit.

25

**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum:** increase, enrich, 6  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn, reverse, 6  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 3  
**deinceps:** one after another, successively, 1  
**imitor, imitārī, imitātum:** imitate, copy, 3  
**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 3

21 **Multitūdō:** nom. subject

**hīs rēbus:** *because of...;* abl. of cause

**ā:** *away from...;* abl. of separation, with an irreg. abl. of vīs

**conversa:** PPP, convertō

**mōrēs:** acc. pl., mōs

22 **in:** *toward...*

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling, 4  
**Numa, -ae m.:** Numa, 6  
**quadrāgintā:** forty, 5  
**sacerdōtium, -ī n.:** priesthood, 1  
**vertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn, change, 1  
**violō (1):** to violate, commit outrage, 4

**versam:** PPP, vertō

**Rōmulus... (et) Numa...auxērunt:** equiv. to Rōmulus bellō (cīvitātem auxit et) Numa pace cīvitātem auxit; bellō and pāce are both abl. of means

24 **annōs...quadrāgintā:** *for...;* acc. duration

## 7a. Tullus Hostilius

Numā mortuō, Tullus Hostilius rēx creātus est. Hic ferōcior 1  
etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Bellum cum Albānīs prīnum ortum est.  
Albanī et Rōmānī certāmen dē imperiō proeliō paucōrum virōrum  
dēcernere cupīvērunt.

Forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, nec aetāte nec 5  
vīribus dispārēs, Horātiī et Cūriātiī. Hī Albanī erant, illī Rōmānī.  
Trigeminī ad hunc pugnam dēlēctī arma capiunt et in medium inter  
duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo exercitūs, ērectī ānxiiīque, in  
spectāculum animōs intendunt. signō datō, ternī iuvenēs  
concurrunt. 10

- aciēs, -ēt f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7  
ānxius, -a, -um: anxious, 2  
certāmen, -minis n.: struggle, contest, 4  
concurrō, -ere, -currī: assemble, fight with, 1  
Cūriātius, -ī m.: Curiatius, 7  
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5  
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum: choose, select, 3  
dispār (dispāris): unequal, unlike, 3  
ērigō, -ere, -rēxi, -rectum: raise up, lift, 2

- 1 **Numā mortuō:** Numa having died; abl.  
abs.; pf. dep. pple morior, often translated  
as ‘having Xed’  
**Hic:** this (one)  
**ferōcior:** comparative adj.  
2 **quam:** than...; introducing a clause of  
comparison  
**prīnum:** first, first of all; adverbial acc.  
**ortum est:** pf. deponent orior  
3 **proeliō:** abl. of means. Instead of fighting  
the entire army, both sides chose to have  
a few soldiers on each side fight and decide  
the outcome of the war.  
5 **Forte:** by chance; abl. as adverb from fors,  
fortis  
**utrōque:** abl. uterque  
**nec...nec:** neither...nor  
**aetāte...vīribus:** in...in...; ‘in respect to’  
abl. of respect often qualifies and clarifies

- Horātius, -ī m.:** Horatius, 4  
**intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum:** stretch, aim, 1  
**Numa, -ae m.:** Numa, 6  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** proceed, 4  
**signum, -ī n.:** sign, signal; standard, 6  
**spectāculum, -ī n.:** spectacle, 3  
**ternī, -ae, -a:** three each, 1  
**trigeminus, -a, -um:** triplets, 2  
**Tullus, -ī m.:** Tullus, 2  
**uterque, utra-, utrum-:** each , both, 6

- an adjective.  
6 **vīribus:** strength; abl. pl. from 3<sup>rd</sup> decl.  
vīrēs, the pl. of the irregular vīs, vīs  
**Horātiī et Cūriātiī:** in apposition to frātrēs  
**Hī...illī:** these...those...; i.e. the former  
(Horātiī) and the latter (Cūriātiī)  
**Albanī:** i.e. from Alba Longa; nom. pred.  
7 **ad:** for...; ad + acc. often expresses purpose  
**capiunt:** i.e. take up  
**in medium:** into...  
8 **aciēs:** armies; or ‘battle lines.’ This word  
describes the long line of troops stretching  
horizontally when an army fights.  
**ērectī:** having raised themselves; PPP ērigō,  
middle in sense; i.e. standing up  
9 **animōs:** their attention; English prefers sg.  
while Latin prefers the more specific pl.  
**signō datō:** abl. abs., PPP dō, dare

## 7b. Tullus Hostilius

Prīmō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt et trēs Albānī vulneratī. Eum quī integer fuit trēs Cūriātī circumsistere cōnātī sunt. Cum iam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset, respexit atque vīdit trēs Cūriātōs magnīs intervallīs sequentēs. Subitō constitit et in proximum Cūriātūm impetum facit; dum exercitus Cūriātōs 15 obsecrant ut frātrī auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfecit.

Tum magnō clāmōre Rōmānī adiuvant mīlitem suum, et ille cōnficere proelium properat. Priusquam cōsecūtus est tertius, Horātius alterum Cūriātūm cōnficit. Iamque singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec vīribus parēs; Alter integer et ferōx superiōribus 20

adiuvō (1): to help, assist, 4

alter, -era, -erūm: other , second, 7

circumsistō, -ere, -stetī: to surround, 1

clāmor, clāmoris f.: cry, shout, 3

congressus, -ūs m.: meeting, assembly, 2

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātūs sum: to try, attempt, 7

cōsequor, -ī, secūtūs: follow, go after, 1

constō, -stārē, -stītī: stand firm; is agreed, 5

Cūriātūs, -ī m.: Curiatius, 7

Horātius, -ī m.: Horatius, 4

integer, -gra, -grum: untouched, unhurt, 3

intervallūm, -ī n.: distance, interval, 1

obsecrō (1): beseech, implore, entreat, 1

11 prīmō congressū: at...; or ‘in...’ abl. of time when

vulneratī (sunt): ellipsis; 3p pf. pass.

12 Eum quī: this one who...; i.e. the sole remaining Roman. is, ea, id is often translated as a demonstrative

cōnātī sunt: pf. dep. cōnor: translate active

13 Cum...fūgisset: plpf. subj., as often, translate the verb in the same tense

paulum: a little; adverbial acc.

14 magnīs intervallīs: with...; abl. of manner with adj. often omits the preposition ‘cum’ sequentēs: pres. pple sequor

constitit: pf.; ‘to stand (still)’ often means ‘to stop’

in...: against..., upon...

Cūriātōs: i.e. the two brothers still running

at a distance toward the first

paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6

priusquam: before than, sooner than, 2

properō (1): to hasten, 3

proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5

respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectūm: to look to, 3

secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 3

singulus, -a, -um: one by one, separate, 2

subitō: immediately, straightaway, 3

superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6

supersum, -esse, -fūi: survive, be left, over; 2

tertius, -a, -um: third, 2

vulnerō (1): wound, injure, 3

16 ut...ferant: that...; an indirect command with pres. subj. ferō

17 magnō clāmōre: with...; abl. of manner

ille: that one; i.e. the remaining Horātī

18 tertius (Cūriātūs): the 3<sup>rd</sup> brother

19 alterum: the other; i.e. one of the two cōnficit: finishes off; i.e. kills

super-erant: impf. supersum

nec...nec: neither...nor

20 spē...vīribus: in (respect to)...in (respect to)...; abl. of respect often qualifies and clarifies an adjective.

vīribus: abl. pl vīrēs (not vir, virī), the pl. of the irregular vīs, vīs

Alter: One man...

superiōribus victōriis: because of...; abl. of cause

## 7c. Tullus Hostilius

victoriīs erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō fractus, in certāmen vēnit. Nec illud proelium fuit. Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma Horātius caedit et iacentem spoliat.

23

**alter, -era, -erum:** other , second, 7  
**caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum:** kill, cut down, 4  
**certāmen, -minis n.:** struggle, contest, 4  
**Cūriātius, -i m.:** Curiatius, 7  
**dēfessus, -a, -um:** wearied, exhausted, worn 2  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus:** break, shatter, 3

21 **alter:** *the other man; ‘alter...alter’*  
is often translated ‘the one...the other’  
**vulnere:** *because of...; abl. of cause*  
**animō:** *in spirit; abl. of respect*  
22 **proelium:** nom. pred.; illud is nom. subj.

**Horātius, -i m.:** Horatius, 4  
**iaceō, -ēre, -uī:** to lie, lie low, 2  
**spoliō (1):** to despoil, plunder, 5  
**sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum:** hold up, endure, 5  
**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 4

pred. respectively  
22 **sustinentem:** pres. pple  
23 **iacentem:** *(him)....; i.e. Cūriātius, as he was lying on the ground. Horātius takes the armor.*

## 8a. Ancus Marcius

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs Numae Pompiliī, quārtus rēx creātus est. 1  
Ut Numa in pāce religiōnēs īstituerat, sīc Ancus caerimōniās  
īnstituit, quibus bella posteā indicta sunt. Sacerdōtēs, quibus id  
negōtium mandātum est, fētiālēs appellāvit.

Bellīs cum urbibus Latīnōrum gestīs, cīvēs Rōmam trādūxit. 5  
Iāniculum, quī collis trāns Tiberim est, cum urbe Ponte Subliciō  
coniūnxit. Carcer, quī etiam nunc exstat, sub monte Capitōlinō  
aedificātus est. Imperium usque ad mare prōlātum est, et in ōre  
Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita est.

Ancō rēgnante, vir quīdam, nōmine Lucumō, habitābat 10

**aedificō** (1): make a building, build, 2

**Ancus, -ī m.**: Ancus, 6

**caerimōnia, -ae f.**: ceremony, rite, 3

**Capitōlinus, -a, -um**: Capitoline, 4

**carcer, -eris m.**: prison, 2

**collis, -is m.**: hill, 3

**condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum**: found, store, 6

**coniungō, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum**: join, 2

**exstō** (1): to stand forth; exist, 1

**fētiālis, -e**: fetial; diplomatic, 1

**habitō** (1): to inhabit, dwell, live, 2

**Iāniculum, -ī n.**: Janiculum hill, 3

**indīcō, -ere, -dīxi, -dictum**: declare, appoint 3

**Lucumō, Lucumōnis m.**: Lucumo, 5

**mandō** (1): to entrust, give, commit, 5

**Mārcius, -ī n.**: Marcius, Ancus Marcius, 1

**mare, maris n.**: sea, 6

2 **Ut...īnstituerat**: As...; or ‘just as,’ ut + ind. introducing a clause of comparison

**sīc**: so...; correlative, corresponding to ut

3 **quibus bella**...: by which; abl. means  
**quibus id**...: to...; dat. ind. obj.

**id**: this; demonstrative adj. is, ea, id  
**appellāvit**: governs a double acc.

5 **Bellīs...gestīs**: abl. abs., PPP gerō  
**cīvēs**: i.e. the Latins

**Rōmam**: to Rome; acc. place to which towns, cities, small islands do not use the preposition ‘ad’ to express place to which

6 **quī**: which...; relative

**Ponte Subliciō**: with the *Pons Sublius*;

**negōtium, ī n.**: task, business, occupation, 2

**nepōs, nepōtis m.**: grandson, descendant, 3

**Numa, -ae m.**: Numa, 6

**nunc**: now, at present, 3

**ōs, ūris n.**: face, mouth, 4

**Ōstia, -ae f.**: Ostia, 1

**Pompilius, -ī m.**: Pompilius, 2

**pōns, pontis m.**: bridge, 7

**prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latum**: carry forward 4

**quartus, -a, -um**: one-fourth, 2

**religiō, -nis f.**: spiritual practice, rites, 1

**sacerdōs, -dōtis m. f.**: priest, 4

**sīc**: thus, in this way, 6

**sublicius, -a, -um**: on wooden piles, 1

**trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum**: lead over, 3

**trāns**: across, over, 3

**usque**: up to, until; all the way, 3

this is the proper name for the wooden bridge that crosses the Tiber river

7 **etiam**: even

**sub**: at the foot of...

8 **imperium**: just as rēgnum, imperium can refer to power or, as here, to the physical extent of the power: ‘rule’ or ‘power’

**usque ad**: up to..., right up to...; note that mare is neuter 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. acc., not abl.

10 **Ancō rēgnante**: abl. abs.

**vir quīdam**: a certain man

**nōmine**: by name; a popular abl. of respect

Lucumō is nom. in apposition to vir

## 8b. Ancus Marcius

Tarquiniīs, quae urbs Etrūsca erat. Pater eius erat Dēmarātus, profugus Corinthius. Lucumō in mātrimōnium Tanaquīlem, mulierem nōbilem, dūxerat. Etrūscī spernēbant Lucumōnem, exulis filium. Tanaquil, quae ferre indignitātem nōn poterat, cōnsilium migrandī Rōmam cēpit. Facile coniugī persuādet.

15

Dum iter faciunt, aquila dīcitur pilleum ab capite Lucumōnis abstulisse et rursus reposuisse. Laeta Tanaquil accēpit id augurium potentiae futūrae. Etrūscī enim caelestium prōdigiorum perītī erant. Postquam Rōmam vēnērunt, Lucumō nōmen L. Tarquinium Prīscum sibi sūmpsit. Ibi paulātim īsignis factus est dīvitiīs 20

**aquila**, -ae f.: eagle, eagle standard, 1  
**auferō**, auferre, abstulī, ablātūs: take away, carry away, 5  
**augurium**, -ī n.: augury, divination, 2  
caelestis, -e: celestial, heavenly; subs. gods, 2  
**Corinthius**, -ī m.: Corinth, 2  
**Dēmarātus**, -ī m.: Demaratus, 1  
**dīvitiae**, -ārum f.: riches, wealth, 1  
exul, exulis m.: exile, 2  
facilis, -e: easy, 4  
indignitās, -tatis f.: indignity, outrage, 2  
**īsignis**, -e: distinguished, noted, 2  
laetus, -a, -um: happy, joyful, glad, 4  
**Lucumō**, **Lucumōnis** m.: Lucumo, 5  
**mātrimōnium**, -īi n.: marriage, 7

- 11 **Tarquiniīs**: in *Tarquiniī*; locative, place where; this Etruscan city is plural in form; Lucumo will take his name from the city and be called Tarquinius, ‘from Tarquiniī’  
**quae urbs**: which city
- 12 **in mātrimōnium...dūxerat**: plpf. dūcō; a common way to express that a male is marrying a female
- 13 **Lucumōnem**: acc. sg. Lucumo
- 14 **ferre**: to endure, to bear; irregular inf. ferō
- 15 **migrandi**: of...; gen. sg., a gerund (-ing) is a verbal noun (stem + nd + 2<sup>nd</sup> decl. sg. endings). In English, it is commonly formed with the ending -ing: e.g. Running is fun..
- Rōmam**: to...; acc. place to which
- Facile**: easily; irregular adv.
- coniugī**: dat. ind. obj.
- 17 **Laeta**: happily, joyously; adj. in the nom. often may be translated as adverbs

**migrō** (1): to travel, migrate, 3  
**mulier**, **mulieris** f.: woman, 5  
**paulātim**: gradually, little by little, 2  
**perītus**, -a, -um: experienced , 4  
**pilleus**, -ī m.: cap, 1  
**postquam**: after, when, 6  
**potentia**, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 3  
**Prīscus**, -ī m.: Priscus, 3  
**prōdigium**, -ī n.: omen, portent, 3  
**profugus**, -ī m.: a fugitive, refugee, 2  
**repōnō**, -ere, -posuī: to place or put back, 2  
**rūrsus**: again, backward, back, 2  
**spernō**, -ere, sp̄rēvī, sp̄retūm: spurn, reject, 3  
**sumō**, sumere, sumpsi, -mptūm: take (up), 5  
**Tanaquil**, -is f.: Tanaquil, 6

- abstulisse**, **reposuisse**: pf. inf. auferō, repōnō
- 18 **futūrae**: future; ‘going to be,’ fut. act. pple of sum, esse modifying potentiae
- enīm**: for...; postpositive, translate first in the sentence
- perītī**: nom. predicate governing a gen. obj.
- 19 **Rōmam**: to...; acc. place to which
- L. Tarquinium Prīscum**: *Lucius Tarquinius Priscus*; the cognomen ‘Priscus’ means ‘elder’ and was added much later to distinguish this Tarquinius from his descedent, the 7<sup>th</sup> and last king of Rome, L. Tarquinius Superbus
- 20 **sibi**: for himself; dat. of interest
- factus est**: he was made; īsignis is nom. pred.
- dīvitiīs**: in...; abl. of respect with īsignis

## 8c. Ancus Marcius

aliīsque rēbus. Postrēmō in amīcitiam rēgis receptus tūtor līberōrum rēgis testāmentō īstitūtus est. Ancus annōs quattuor et vīgintī rēgnāvit.

23

**amīcitia, -ae, f.**: friendship, 5

**Ancus, -ī m.**: Ancus, 6

**postrēmus, -a, -um**: last, 3

**quattuor**: four, 5

**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: accept, take, 4

**testāmentum, -ī n.**: a will, 1

**tūtor, -ōris m.**: guardian; defender, 2

**vīgintī**: twenty, 6

21 **aliīsque rēbus**: *in...*; abl. of respect

**in amīcitiam...receptus**: for this participial phrase, assume Tarquinius as the subject

**tūtor**: predicate nom. after īstitūtus est

22 **īstitūtus est**: *was appointed*

**annōs...vīgintī**: *for...*; acc. of duration of time

## 9a. Tarquinius Priscus

Iam filiī Ancī prope adulū erant. Sed Tarquinius ipse rēx creārī 1 cupiēbat. Is p̄̄imus palam rēgnū petiit, memorāns officia p̄̄ivāta ac p̄̄ublica et benignitātem in omnēs. Magnō cōsēnsū populus Rōmānus eum rēgnāre iussit.

Tarquinius, Latīnī bellō victīs, lūdōs magnificōs fēcit. Tum 5 p̄̄imum locus circō, quī Maximus dīcitur, dēsignātus est. Lūdī sollemnēs mānsērunt, Rōmānī aut Magnī appellātī. Magna quoque opera ā rēge incepta sunt, ut populus nōn quiētior in pāce quam in bellō esset. Mūrō lapideō urbem cingere parāvit, et loca circā forum aliāsque convallēs cloācīs siccāvit. Fundāmenta aedis Iovis 10 in Capitōliō iēcit.

**adolescō, -ere, adolevī:** to grow up, 3  
**adēs, -is f.:** temple, pl. house, 2  
**Ancus, -ī m.:** Ancus, 6  
**benignitās, -tatis f.:** kindness, 1  
**Capitōliūm, -ī n.:** Capitolium, 5  
**cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum:** surround, gird, 1.  
**circā:** about, around, 4  
**circus, -ī m.:** racetrack, circuit 3  
**cloāca, -ae f.:** sewer, 2  
**consensus, -ūs m.:** agreement, consent, 5  
**convallis, -is m.:** valley, deep lowland, 1  
**dēsignō (1):** to mark out, assign, 1  
**fundāmentum, -ī n.:** foundation, 1  
**iaciō, -ere, iēci, iactum:** throw, cast, 2  
**incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptum:** begin, 5

1 **prope:** nearly; here as an adv.  
**rēx:** predicate nom. after pass. inf. creārī  
2 **Is p̄̄imus:** he first...  
**memorāns:** nom. sg. pple  
3 **in...:** toward..., upon...  
**magnō cōsēnsū:** with...; abl. of manner  
5 **Latīnī...victīs:** abl. abs., PPP vincō  
**fēcit:** produced, created  
6 **p̄̄imum:** adverbial acc.  
**circō:** for...; dat. of purpose  
**Maximus:** i.e. the Circus Maximus  
**dīcitur:** is called; + nom. pred.  
7 **Rōmānī aut Magnī:** i.e. the Roman Games  
or Great Games; nom. pred. after the PPP  
**appellātī:** PPP modifying lūdī  
8 **opera:** i.e. building projects  
**ut...esset:** so that... might...; purpose +

**Iuppiter, Iovis m.:** Jupiter, 4  
**lapideus, -a, -um:** of stone, 1  
**lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6  
**magnificus, -a, -um:** splendid, magnificent, 1  
**maneō, -ēre, mansī:** to stay, wait, wait for, 7  
**memorō (1):** to recall, mention, 1  
**mūrus, -ī m.:** wall, rampart, 3  
**officium, -ī, n.:** duty, 4  
**palam:** openly, publicly, 3  
**p̄̄ivō (1):** deprive of, rob, strip from , 3  
**prope:** nearly almost; near , 5  
**quiētus, -a, -um:** resting, calm, undisturbed 4  
**siccō (1):** to dry, 2  
**sollemnīs, -e:** solemn, 1

impf. subj. of sum, esse  
**quam:** than...; adverbial conjunction  
introducing a clause of comparison  
9 **Mūrō lapideō:** abl. of means  
10 **forum:** i.e. the Forum Rōmānum in a  
lowland at the base of the Capitoline and  
Palatine hills; Rome would later have  
numerous fora, ‘markets,’ in the city  
**cloācīs:** abl. means; These were likely open  
ditches that were later covered. The use of  
cloācae was likely adapted from irrigation  
ditches employed by farmers.  
**Iovis:** gen. Jupiter (Iovis, Iovī, Iovem, Love)  
11 **in: on...;** the Capitoline hill has two peaks:  
one peak holds the temple of Jupiter;  
the other peak, the temple of Juno Moneta  
**iēcit:** laid; ‘threw down’

## 9b. Tarquinius Priscus

Eō ferē tempore in rēgiā prōdigium mīrabile fuit. Caput puerī 12 dormientis, cui Servius Tullius fuit nōmen, multōrum in cōspectū ārsit. Servī, quī aquam ad restinguendam flammam ferēbant, ab rēgīnā retentī sunt. Mox cum puer ē somnō excitātus esset, flamma 15 abiit. Tum, abductō in sēcrētum virō, Tanaquil, “Vidēsne tū hunc puerum,” inquit, “quem tam humilī cultū ēducāmus? Lūmen profectō portendit eum aliquando nōbīs praesidiō futūrum esse. Proinde artibus līberālibus ērudiendus est.” Ingenium iuvenis vērē rēgium erat. Tarquinius igitur eī filiam suam dēspondit. 20

**abducō, -ere, dūxī, ductum:** lead/take away 1  
**abeō, -ire, -ī, -itus:** go away, depart, 1  
**aliquandō:** sometimes, at some time, 3  
**ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum:** be on fire, burn, 1  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 7  
**conspectus, -ūs, f.:** look, sight, view, 1  
**cultus, -ūs m.:** culture, refinement, 3  
**dēspondō, -ere, -spondī:** to betroth, 3  
**dormiō, -ire, -īvī:** to sleep, 1  
**ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum:** lead out, draw, 1  
**ērudiō, -ire, -īvī, -itum:** educate, instruct, 2  
**excitō (1):** to rouse, stir up; awaken, 6  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**flamma, -ae f.:** flame, fire, torch, love, 3  
**humilis, -e:** on the ground, low; humble, 2  
**ingenium, -ī n.:** intellect, talent; character, 5  
**līberālis, -e:** of or befitting a free man, 2  
**lūmen, lūminis n.:** light, 1

- 12 **Eō...tempore:** at...; abl. of time when  
**in rēgiā:** in the royal house; rēgius-a-um is  
 an adj, but rēgia, -ae f. is a noun  
 13 **dormientis:** (while)...; pres. pple  
**cui...fuit:** to whom...was; dat. of possession  
 with sum may be translated one of three  
 ways: (1) ‘to whom... was,’ (2) ‘whose...  
 was,’ or (3) ‘who had...’  
**ārsit:** burst into flames; inceptive pf. tense  
 14 **ad restinguendam flammam:** for putting  
 out the flame; ‘for the flame (going) to be  
 put out,’ ad + noun + gerundive (fut. pass.  
 pple) expresses purpose. Perform a ‘gerund-  
 gerundive flip’ and translate the noun +

**mīrabilis, -e:** amazing, wonderful, 1  
**mox:** soon, 4  
**nōs:** we, us, 3  
**portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum:** foretell, 1  
**praesidium, -ī n.:** garrison, protection, 5  
**prōdigium, -ī n.:** omen, portent, 3  
**proinde:** then, therefore, consequently, 2  
**rēgina, -ae f.:** queen, 2  
**rēgius, -a, -um:** royal, of the king or queen, 6  
**restinguō, -ere, restinxī:** put out, quench, 2  
**retineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum:** to hold back, 3  
**sēcrētus, -a, -um:** secret, private, 1  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 6  
**somnus, -ī m.:** sleep, 2  
**Tanaquil, -is f.:** Tanaquil, 6  
**tū:** you, 6  
**Tullius, -ī m.:** Tullius, 5

- gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + object  
 15 **Cum...excitātus esset:** plpf. pass. subj.  
 16 **abductō...virō:** abl. abs., PPP abducō;  
 Translate the noun virō, ‘husband,’ first.  
**vidēs-ne:** -ne is an enclitic introducing a  
 yes/no question, leave -ne untranslated  
 17 **tam humilī cultū:** from...; abl. of source;  
 humili is a 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj., abl. sg.  
 18 **eum...futūrum esse:** that...; ind. disc.  
 with a fut. inf. of sum, esse  
**nōbīs praesidiō:** as protection for us; or  
 ‘serves as protection for us;’ a double dative  
 construction (dat. of interest + dat. of  
 purpose)

## 9c. Tarquinius Priscus

Etsī Ancī fīlīī duo anteā īrātī fuerant, quod peregrīnus Rōmae rēgnābat, tum maior erat indignātiō, quoniam servō iam rēgnūm patēre vidēbātur. Rēgem igitur interfīcere rēgnūmque occupāre constituērunt. Ex pāstōribus duo ferōcissimī ad facinus dēlēctī in vestibulō rēgiae speciē rixae in sē omnēs appāritōrēs rēgiōs 25 convertērunt. Inde vocātī ad rēgem dīcere in vicem iussī sunt. ūnus rem expōnit. Dum intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam secūrim in caput rēgis dējēcit; relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambō forās fugiunt. Tarquinium moribundum appāritōrēs excipiunt; illōs fugientēs līctōrēs comprehendunt. 30

**alter, -era, -erūm:** other , second, 7

**ambo:** both, two together, 3

**Ancus, -ī m.:** Ancus, 6

**appāritōr, -ōris f.:** servant, 3

**āvertō, -ere, -vertī:** turn aside, turn away, 3

**comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum:** to grasp, seize, 5

**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn, reverse, 6

**dēcīō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw/cast down 4

**dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, select, 3

**ēfferō, -ere, -tuli, -lātum:** carry out, lift, 2

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 3

**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take out, receive, 5

**expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** set forth, 5

**facinus, -noris n.:** deed, action; crime, 3

**forās:** out of doors, 1

**indignātiō, -tiōnis f.:** indignity, outrage, 4

**intentus, -a, -um:** attentive, intent, 3

21 **Etsī:** although...; ‘even if,’ the clause is concessive

**Ancī:** gen. sg.

**fuerant:** 3p plpf. sum

**quod:** because...; causal quod clause

**Rōmae:** at...; locative, place where

22 **servō:** for...; dat of interest

23 **vidēbātur:** seemed; common translation for the passive video

24 **ad:** for...; + acc. expressing purpose

25 **speciē rixae:** under the pretext of a quarrel; ‘with the appearance of a quarrel’

**īrātus, -a, -um:** anger, 6

**līctor, līctōris m.:** lictor (bodyguard), 5

**maiōr, maius:** greater, larger; older, 4

**morbūndus, -a, -um:** deadly, 1

**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 5

**pāstor, -is m.:** shepherd, 4

**pateō, -ere, -uī:** lie open, extend, 2

**peregrīnus, -a, -um:** foreign; *noun* foreigner 5

**quoniam:** since now, seeing that, 1

**rēgiōs, -a, -um:** royal, of the king or queen, 6

**rixa, -ae f.:** quarrel, dispute, 1

**secūris, -is f.:** axe, 1

**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 6

**species, -ei f.:** sight, look, appearance, 3

**tēlūm, -ī n.:** projectile, arrow, spear, 6

**vestibulum, -ī n.:** entrance, vestibule, 2

**vicem:** in turn, 1

**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 4

26 **in sē:** to them; ‘into themselves’

27 **vocātī:** modifying pāstōrēs, the missing subject of the sentence, PPP vocō

**in vicem:** in turn; i.e. one after the other

28 **in eum:** upon him; i.e. on the one talking

**tōtus:** entirely; an adj. in the nom. may be translated as an adv.

**ēlātum:** PPP from ēf-ferō

29 **relictō...tēlō:** abl. abs., PPP relinquō

30 **līctōrēs:** nom. pl., illōs fugientēs is acc. pl. the lictors are the bodyguards of the king

## 9d. Tarquinius Priscus

Magnus sequitur populī tumultus, inter quem Tanaquil claudī rēgiam iubet. Serviō inde celeriter ad sē vocātō, auxilium ḍrāvit. “Tuum est rēgnū,” inquit, “Servī, sī vir es, nōn eōrum quī alienīs manibus pessimum facinus fēcērunt. Ērige tē deōsque ducēs sequere, quī dīvīnā flammā hoc caput clārum futūrum esse 35 portendērunt. Nōlī perturbārī quod peregrīnus es. Etiam nōs peregrīnī rēgnāvimus. Sī propter subitam rem cōnsilia fingere nōn potes, mea tamen cōnsilia sequere.”

Cum iam clāmor multitudinis vix sustinērī posset, Tanaquil ex superiore parte rēgiae populum ita allocūta est: “Cum vulnus rēgis 40

alienus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5  
alloquor, loquī, locūtus: to speak, address, 3  
celeriter: swiftly, quickly, 5  
clāmor, clāmoris f.: cry, shout, 3  
claudō, -ere, -di, -sum: to close, enclose, 6  
dīvinus, -a, -um: divine, 2  
ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rectum: raise up, lift, 2  
facinus, -noris n.: deed, action; crime, 3  
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum: make up, imagine, 1  
flamma, -ae f.: flame, fire, torch, love, 3  
manus, -ūs f.: hand; group 7  
meus, -a, -um: my, mine, 6  
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūtī: not...wish, be unwilling, 4  
nōs: we, us, 3

- 31 **sequitur**: 3s pres. dep. sequor; translate in the active voice  
**inter quem**: *in the midst of whom*; ‘among whom’  
**claudī**: pass. inf.  
32 **Serviō...vocātō**: abl. abs.  
**ad sē**: Ths reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the main clause, Tanaquil  
33 **Servī**: *Servius*; voc. direct address; nom. forms with -ius become -ī in the vocative  
**nōn eōrum**: *not theirs*; This predicate gen. is parallel to the predicate *tuum*  
**alienīs manibus**: abl. means, the sons of Ancus did not perform courageous actions but instead hired assasins to kill Tarquin  
34 **Ērige**: sg. imperative  
**ducēs**: *as guides, as leaders*; in apposition  
35 **sequere**: sg. dep. imperative, sequor  
**hoc caput...futūrum esse**: *that...; ind. disc.*

ōrō (1): pray , entreat, beseech, 3  
peregrīnus, -a, -um: foreign; noun foreigner 5  
perturbō (1): disturb, throw into confusion, 3  
pessimus, -a, -um: worst, very bad, 1  
portendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum: foretell, 1  
servus, -ī, m.: slave, 6  
subeō, -ire, -iī: go under, go up, approach, 1  
superior, -ius: higher, upper, previous, 6  
sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tentum: hold up, endure, 5  
Tanaquil, -is f.: Tanaquil, 6  
tumultus, -ūs m.: uproar, tumult, confusion, 1  
tuus, -a, -um: your, yours, 2  
vix: with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4  
vulnus, -eris n.: wound, blow, 4

with fut. inf. sum.

**clārum**: acc. predicate following futūrum esse. Since clārus means ‘bright’ or ‘distinguished,’ Tanaquil invokes both meanings and suggests that the bright flames foretell a time when Servius’ life will be clārus, ‘famous’ and ‘distinguished.’

36 **Nōlī perturbārī**: *don’t be troubled*; ‘be unwilling to be troubled,’ neg. imperative formed by the irreg. imperative nōlō + inf.

**quod**: because...; causal quod clause

38 **potes**: 2s pres. possum

**sequere**: sg. dep. imperative, sequor

39 **Cum...posset**: *when...; impf. subj. possum*

40 **superiore parte**: *upper floor*

*Cum...: although...;* the tamen that follows in the main clause indicates that this cum introduces a concessive clause

## 9e. Tarquinius Priscus

grave sit, iam tamen ad sē redit; brevī tempore rēgem ipsum vidēbitis. Interim vult Servium Tullium rem pūblicam administrāre.” Itaque Servius per aliquot diēs, cum Tarquinius iam mortuus esset, suās opēs firmāvit. Tum dēmum mors rēgis nuntiāta est. Servius, praesidiō firmō mūnītus, prīmus iniussū populī 35 voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit.

---

**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3

**aliquot:** several, 5

**brevis, -e:** short, brief, 5

**dēmum:** at length, finally, 1

**firmō (1):** make strong, strengthen, support, 3

**iniussū:** without orders, 3

**interim:** meanwhile, in the meantime, 4

**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 6

**mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 5

**nuntius, -ī m.:** messenger, 3

**ops, opis f.:** power; pl. resources, influence, 6

**praesidium, -ī n.:** garrison, protection, 5

**Tullius, -ī m.:** Tullius, 5

**voluntās, -tatis f.:** will, wish, permission, 2

31 **grave:** neuter nom. sg., 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj.

**sit:** 3s pres. subj. of sum in a cum clause;  
translate as you would an indicative

**tamen:** as often, indicates that the preceding  
cum-clause is concessive in sense

**redit:** 3s pres. redeō

**brevī tempore:** *in...*; abl. time when

32 **vult:** 3s pres., irregular volō, velle  
**rem pūblicam:** *the republic;* i.e. public  
affairs

33 **per:** *over*

**aliquot:** indeclinable adj.

**cum...mortuus esset:** *since...*; causal in  
sense, plpf. deponent subj. morior

34 **opēs:** acc. pl. from ops, opis

35 **Servius...prīmus:** i.e. Servius was the  
first to....

35 **mūnītus:** PPP mūniō

**iniussū...voluntāte:** *without...(but)*  
*with...;* abl. means

36 **patrum:** i.e. senators; gen. pl.

## 10a. Servius Tullius

Servius prīmū cēnum īstituit et populum in classēs prō 1  
opibus discrīpsit. ex cēnsū posteā officia bellī pācisque tribūta  
sunt. Ad multitūdinem crescentem duo collēs, Quirīnālis  
Vīminālisque, ad urbē additī sunt. Imperium quoque hōc cōnsiliō  
auctum est. Fānum erat nōbile Diānae Ephesiae, quod commūniter 5  
ā cīvitātibus Asiae factum esse dīcēbātur. Servius per principēs  
Latīnōrum, eō cōsēnsū cīvitātum Asiāticārum vehementer  
laudātō, tandem populīs Latīnīs persuāsit ut Rōmae cum populō  
Rōmānō fānum Diānae facerent. Ea erat cōfessiō caput rērum  
Rōmam esse, dē quō totiēns certātum erat. 10

- addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: to bring to, add, 7  
Asiāticus, -a, -um: Asian, of Asia, 1  
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6  
cēnsus, -ūs m.: census, registration, 3  
certō (1): to contend, strive, 2  
classis, -is f.: fleet, 4  
collis, -is m.: hill, 3  
commūnis, -e: common, 2  
cōfessiō, -iōnis f.: confession, 1  
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5  
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum: grow, increase, 4  
Diāna, -ae f.: Diana, 2

- 1 prō opibus: according to wealth; abl. ops  
2 ad: for...; expressing purpose  
3 Quirīnālis Vīminālisque: nom. sg. in  
apposition to duo collēs; two of the seven  
hills of Rome  
4 hōc cōnsiliō: by this plan  
5 Fānum erat nōbile: there was...; nōbile is  
3<sup>rd</sup> decl. neut. sg. with nom. subject fānum  
Diānae Ephesiae: for...; dat. of interest  
quod...: relative clause  
commūniter: adv.  
6 factum esse: to...; pf. pass. inf. faciō  
7 eō cōsēnsū...laudātō: this consensus...;

- discrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī: distribute, divide, 2  
Ephesius, -a, -um: of Ephesus, Ephesian 1  
fānum, -ī n.: shrine, temple, 2  
laudō (1): to praise, glorify, 5  
officium, -ī, n.: duty, 4  
ops, opis f.: power; pl. resources, influence, 6  
Quirīnālis, -e: Quirinal Hill, 1  
tandem: finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6  
totiēns: so often, so many times, 3  
tribō, -ere, tribū, tribūtum: assign, bestow 3  
vehementer: vehemently, violently, 2  
Vīminālis, -e: Viminal , 1

- abl. abs.; eō is a demonstrative adj.  
8 populīs Latīnīs: dat. ind. object of verb  
ut...facerent: that...; indirect command  
with impf. subj. in secondary sequence  
Rōmae: at Rome; locative, place where  
9 Diānae: for...; dat. of interest  
Ea: this...; a demonstrative  
caput...esse: (namely) that...; ind. disc.  
in apposition to cōfessiō  
10 dē: about...; relative clause  
certātum erat: it had...; i.e. ‘they had  
contested,’ an impersonal use of the plpf.  
pass. that may often be translated as active

## 10b. Servius Tullius

Lūcius Tarquinius, Prīscī filius, interdum querēbātur quod Servius iniussū populī rēgnāret. Servius igitur agrum prius captum ex hostibus virītim dīvīsit; hōc modō voluntātem plebis conciliāvit. Populus deinde maximō cōnsēnsū eum rēgnāre iussit.

Rēx duās filiās Lūciō atque Arruntī Tarquinīs, Priscī filiīs, in mātrimōnium dederat. Mōrēs hōrum disparēs erant. Nam Arrūns Tarquinius mītis erat, L. Tarquinius ferōx et cupidus rēgnī. Dueae Tulliae item dispārēs erant. Forte Arrūns ferōcem in mātrimōnium dūixerat. Similitūdō celeriter L. Tarquinium et ferōcem Tulliam contrahit. Cum prope continuīs caedibus domōs vacuās fēcissent, 20

**Arrūns, Arruntis** m.: Arruns, 4

**caedēs, -is f.:** slaughter, killing, 4

**celeriter:** swiftly, quickly, 5

**consensus, -ūs m.:** agreement, consent, 5

**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous, successive, 3

**contrahō, -ere, -trāxi:** draw together, 2

**cupidus, -a, -um:** desirous, eager, keen, 3

**dispār (dispāris):** unequal, unlike, 3

**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum:** divide, separate, 7

**iniussū:** without orders, 3

**interdum:** sometimes, from time to time, 1

**item:** also, likewise, in like manner, 2

**Lūcius, -ī m.:** Lucius, 3

11 **Prīscī:** of (*Lucius Tarquinius*) *Priscus*; the 5<sup>th</sup> king of Rome

quod...rēgnāret: on the grounds that...;  
'because,' causal quod clause; quod + subj.  
suggests an alleged cause from a character's  
--rather than narrator's—point of view:  
'because (as he claims) Servius ruled...'

12 **agrum:** farmland; not 'field'

**prius:** comparative adv., prior

13 **hōc modō:** in...; abl. of manner

15 **Lūciō...Arruntī:** dat. indirect object

**Tarquinīs:** the *Tarquins*; dat. referring to  
Lucius Tarquinius and Arruns Tarquinius

**Prīscī:** see linex 11

16 **mōrēs:** characters; elsewhere 'habits,'

**mātrimōnium, -ī n.:** marriage, 7

**mītis, -e:** mild, gentle, 1

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 6

**mōs, mōris m.:** custom, manner, law, 3

**prior, prius:** before, earlier , 5

**Prīscus, -ī m.:** Priscus, 3

**prope:** nearly almost; near , 5

**queror, querī, questum:** complain, lament, 3

**similitūdō, -inis f.:** likeness, resemblance 1

**Tullia, -ae f.:** Tullia, 4

**vacuus, -a, -um:** empty, fear, vacant, 1

**virītim:** man by man, to each man, 1

**voluntās, -tatis f.:** will, wish, permission, 2

17 **L. Tarquinius (erat):** add linking verb

rēgnī: for...; objective gen.

18 **Duae Tulliae:** The two *Tullias*; Daughters  
are all named from the feminine form of the  
family name: hence, Servius Tullius has  
two daughters named Tullia.

19 **Forte:** by chance; abl. as adverb, from  
fors, fortis

20 **ferōcem:** the fierce one of the two Tullias

**Cum...fēcissent:** after...; plpf. subj., the  
verb governs a double accusative: direct  
obj. and acc. predicate

**domōs:** fem. acc. pl.

**prope:** nearly; adverb

## 10c. Servius Tullius

iunguntur nūptiīs. Paulātim inde mulier coniugem ad caedem Servī excitat. Itaque Tarquinius prius omnibus rēbus cīvēs et maximē patrēs conciliāvit.

Postrēmō, ubi iam tempus agendī vīsum est, stīpātus armātīs in forum irrūpit. Inde in rēgiā sēde prō Cūriā sedēns patrēs in Cūriam 25 per praecōnem ad rēgem Tarquinium vocārī iussit. Ibi incūsābat rēgem, quod rēgnum muliebrī dōnō occupāvisset; querēbātur item dē cōsiliīs populāribus, dē agrō plēbī dīvisō, dē cēnsū īstitūtō.

Dum loquitur, Servius intervēnit et ā vestibulō Cūriae magnā vōce, “Quid tibi vīs,” inquit, “Tarquinī? Quā audāciā tū, mē vīvō, 30

armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5  
audācia, -ae f.: boldness, audacity, 2  
caedēs, -is f.: slaughter, killing, 4  
cēnsus, -ūs m.: census, registration, 3  
Cūria, -ae f.: senate house, Curia, 8  
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum: divide, separate, 7  
dōnum, -i n.: gift, 4  
excitō (1): to rouse, stir up; awaken, 6  
incūsō (1): to accuse, complain of, 3  
interveniō -īre -vēnī: come upon, intervene 1  
irrumpō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 2  
item: also, likewise, in like manner, 2  
iungō, -ere, iunxī, -iunctum: to join, 2  
loquor, loqui, locūtus: to speak, address, 1  
muliebris, -e: womanly, of a woman, 1  
mulier, mulieris f.: woman, 5

21 nūptiīs: abl. of means  
22 prius: first; comparative adv., prior  
omnibus rēbus: in...; abl. of respect  
maximē: especially; or ‘in particular’ are  
usual translations for this superlative adv.  
24 ubi: when  
agendī: for...; gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)  
armātīs: with armed (men); substantive  
(adj. as noun) formed from the PPP  
25 irrūpit: the fierce L. Tarquinius is subj.  
in rēgiā sēde: i.e. on the throne  
prō: in front of...; abl. of place where  
patrēs: i.e. senators  
iussit: 3s pf. iubeō  
27 quod...occupāvisset: on the grounds  
that...; ‘because,’ causal quod clause with  
plpf. subj.; quod + subj. suggests an alleged

nūptiae, -ārum, f.: marriage, wedding, 1  
occupō (1): seize, occupy, 5  
paulātim: gradually, little by little, 2  
populāris, -e: of the people, popular, 4  
postrēmus, -a, -um: last, 3  
praecō, praecōnis m.: herald, 1  
prior, prius: before, earlier , 5  
queror, querī, questum: complain, lament, 3  
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī: to sit, sit down; set, 7  
sēdes, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6  
servus, -i, m.: slave, 6  
stīpō (1): to crowd together, stuff, pack, 1  
tū: you, 6  
vestibulum, -i n.: entrance, vestibule, 2  
vīvus, -a, -um: alive, living, 3  
vōx, vōcis, f.: voice, 7

cause from a character’s point of view  
muliebrī dōnō: abl. of means, 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-  
stem adj.  
28 agrō: farmland  
plēbī: among...; or ‘for...’ dat. of interest  
29 loquitur: 3s pres. dep., loquor  
ā: from...; Servius speaks from the  
entranceway  
magnā vōce: with...; dat. of manner  
30 tibi: for yourself; dat. of interest  
vīs: 2s pres. volō, velle  
Tarquinī: Tarquinius; voc. direct address;  
nom. with -ius become -ī in the vocative  
Quā audāciā: by what...; interrogative adj.  
mē vīvō: abl. abs.; subject and predicate in  
the abl. Supply ‘being’ in the translation.

## 10d. Servius Tullius

vocāre patrēs aut in sēde meā cōnsīdere ausus es?" Tarquinius ferōciter respondit sē sēdem patris suī tenēre, sē rēgnī hērēdem esse. Tum medium arripit Servium, ēlātumque ē Cūriā per gradūs dēicit; inde in Cūriam redit. Appāritōrēs rēgis fugiunt. Rēx ipse ā servīs Tarquiniī interficitur. Tullia, carpentō in forum invecta, 35 coniugem ēvocāvit rēgemque prīma appellāvit. Dum domum redit, dīcitur patrem in viā iacentem invēnisse et per corpus carpentum ēgisse. Hic locus posteā "scelerātus" vocātus est. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

39

**appāritor, -ōris f.:** servant, 3  
**arripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus:** snatch, grab, 2  
**audeō, -ere, ausus sum:** to dare, venture, 5  
**carpentum, -ī n.:** carriage , 1  
**cōsīdō, -ere, -sēdī:** to sit, settle, encamp, 1  
**Cūria, -ae f.:** senate house, Curia, 8  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw/cast down 4  
**ēfferō, -ere, -tulī, -lātum:** carry out, lift, 2  
**ēvocō (1):** call out, challenge, 1  
**gradus, -ūs m.:** step, pace; stairs, 1  
**hērēs, hērēdis, m./f.:** heir, heiress, 2  
**iaceō, -ere, -ui:** to lie, lie low, 2

31 **ausus es:** 2s pf. of semi-deponent audeō:  
translate as active

32 **sē...tenēre...(et) sē...esse:** that he... (and)  
that he...; ind. disc. The lack of a  
conjunction(asyndeton) suggests that  
Tarquinius was speaking quickly and listing  
one charge after another.

**suī:** gen. sg. suus, reflexive possessive adj.  
33 **medium Servium:** the waist of Servius;  
'the middle of Servius'

**ēlātum...dēicit:** In cases where English  
prefers to have two main verbs, e.g. carried  
off and threw down, Latin often prefers to  
make the first action a PPP (pf. pass. pple)  
and the second action the finite verb.

**invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum:** convey, ride in 3  
**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** to come upon,  
find, 5  
**meus, -a, -um:** my, mine, 6  
**quadrāgintā:** forty, 5  
**quattuor:** four, 5  
**respondeō, -ere, -dī, -ōnsus:** answer, reply, 4  
**scelerātus, -a, -um:** wicked, profane, guilty 1  
**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 6  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 6  
**Tullia, -ae f.:** Tullia, 4  
**Tullius, -ī m.:** Tullius, 5

**ēlātum** is PPP of efferō and modifies the  
missing acc. direct object (i.e. ')

**per gradūs:** over...

34 **redit:** pres. redeō

**ā...:** by...; abl. of agent

36 **(eum) appellāvit:** called (him)...; this verb  
governs a double acc.; supply eum

**prīma:** i.e. she was the first to...

**domum:** (to) home; acc. place to which

37 **dīcitur:** (she) is said to...

**invēnisse...ēgisse:** pf. inf. inveniō, agō

38 **"scelerātus":** The road was called the Via  
Scelerata, the 'Wicked Way'

39 **annōs...quadrāgintā:** for...; acc. of  
duration of time

## 11a. Tarquinius Superbus

Inde L. Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, cui propter facta cognōmen 1  
“Superbus” datum est. Prīncipēs patrum, quī Servium dīlēxerant,  
interfēcit. Suum corpus armātīs circumsaepsit. Iūdicia capitālīum  
rērum sine cōnsiliīs per sē sōlus exercēbat. Ita poterat occīdere, in  
exsilium agere, bonīs spoliāre omnēs quōs cupiēbat. 5

Etsī rēgēs superiōrēs senātūm dē omnibus rēbus cōnsulere solitī  
erant, Tarquinius domesticīs cōnsiliīs rem pūblicam administrāvit.  
Bellum, pācem, foedera, societātēs per sē ipse fēcit. Latīnōrum  
gentem sibi maximē conciliābat. Octāviō Mamiliō Tusculānō—is  
longē nōbilissimus Latīnōrum erat—fīliam in mātrimōnium dat. 10

**administrō** (1): to manage, direct; help, 3

**armātus, -a, -um:** armed, 5

**capitālis, -e:** capital, of the head, 1

**circumsaepīō -īre -saepsī:** hedge around, 1

**cognōmen, -minis n.:** cognomen, nickname, 6

**consulō, -ere, -ui, consultūm:** to consult, 3

**diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum:** to love, esteem, 1

**domesticus, -a, -um:** of a house, 1

**etsī:** even if, although, though, 3

**exerceō, -ere, -ui, ercitūm:** exercise, 3

**exsilium, -ii n.:** exile, 5

**foedus, -eris n.:** treaty, alliance, 5

**iūdiciūm, -i n.:** decision, judgment; trial, 3

**longē:** far, 4

**Mamilius, -i m.:** Mamilius, 1

**mātrimōnium, -ii n.:** marriage, 7

**occīdō, -ere, occīdi, occīsus:** kill, cut down, 7

**Octāviō, -ii m.:** Octavius, 1

**sine:** without , 5

**societās, -tātis f.:** association, alliance, 5

**soleō, -ere, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 4

**spoliō (1):** to despoil, plunder, 5

**superbus, -a, -um:** arrogant, proud, haughty 3

**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, previous, 6

**Tusculānus, -a, -um:** of Tusculum , 1

1 **cui:** to whom; dat. ind. obj.

**cognōmen:** the third name of a Roman male  
“**Superbus**”: thus, the full name Lucius  
Tarquinius Superbus, whom we often call  
in translation ‘Tarquin the Proud’

2 **patrum:** i.e. of the senators, gen. pl.  
**suūm corpus:** neuter acc. sg.

3 **armātīs:** with armed men  
**iūdicia capitālīum rērum:** the judgments  
in capital cases; i.e. legal decisions in  
cases involving life or death

4 **per sē:** by himself  
**occīdere...agere...spoliāre:** all three  
complementary infns. of poterat (possum)  
govern omnēs as their object; supply the  
missing conjunction ‘et’ (asyndeton)  
between the infinitives

5 **bonīs:** from...; abl. separation; neut. bona  
is a substantive (adj. functioning as a noun)

and denotes goods, property, or possessions

6 **Etsī:** even if; introducing a concessive  
clause

**superiōrēs:** previous; comparative adj.

**solitī erant:** had been accustomed; plpf. of  
semi-deponent soleō

7 **domesticīs cōsiliīs:** i.e. from the house or  
court of the king

**rem pūblicam:** public affairs; i.e. the  
government

8 **per sē:** by himself

**ipse:** (he) himself; intensive

9 **maximē:** especially, in particular; a  
common translation for the superlative

**Octāviō...Tusculānō:** Octavius Mamilius  
Tusculanus; dat. ind. obj.

**is...erat:** parenthetical clause,, is refers to

Octavius

## 11b. Tarquinius Superbus

Cum iam magna Tarquinī auctōritās inter Latīnōrum principēs esset, concilium in certam diem convocāvit. Conveniunt frequentēs prīmā lūce. Ipse Tarquinius diem quidem servāvit, sed paulō ante sōlis occāsum vēnit. Turnus Herdonius Arīcīnius ferōciter absentem Tarquinium accūsāvērat. Dīxit Tarquinium patientiam Latīnōrum temptāre et affectāre imperium in eōs. Rēx, hōc cognitō, quia prō imperiō palam Turnum interficere nōn poterat, cōfestim statuit falsō crīmine eum opprimere. Proxīmā 15 igitur nocte auctōre Tarquinī quīdam Arīcīnī, Turnō inimīcī, in dēversōrium eius magnum numerum gladiōrum clam intulērunt. 20

absēns, absentis (1): absent, 3  
accūsō (1): to accuse, blame, reprimand, 3  
affectō (1): to strive for, aim at, 1  
Arīcīnūs, -a, -um: of Aricia , 1  
auctor, auctōris m.: agent, creator, 3  
auctōritās, -tatis f.: authority, 4  
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6  
clam: secretly, in secret, 1  
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4  
concilium, -ii n.: meeting, rendezvous, 3  
cōfestim: at once, immediately, 3  
conveniō -ire -vēnī -ventus: come together, 6  
convoco (1): to call together, 4  
crīmen, crīminis n.: crime, 2  
dēversōrium, -i n.: lodging-place, inn, 3  
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum: deceive, cheat, 3  
frequēns, frequentis: crowded, 1

- 11 **cum...esset:** since...; causal in sense; impf. subj. sum; magna is a predicate placed early in the line for emphasis  
12 **in certam diem:** for...  
13 **prīmā lūce:** at...; abl. time when, a common expression for the dawn  
**quidem:** in fact; an adv.  
**servāvit:** kept; i.e. fulfilled the appointment  
**paulō:** a little; 'by a little,' dat. of degree of difference modifying the preposition ante  
14 **ferōciter:** adv. from 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adj. ferōx  
16 **Tarquinium...temptāre...affectāre:** that...; ind. disc.  
**in:** among

gladius, -ī m.: sword, 6  
Herdonius, -ī m.: Herdonius, 1  
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus: bring in, wage, 5  
inimīcus, -a, -um: hostile, unfriendly, 6  
lūx, lūcis m.: light, 2  
numerōs, -ī m.: number, multitude, 2  
occāsus, occāsūs m.: falling, setting, 1  
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum: oppress, overwhelm, 5  
palam: openly, publicly, 3  
patientia, -ae f.: endurance, patience, 1  
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6  
proximus, -a, -um: nearest, next, 5  
quia: because, 2  
servō (1): save, keep, preserve, 7  
sōl, sōlis m.: sun, 3  
temptō (1): attempt, test; attack, 2

- 17 **Hōc cognitō:** abl. abl., hōc refers to the accusation made in Tarquinius' absence  
18 **statuit:** decided; 'took a stand'  
**falsō:** false  
**eum:** i.e. Turnus  
19 **Proxīmā nocte:** on...; abl. of time when  
**auctōre Tarquinī:** Tarquinius (*being*) the agent; abl. absolute, both subject and predicate are abl., supply pple 'being'  
**quīdam Arīcīnī:** certain Aricini, certain inhabitants of Aricia; an indefinite pronoun  
**Turnō:** to...; dat. of special adj. inimīcī  
20 **intulērunt:** 3s pf. inferō

## 11c. Tarquinius Superbus

Tarquinius paulō ante lūcem ad sē principēs Latīnōrum vocāvit certiōrēsque dē gladiīs cēlātīs fēcit: “Cognōvī,” inquit, “Turnum cupere Latīnōrum sōlum imperium tenēre et iam necem omnium parāre.” Dūxit deinde eōs ad dēversōrium. Ubi gladiī ex omnibus locīs dēversōriī prōlātī sunt, manifesta vīsa est rēs, Turnusque in 25 catēnīs coniectus est.

Cōfestim concilium Latīnōrum convocātur. Ibi magna indignātiō oritur, gladiīs in mediō positīs. Itaque Turnus, indictā causā, in aquam Ferentīnam mersus est. Rēx, auctōritāte inter Latīnōs ita auctā, cum eīs renōvāvit foedus quod ā Tullō rēge anteā 30

- auctōritās, -tatis f.: authority, 4  
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum: increase, enrich, 6  
catēna, -ae f.: chain, fetter, shackle, 2  
cēlō (1): hide, conceal, 1  
certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6  
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum: learn, know, 4  
concilium, -ī n.: meeting, rendezvous, 3  
cōfestim: at once, immediately, 3  
conicō, -ere, -lēcī: throw together, hurl, 5  
convocō (1): to call together, 4  
dēversōrium, -ī n.: lodging-place, inn, 3  
Ferentīna, -ae f.: Ferentina, 1

- 21 paulō: *a little*; ‘by a little,’ dat. of degree of difference; lūcem refers to daybreak  
22 certiōrēs...fēcit: *made (them) more certain*; i.e. informed them, a common idiom in Julius Caesar’s work  
*Turnum...tenēre...parāre*: *that...;* ind. disc., one acc. subj.  
cēlātīs: PPP, cēlō  
23 sōlum: modifying Turnum  
Latīnōrum: modifying imperium  
24 Ubi: *when*

- foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5  
gladius, -ī m.: sword, 6  
indicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum: declare, appoint 3  
indignātiō, -tiōnis f.: indignity, outrage, 4  
lūx, lūcis m.: light, 2  
manifestus, -a, -um: clear, evident, 1  
mergō, -ere, -rsī, mersum: sink, drown, 1  
nex, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 3  
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6  
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry forward 4  
renovō (1): to renew, make new, 2  
Tullus, -ī m.: Tullus, 2

- 25 dēversōriī: *of (Turnus’) home*  
prōlātī sunt: 3p pf. pass. prōferō  
vīsa est: *seemed*; ‘was seen,’ ‘seem’ is a common translation for the passive videor  
28 oritur: 3s pres. dep. orior: translate as active  
gladiīs...positīs: abl. abs.  
indictā causā: *(his) legal case having been declared*; abl. abs., PPP indicō  
29 auctōritāte...auctā: abl. abs.  
30 quod: *which...;* relative clause

## 11d. Tarquinius Superbus

factum erat. Latīnī nōn repugnāvērunt, quamquam in eō foedere rēs Rōmāna superior erat. Mors enim Turnī docēbat potentiam Tarquinī ac perīculum eōrum quī resistēbant.

Tarquinius, quamquam iniūstus in pāce rēx fuit, ducem bellī tamen nōn prāvum sē praebuit. Is p̄im̄us cum Volscīs bellum 35 gessit et magnam praedam cēpit. In aliō bellō cum Gabiōs, vīcīnam urbem, vī capere nōn posset, fraude ac dolō per fīlium suum Sex. Tarquinium aggressus est.

Sextus enim, filius Tarquinī, quī minimus ex tribus erat, trānsiit Gabiōs, crūdēlitātem intolerābilem patris vehementer quaerēns 40

**aggređior, -i, -gressus:** go to, attack, 3  
**crūdēlītās, -tātis f.:** cruelty, crudeness, 3  
**doceō, -ēre, -ui, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**dolus, -i m.:** trick, deceit, 2  
**foedus, -eris n.:** treaty, alliance, 5  
**fraus, fraudis f.:** deceit, fraud, trickery, 3  
**Gabiī, -ōrum m.:** Gabii, 6  
**iniūstus, -a, -um:** unjust, 1  
**intolerābilis, -e:** unbearable, intolerable, 1  
**minimus, -a, -um:** very little, 1  
**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 6  
**potentia, -ae f.:** power, might, strength, 3  
**praebeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum:** present, put forth, 4

31 **factum erat:** pf. pass. faciō  
ēo: this; a demonstrative adj.  
32 **rēs Rōmāna:** the Roman state  
33 ...nōn prāvum: not a bad leader;  
i.e. a good leader;  
35 **praebuit:** showed (x) (y); governs a double  
acc., sē and ducem  
**Is p̄im̄us:** i.e. he was the first to...  
gessit: pf. gerō  
36 **Cum...posset:** since...; causal in sense,  
impf. subj. possum  
**Gabiōs:** Gabii; a single city with a plural  
name, just as Athens or Los Angeles

**praeda, -ae f.:** plunder, spoils 7  
**prāvus, -a, -um:** crooked, dishonest, bad, 1  
**quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum:** to seek,  
ask, inquire, 6  
**repugnō (1):** fight against, oppose, resist, 1  
**resistō, -ere, -stītī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7  
sex: six, 1  
**sextus, -a, -um:** sixth, 2  
**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, previous, 6  
**vehementer:** vehemently, violently, 2  
**vīcīnus, -a, -um:** neighboring, 3  
**Volscī, -ōrum m.:** Volscians, Volsci, 4

37 **vī:** irregular abl. of means, vīs  
38 **aggressus est:** pf. deponent; supply a  
missing object eam, ‘it.’  
39 **enim:** for...; postpositive: translate first in  
the sentence  
**minimus (nātū):** youngest; ‘least (by  
birth,’ the abl. of respect nātū, ‘by birth,’  
is often missing but understood  
**tribus:** abl. of trēs; There were three sons.  
**trānsiit:** pf. trānseō  
40 **Gabiōs:** to Gabii; acc. place to which  
**quaerēns:** nom. sg. pres. pple quaerō

## 11e. Tarquinius Superbus

atque adiuvāre Gabīnōs adversus eum pollicēns. Benignē ā Gabīnīs exceptus in cōnsilia pūblica adhibētur, et dēnique dux legitur. Proelia parva inter Rōmam Gabiōsque facta sunt, quibus Gabīnī superiōrēs erant. Gabīnī Sex. Tarquinium dōnō deōrum sibi missum esse ducem crēdidērunt.

45

Inde Sextus ūnum ex suīs Rōmam mīsit, quī mandāta patris peteret. Rēx nihil vōce respondit, sed tamquam rem dēlīberāns in hortum aedium trānsiit, sequente nūntiō fīlī; ibi inambulāns tacitus summa papāverum capita baculō dēiēcit. Nūntius, dēfessus interrogandō exspectandōque respōnsum, redit Gabiōs remque 50

- adhibeō, -ēre, -buī:** to apply, admit, employ 1  
**adiuvō (1):** to help, assist, 4  
**aedis, -is f.:** temple, pl. house, 2  
**baculum, -ī n.:** staff, 3  
**benignus, -a, -um:** kind, kindly, 3  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** believe, trust, 7  
**dēfessus, -a, -um:** wearied, exhausted, worn 2  
**dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum:** throw/cast down 4  
**dēlīberō (1):** to ponder, meditate, 2  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5  
**eō, īre, īī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**excipiō, -ere, -cepī, -ceptum:** take out; receive, welcome, 5  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**Gabīn, -ōrum m.:** Gabii (town), 6  
**Gabīnus, -a, -um:** (inhabitants) of Gabii, 6

- 41 **adiuvāre...pollicēns:** a single participle phrase; the inf. is governed by the pres. pple  
**Gabīnōs:** the inhabitants of Gabii  
**adversus eum:** i.e. against the king  
42 **exceptus:** welcomed; In Livy, Sextus wins sympathy by claiming to have been abused  
**dux:** as...; a predicative nom.  
**legitur:** is chosen  
43 **facta sunt:** The king and Sextus secretly planned these battles so that Sextus could increase his standing among the Gabii.  
**quibus:** in...; abl. of respect or place where  
44 **Sex(tum) Tarquinium...missum esse:** that...; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf.  
**dōnō...sibi:** as a gift...to them; 'serves as a gift for them,' a double dative (dat. of purpose and dat. of interest)

- hortus, -ī m.:** garden, 1  
**inambulō (1):** to walk back and forth, 1  
**interrogō (1):** to ask, question, 1  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**mandō (1):** to entrust, give, commit, 5  
**nuntius, -īī m.:** messenger, 3  
**papāver,** -is n.: a poppy, 1  
**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 4  
**pollicor, -cērī, -citus:** promise, offer, 4  
**respōnsum, -ī n.:** response, reply, 3  
**sex:** six, 1  
**sextus, -a, -um:** sixth, 2  
**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, previous, 6  
**tacitus, -a, -um:** silent, still, 1  
**tamquam:** as if, as much as, so to speak, 6  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 7

- ducem:** as a leader  
46 **ex suīs:** from his own (men); ellipsis  
**Rōmam:** locative, place to which  
**quī...peteret:** who would...; a relative clause of purpose with impf. subj.  
**mandāta:** orders; 'things ordered,' PPP  
47 **vōce:** by voice, by utterance; i.e. outloud  
48 **aedium:** gen. pl., but translate in the sg.  
**trānsiit:** pf. trānseō  
**sequente nūntiō:** abl. abs. with pres. pple  
**tacitus:** silently; nom. adj. as adv.  
49 **summa capita:** i.e. the poppy flowers at the top of the stems of the plants  
**dēiēcit:** cast off; i.e. cut off  
50 **interrogandō exspectandōque:** by...; abl. of means with two gerunds (-ing) + obj.  
**Gabiōs:** to...; accusative, place to which

## 11f. Tarquinius Superbus

mīram refert. Sextus intellēxit quid pater fierī vellet. Prīcipēs igitur cīvitātis variīs crīminibus necāvit. Rēs Gabīna, ita spoliāta, cōnsiliō auxiliōque rēgī Rōmānō sine certāmine gravī trāditur.

Gabiīs receptīs, Tarquinius ad negōtia urbāna animum convertit. Prīmum templum in monte Tarpeiō aedificāre tōtumque montem Iovī dēdicāre constituit. Hoc templum pater iam anteā vōverat. Ad hoc opus fabrīs Etrūscīs et operāriīs ex plēbe Rōmānā ūsus est. Plēbs etiam ad alia opera trāducta forōs in Circō fēcit Cloācamque Maximam sub terram ēgit, quam etiam nunc vidēmus. Multī colōnī Signiam Circeiōsque missī sunt quī praesidia urbī essent. 55 60

**aedificō** (1): make a building, build, 2

**certāmen, -minis n.**: struggle, contest, 4

**Circeiī, -ōrum m.**: Circeii (town), 1

**circus, -ī m.**: racetrack, circuit 3

**cloāca, -ae f.**: sewer, 2

**colōnus, -ī m.**: settler, colonist, 2

**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus**: turn, reverse, 6

**crīmen, crīminis n.**: crime, 2

**dēdīcō** (1): to dedicate, consecrate, 1

**faber, fabrī m.**: engineer, 1

**fīo, fierī, factus sum**: to be made, occur, 3

**forus, -ī m.**: benches, seats, bleachers, 1

**Gabīi, -ōrum m.**: Gabii, 6

**Gabīnus, -a, -um**: of Gabii, 6

**intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum**: to realize, understand, 2

**Iuppiter, Iovīs m.**: Jupiter, 4

**mīrus, -a, -um**: amazing, wonderful, strange 3

**necō** (1): to kill, slay, put to death, 6

51 **refert**: reports; 3s pres. referō is irregular and lacks a vowel before the 3s ending  
**quid...vellet**: what...; ind. question with impf. subj. volō, velle  
**fierī**: inf. of fīo, an irregular verb often used as the passive of faciō

52 **Rēs Gabīna**: The state of Gabii

53 **rēgī Rōmānō**: dat. ind. obj.

**gravī**: abl. sg., 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. has an ‘-ī’ where most nouns have an ‘-e.’

54 **Gabiīs receptīs**: abl. abs., PPP recipiō animūm: his attention

55 **prīmum**: first of all; adverbial acc.

**in monte Tarpeiō**: A steep cliff face on the side of the Capitoline hill.

**negōtium, ī n.**: task, business, occupation, 2

**nunc**: now, at present, 3

**operāriūs, -ī m.**: laborer, worker, 1

**praesidium, -ī n.**: garrison, protection, 5

**recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum**: accept, take, 4

**referō, -ferre, -tuli**: to report, bring back, 7

**sextus, -a, -um**: sixth, 2

**sine**: without , 5

**Singia, -ae f.**: Singia (town), 1

**spoliō** (1): to despoil, plunder, 5

**Tarpēiūs, -a, -um**: Tarpeian , 1

**templum, -ī n.**: temple, 5

**terra, -ae f.**: land, earth, 7

**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum**: hand over, give, 7

**trādūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum**: lead over, 3

**urbānus, -a, -um**: of a city, urban, 2

**ūtor, ūtī, ūsum**: to use, employ, enjoy , 5

**varius, -a, -um**: various, 3

**vōveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum**: vow, swear, 2

56 **Iovī**: to...; ind. obj., dat. sg. Iuppiter  
Ad: for...; + acc. expressing purpose

57 **ūsus est**: pf. dep. ūtor governs an abl. object (abl. of means)

58 **etiam**: also

**trāducta**: PPP modifying fem. plēbs

59 **Cloācamque**: yes, they called this sewer the ‘Greatest Sewer’

59 **ēgit**: dug; ‘drove’

60 **Singiam Circeiōsque**: to Signia and Circeii; accusative, place to which

**quī...essent**: which would be...; relative clause of purpose, impf. subj. sums

**urbī**: for...; dat. of interest

## 11g. Tarquinius Superbus

Dum haec aguntur, portentum terribile vīsum est; anguis ex columnā ligneā ēlāpsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcit atque ipsīus rēgis pectus ānxiīs cūrīs implēvit. Itaque Tarquinius filiōs, Titum et Arruntem, Delphōs ad clārissimum in terrīs ḍrāculum mittere statuit.

65

Comes eīs additus est L. Iūnius Brūtus, ex Tarquiniā, sorōre rēgis, nātus. Cognōmen eius hōc modō parātum erat; rēx eōs principēs cīvitātis quōs timēbat interficere solebat, in quibus frātrem Brūtī interfēcit. Hic, ut crūdēlitātem rēgis vītāret, consultō 69

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 7

**anguis, -is m. f.:** serpents, snakes, 1

**ānxius, -a, -um:** anxious, 2

**Arrūns, Arruntis m.:** Arruns, 4

**cognōmen, -minis n.:** cognomen, nickname, 6

**columna, -ae f.:** pillar, column, 1

**comes, -itis m. f.:** companion, comrade, 3

**cōnsultum, -ī n.:** resolution, 2

**crūdēlitās, -tatis f.:** cruelty, crudeness, 3

**cūra, -ae f.:** care, concern, worry, 5

**Delphī, -ōrum m.:** Delphi, oracle of Apollo, 3

**ēlābor, -lābī, -lapsum:** slip or slide away, 2

**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 2

**impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, impletūm:** to fill , 3

**Iūnius, -ī m.:** Junius, 2

61 **haec:** *these (things);* neuter pl. hic

62 **ēlāpsus:** A pf. deponent pple is usually translated ‘having Xed.’

**In rēgiā:** *in the palace*

63 **ipsīus rēgis:** the –īus ending is a common gen. sg. ending for pronouns.

64 **Delphōs:** *to..;* acc., place to which; the singular town Delphi is pl. in name

65 **statuit:** *decided;* ‘took a stand’

66 **comes:** nom. sg.

**ligneus, -a, -um:** of wood, 1

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 6

**ōrāculum, -ī n.:** oracle, 3

**pectus, pectoris n.:** chest; heart, 1

**portentum, -ī n.:** omen, portent, 1

**soleō, -ēre, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 4

**soror, sororis f.:** sister, 2

**Tarquinia, -ae f.:** Tarquinia, 1

**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 7

**terribilis, -e:** terrible, dreadful, 1

**terror, terrōris m.:** terror, fright, 4

**timeō, -ēre, -uī:** fear, dread, 2

**Titus, -ī m.:** Titus, 1

**vītō (1):** avoid, evade, shun, 3

**eīs:** dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id; i.e. Titus and Arruns

67 **nātus:** PPP nascor

**eius:** gen. sg. from is, ea, id

**hōc modō:** *in this way;* abl. of manner

**eōs principēs:** *those...;* demonstrative adj.

68 **in quibus:** *among....;* relative clause

69 **Hic:** *this one;* i.e. Brutus

**ut...vītāret:** *so that...might;* purpose, impf. subj.

## 11h. Tarquinius Superbus

stultitiam imitātus bona sua rēgem spoliāre passus est neque 70  
cognōmen Brūtī recūsāvit.

Is tum igitur ab Tarquiniīs ductus est Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius  
quam comes. Tulit tamen dōnum Apollinī aureum baculum  
inclūsum in baculō corneō, tamquam effigiem ingenī suī. 75  
Postquam iuvenēs Delphōs vēnērunt patrisque mandāta  
cōfēcērunt, statuērunt quaerere ex ὄrāculō ad quem eōrum  
rēgnūm esset ventūrum.

Vōx reddita est: “Imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī  
vestrum prīmus, ὁ iuvenēs, mātrem ὄsculābitur. Tarquiniī, Brūtūm 79

**Apollo**, -inis m.: Apollo, 1  
**aureus**, -a, -um: gold, golden, 2  
**baculum**, -i n.: staff, 3  
**cognōmen**, -minis n.: cognomen, nickname, 6  
**comes**, -itis m. f.: companion, comrade, 3  
**corneus**, -a, -um: of cornel wood, 2  
**Delphī**, -ōrum m.: Delphi, oracle of Apollo, 3  
**dōnum**, -i n.: gift, 4  
**effigies**, -ēt f.: likeness, effigy, statue, 1  
**imitor**, **imitātū**, **imitātūm**: imitate, copy, 3  
**inclūdō** (1): to shut up, enclose, 1  
**ingenium**, -i n.: intellect, talent; character, 5  
**lūdicrum**, -i n.: game, sport, exhibition, 1  
**mandō** (1): to entrust, give, commit, 5

70 **stultitiam imitātus**: Brutus pretends that he is mentally slow and therefore is not a threat to the king. The nickname ‘Brutus’ means dull or dull-witted.  
**bona**: The neuter pl. bona is a substantive and denotes goods, property, or possessions.

**passus est**: allowed; ‘suffered,’ pf. dep. patior

72 **Tarquiniīs**: i.e. by the two sons  
**Delphōs**: to..., accusative, place to which a single town but the name is plural  
**lūdibrium**: in apposition to is (Brutus)  
**vērius**: comparative adverb: ‘more Xly’  
73 **quam**: than...; an adv. introducing a clause of comparison (verb is often missing)  
**Tulit**: pf. from irregular ferō, ferre, tulī  
**Aureum aureum**: in apposition to dōnum  
74 **inclūsum**: PPP inclūdō  
**tamquam**: as if...; ‘so as,’ from

**ὄrāculum**, -ī n.: oracle, 3  
**ὄsculor**, -ārī, **ὄsculātūm**: to kiss, 3  
**patiōr**, -ī, **passus**: suffer, endure; allow, 7  
**postquam**: after, when, 6  
**quaerō**, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītūm**: to seek, ask, inquire, 6  
**recūsō** (1): refuse, give a reason against, 5  
**reddō** -ere **-didī** **-dditūm**: give back, render 5  
**spoliō** (1): to despoil, plunder, 5  
**stultitia**, -ae f.: foolishness, folly, 1  
**tamquam**: as if, as much as, so to speak, 6  
**vōs**: you, you all, 5  
**vōx**, **vōcis**, f.: voice, 7

correlatives tam, ‘so,’ and quam, ‘as’  
**ingenī suī**: objective gen.  
75 **Delphōs**: see line 72  
**mandāta**: orders; ‘things ordered,’ PPP  
76 **statuērunt**: they decided; ‘took a stand’  
**ad quem...ventūrum esset**: ind. question with subj.; here a periphrastic fut. subj. (fut. pple + impf. subj. of sum) which one can translate “was going to ...” or ‘would come’  
**eōrum**: of them; i.e. the two sons; this partitive gen. modifies quem  
78 **quī...**: (he) who...; the subject of the main clause is missing and must be supplied  
**Rōmae**: at Rome; locative, or possibly a gen. sg.  
79 **vestrum**: of you, among you; partitive gen. pl. of vōs (not the possessive vester)  
**ὁ iuvenēs**: vocative, direct address  
**Tarquiniī**: nom. subj.; i.e. the two sons of Tarquin

## 11i. Tarquinius Superbus

contemnentēs, ipsī inter sē iūs mātris ūsculandae Rōmae sortī 80  
permittunt. Brūtus, quī aliō modō ūrāculum interpretātus erat,  
cecidit terramque ūsculātus est, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter  
est omnium mortālium. Rediērunt inde iuvenēs Rōmam. 84

**cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum:** to fall, 4

**commūnis, -e:** common, 2

**contemnō, -ere, -temp̄sī:** despise, scorn, 1

**interpretor, -ārī, (1):** to translate, interpret, 1

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 6

**mortālis, -e:** mortal, 1

**ūrāculum, -ī n.:** oracle, 3

**ūsculor, -ārī, ūsculātum:** to kiss, 3

**permittō -ere -mīsī -missum:** send through, 3

**scīlicet:** of course, no doubt, 1

**sors, sortis f.:** lot, casting of lots, 3

**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 7

80 **ipsī:** intensive modifying nom. Tarquinii  
iūs: *the right; or ‘privilege’*

**mātris ūsculandae:** *of...; ‘of the mother  
(going) to be kissed,’ Perform a gerund-  
gerundive flip and translate this gen. noun +  
gerundive into a gerund (-ing) + dir. obj.*

81 **Rōmae:** *at Rome;* locative, place where  
**sortī:** *to fate;* dat. ind. obj., your lot is life

is your fate

**aliō modō:** *in...;* abl. of manner

**quod:** *because...;* causal quod clause

83 **ea:** *this (one); the subject, referring to  
terra; commūnis māter is a predicate*

84 **rediērunt:** 3p pf. redeō

**Rōmam:** *to...;* acc. place to which

## 12a. The Banishment of Tarquinius

Paulō post Rōmānī, quī iam dūdum superbiam Tarquiniī rēgis 1 atque filiōrum aegrē ferēbant, ita scelere quōdam Sex. Tarquiniī concitātī sunt ut rēgiā familiā in exsilium pellere statuerent.

Tarquinius Collātīnus, sorōre Tarquiniī Superbī nātus, in contuberniō iuvenum rēgiōrum Ardeae erat; cum forte in līberiōre 5 conviviō coniugem suam ūnus quisque laudāret, placuit experīrī. Itaque equīs Rōmām petunt. rēgiās nurūs in conviviō vel lūxū dēprehendunt. Et inde Collātiām petunt. Lucrētiām, uxōrem Collātīnī, inter ancillās in lanificiō offendunt; itaque ea pudīcissima iūdicātur. Ad quam corrumpendum Sex. Tarquinius 10

- aegrē: with difficulty, wearily, 1  
ancilla, -ae f.: attendant, handmaid, 1  
Ardea, -ae f.; Ardea, 4  
Collātia, -ae f.: Collatia, 2  
Collātinus, -ī m.: Collatinus, 5  
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 3  
contubernium, -ī n.: group of tent-mates, 1  
convivium, -ī n.: banquet, feast, 2  
corrumpō, -ēre, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, 4  
dēprehendō, -ere, -sī: seize upon, discover, 2  
dūdum: a short time ago; just now, once, 1  
equus, -ī m.: horse, 3  
experior, -īrī, expertum: to prove, test, 2  
exsilium, -ī n.: exile, 5  
familia, -ae f.: family, household, 2  
iūdicō (1): judge, decide, assess, 3  
lanificium, -ī n.: wool-making, 1  
laudō (1): to praise, glorify, 5

- 1 **Paulō:** *a little;* ‘by a little,’ dat. of degree of difference modifying post, ‘afterwards’  
iam dūdum: *long before;* often as one word: iamdūdum  
2 **ferēbant:** ferō can mean ‘carry’ or ‘endure’  
ita...concitātī sunt: *were so stirred up...;*  
ita modifies the main verb  
**scelere quōdam:** *by a certain crime;* abl. of means; indefinite pronoun quisdam  
3 **ut...statuerent:** *that...;* a result clause with impf. subj. (translate as impf.)  
4 **sorore:** *from...;* abl. of source  
nātus: pf. pple from nascor  
5 **rēgiōrum:** *royal;* modifies gen. pl. iuvenum  
**Ardea:** *at Ardea;* locative, place where  
**cum forte:** *when by chance;* ablative as adv.

- liber, libera, liberum: free, 4  
Lucrētia, -iae f.: Lucretia, 3  
lūxus, -ī m.: luxury, splendor, 2  
nurus, -ūs f.: young married woman, daughter-in-law, 1  
offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensum: to offend, 2  
paulus, -a, -um: little, small, 6  
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6  
placet: it is pleasing, it is resolved, 2  
pudīcus, -a, -um: modest, chaste, virtuous, 1  
quisque, cuiusque: each one, 3  
rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6  
scelus, -eris n.: wickedness, villainy, crime, 2  
sex: six, 1  
soror, sorōris f.: sister, 2  
superbia, -ae f.: arrogance, pride 2  
superbus, -a, -um: arrogant, proud, haughty 3  
vel: or, either...or, 2

- liberiōre: *too free;* comparative can suggest excess: ‘more free (than usual);’ the tent-mates have had too much to drink.  
6 ūnus quisque: subject  
placuit: *it was...;* impersonal, pf. placet  
7 equīs: *on horseback;* abl. means  
**Rōmām:** accusative, place to which  
8 **Collātiām:** accusative, place to which  
9 **ea:** *she;* i.e. Lucretia  
10 **pudīcissima:** predicate nom. a superlative following iūdicātur  
**Ad quam corrumpendum:** *for...;* ‘for this one (going) to be corrupted;’ do a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the pronoun and gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc. object; translate the connective quam as ‘this one’

## 12b. The Banishment of Tarquinius

nocte Collātiam rediit et iūre propinquitatis in domum Collātinī vēnit et in cubiculum Lucrētiae irrūpit, pudīcitiam expugnāvit.

Illa posterō diē advocātis patre et coniuge rem hīs verbīs exposuit: “Vestīgia virī aliēnī, Collātīne, in lectō sunt tuō; cēterum corpus est tantum violātum, animus īnsons; mors testis erit. Sed 15 date dexterās fidemque haud impūne adulterō fore. Sex. est Tarquinius, quī hostis prō hospite priōre nocte vī armātus mihi sibique, sī vōs virī estis, pestiferum hinc abstulit gaudium.”

Dant ḍordine omnēs fidem; cōsolantur aegram animī āvertendō noxam ab coāctā in auctōrem dēlictī; mentem peccāre, nōn corpus, 20

**adulter,** adulteris m.: adulterer, 1  
**advocō** (1): to summon, call to, 1  
**aeger,** -gra, -grum: sick, weary, 1  
**aliēnus,** -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5  
**armātus,** -a, -um: armed, 5  
**auktor,** auctōris m.: agent, creator, 3  
**auferō,** auferre, abstuli,: take/carry away, 5  
**āvertō, -ere, -vertī:** turn aside, turn away, 3  
**cēterī,** -ae, -a: the remaining, rest, others, 4  
**cōgō,** -ere, -ēgī, -āctum: to collect, compel, 6  
**Collātia,** -ae f.: Collatia, 2  
**Collātinus,** -i m.: Collatinus, 5  
**cōsolor,** -ārī, -ātum: console, comfort, 1  
**cubiculum,** -i n.: bedroom, 1  
**dēlictum,** -i n.: crime, fault, 1  
**dexter,** -ra, -rum: right (hand); favorable, 3  
**expōnō,** -ere, -posū, -positum: set forth, 5  
**expugnō** (1): to take by storm, capture, 2  
**fidēs,** ei f.: faith, trust, 7  
**gaudium,** -iī n.: gladness, joy, 2  
**haud:** by no means, not at all, 4  
**hinc:** from here, hence, 3

- 11 **nocte:** at...; abl. of time when  
**iūre:** by right of...; abl. of cause  
**Collātinī:** gen. sg., Sextus' cousin  
12 (et) **pudīcitiam:** asyndeton, the lack of 'et'  
suggests abruptness or surprise  
13 **posterō diē:** on...; abl. of time when  
**advocātis patre et coniuge:** abl. abs.  
14 **cēterum:** but; 'as for the rest,' adv. acc.  
15 **tantum:** only, alone; adv. (adverbial acc.)  
est...violātum: pf. pass.  
erit: fut. sum, esse  
16 **date:** pl. imperative, dō, dare

**hospes,** -pitis m.: host, guest, guest-friend 1  
**impūne:** with impunity, 1  
**īnsons,** -sontis: innocent, guiltless, 1  
**irrumpō,** -ere, -rupī, -ruptum: burst in, 2  
**lectus,** -i m.: couch, bed, 2  
**Lucrētia,** -iae f.: Lucretia, 3  
**mēns,** mentis f.: mind, intent, purpose, 2  
**mors,** mortis, f.: death, 6  
**noxā,** -ae f.: harm, injury, 2  
**ōrdo,** ōrdinis m.: arrangement, order, rank, 3  
**peccō** (1): do wrong, transgress, offend, 2  
**pestiferus,** -a, -um: plague-bearing, 1  
**posterus,** -a, -um: following, next, 2  
**prior,** prius: before, earlier , 5  
**propinquitās,** -tatis f.: kindship, closeness, 1  
**pudīcītia,** -ae f.: modesty, chastity, 1  
**sex:** six, 1  
**testis,** -is m/f: witness, 1  
**tuus,** -a, -um: your, yours, 2  
**vestīgium,** -i n.: footprint; footprint, track, 2  
**violō** (1): to violate, commit outrage, 4  
**vōs:** you, you all, 5

- dexterās:** pledges; given with right hands  
**haud...fore:** that it would be...; ind. disc.;  
fore is equiv. to futūrum esse (fut. inf. sum);  
adulterō is dat. of interest: 'for...'  
17 **hostis prō...:** as a enemy in place of...  
**priōre nocte:** at...; abl. of time when  
**mihi sibique:** from me and (later) from  
himself, dat. of compound verb abstulit  
19 **āvertendō:** by...; gerund (-ing), abl. means  
**ōrdine:** in order; abl. of manner  
20 **ab coāctā:** from the one forced; PPP  
**mentem peccāre...corpus:** that..; ind. disc.

## 12c. The Banishment of Tarquinius

et unde cōnsilium āfuerit, culpam abesse. “Vōs,” inquit, “vīderitis quid illī dēbētur. Ego mē etsī peccātō absolvō, suppliciō nōn līberō; nec ūlla deinde impudīca Lucrētiae exemplō vīvet.” Sē cultrō, quem veste tēxerat, occīdit. Illī in exitium rēgum coniūrāvērunt eōrumque exsiliō necem Lucrētiae vindicāvērunt.

25

Tum prīmū vērum ingenium Brūtī apertum est. Eō enim duce populus iūrāvit sē nec Tarquinium nec alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum esse. Brūtus inde in castra profectus est, ubi exercitus Rōmānus Ardeam, caput Rutulōrum, obsidēbat. Tulliam rēgīnam domō profugientem omnēs virī mulierēsque execrātī sunt.

30

**absolvō**, -ere, -solvī: set free, acquit, 1  
**absum**, -esse, āfūi: to be away, be absent, 5  
**aperiō**, -ire, -ūi, -ertus: open, disclose, 5  
**Ardea**, -ae f.; **Ardea**, 4  
**coniūrō** (1): to swear together, conspire, 4  
**culpa**, -ae m.: blame, fault; cause, 1  
**culter**, cultri m.: knife, 1  
**dēbeō**, -ere, -ūi, **dēbitum**: to owe, ought, 3  
**etsī**: even if, although, though, 3  
**execror**, -āri, **execrātum**: to curse, 1  
**exemplum**, -ī n.: example, 3  
**exitium**, -ī n.: destruction, 2  
**exsilium**, -ī n.: exile, 5  
**impudīcus**, -a, -um: shameless; lewd, 1  
**ingenium**, -ī n.: intellect, talent; character, 5  
**iūrō** (1): to swear , 3  
**līberō** (1): free, liberate, 5  
**Lucrētia**, -iae f.: Lucretia, 3

**mulier**, mulieris f.: woman, 5  
**nex**, necis f.: death, violent death, murder, 3  
**obsideō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5  
**occidō**, -ere, occīdi, **occīsus**: kill, cut down, 7  
**patior**, -ī, **passus**: suffer, endure; allow, 7  
**peccō** (1): do wrong, transgress, offend, 2  
**quisquam**, **quidquam**: any one, any body, 2  
**rēgīna**, -ae f.: queen, 2  
**Rutulus**, -ī m.: Rutulians, 3  
**supplicium**, -ī n.: punishment, supplication, 5  
**texō**, -ere, -ūi, **textum**: to weave, 1  
**Tullia**, -ae f.: Tullia, 4  
**ūllus**, -a, -um: any, 4  
**unde**: whence, from which source, 3  
**vestis**, -is f.: clothing, 3  
**vindicō** (1): to avenge, punish, 1  
**vīvō**, -ere, vīxi, **vīctum**: live, 4  
**vōs**: you, you all, 5

21 **unde...āfuerit**: where...; relative clause pf. subj. absum; subjunctive of subordinate verb in ind. disc.: translate as pf. indicative **culpam abesse**: that...; ind. disc.

**in**: upon  
**rēgum**: gen. pl. rēx

25 **eōrum**: of those; i.e. of the royal family

26 **prīmū**: for the first time; adv. acc.

Eō...duce: this one (being) leader; abl .abs. The subject and predicate are in the abl. Supply the missing pple ‘being.’

27 **sē...passūrum esse**: that...; ind. disc. with fut. inf. of patior, ‘allow;’ in secondary seq. translate with ‘would’ rather than ‘will’

**nec...nec**: neither...nor

**quemquam**: acc. sg. quisquam

28 **Rōmae**: at...; locative, place where **profectus est**: 3s pf. dep. proficīscor

30 **domō**: from...; place from which

22 **illī**: to that one; dat. ind. obj., i.e. Sextus **etsī peccātō absolvō**: although...; ‘even if,’ abl. abs. introduced by etsī suggests that the absolute is concessive in sense **suppliciō**: from...; abl. of separation

23 **ūlla impudīca (fēmina)**: supply a subject

**vīvet**: fut.

**sē**: note the emphatic position; Lucretia is still the subject

24 **Illi**: those men

## 12d. The Banishment of Tarquinius

Ubi nuntiī hārum rērum in castra perlātī sunt, rēx Rōmam perrēxit. Brūtus adventum rēgis sēnsit flexitque viam. Ita eōdem ferē tempore dīversīs itineribus Brūtus Ardeam, Tarquinius Rōmam vēnērunt. Hic portās clausās invēnit; Brūtum līberātōrem urbis laeta castra accēpērunt exāctīque sunt līberī rēgis; duo patrem 35 secūtī exulēs advēnērunt Caere, quae urbs Etrūsca erat; Sextus Tarquinius Gabiōs, tamquam in suum rēgnum, profectus ab ultōribus veterum iniūriārum quās ipse intulerat interfectus est.

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quīnque vīgintī. Rēgnum Rōmae annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā dūrāverat. Duo cōnsulēs 40 inde creātī sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus.

**adveniō, -ire, -vēnī:** to come to, approach, 4

**adventus, -ūs m.:** arrival, approach, 2

**Ardea, -ae f.; Ardea, 4**

**Caere n.:** Caere , 1

**claudō, -ere, -di, -sum:** to close, enclose, 6

**Collātinus, -ī m.:** Collatinus, 5

**diversus, -a, -um:** different, contrary, 3

**ducentī, -ae, -a:** two hundred, 2

**dūrō (1):** to harden, last, endure, 2

**exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum:** drive out; spend, 3

**exul, exulis m.:** exile, 2

**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7

**flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum:** turn, bend, 3

**Gabiō, -ōrum m.:** Gabii (town), 6

**inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus:** bring in, wage, 5

**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 5

**inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** to come upon,

31 **Rōmam:** to...; accusative, place to which

32 **perrēxit:** pf. pergō (per-regō)

eōdem...tempore: at...; abl. of time when,  
eōdem is abl. of idem, eadem, idem

33 **itineribus:** routes; means

**Ardeam, Rōmam:** to...; place to which

35 **laeta castra:** happily the camp...; An adj.  
in the nom. may be translated as an adv.

36 **secūtī:** pf. dep. pple sequor; The pf. dep.  
pple is often translated, ‘having Xed.’

**exulēs:** as exiles

**Caere:** at Caere; locative, place where

**quae urbs:** which city...; relative adj.

37 **Gabiōs:** to...; , place to which

find, 5

**Iūnius, -ī m.:** Junius, 2

**laetus, -a, -um:** happy, joyful, glad, 4

**liberō (1):** free, liberate, 5

**nuntius, -ī m.:** messenger, 3

**perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus:** carry, endure, 4

**pergō -ere -rēxi -rectum:** proceed, continue 1

**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 3

**quadrāgintā:** forty, 5

**quīnque:** five, 4

**sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsūm:** to feel, perceive, 2

**sexthus, -a, -um:** sixth, 2

**superbus, -a, -um:** arrogant, proud, haughty 3

**tamquam:** as if, as much as, so to speak, 6

**ultor, ultōris m.:** avenger, 1

**veter, vetera, veterum:** old, experienced, 2

**vīgintī:** twenty, 6

**profectus:** pf. dep. pple, proficīscor, see 36

**tamquam:** as if; formed from correlative

adverbs tam, ‘so,’ and quam, ‘as’

**ab ultōribus:** by...; abl. of agent

38 **ipse:** (he) himself; Sextus

**intulerat:** pf. inferō

39 **annōs vīgintī:** for...; acc. duration of time

**Rēgnum:** The kingship

40 **Rōmae:** at...; locative, place where

**annōs ducentōs quadrāginta:** for...; acc.  
of duration of time

41 **L. Iūnius...Collātinus:** nom. in apposition  
to cōnsulēs

### 13a. Horatius Cocles

Tarquinius, ut rēgnū recipere, ad Lartem Porsenam Clūsinū 1  
rēgem fūgit. Eī persuāsit nē rēgem Etrūscae sanguinis rēgnō pīvārī  
paterētur. Porsena Rōmam īfestō exercitū vēnit. Magnus terror  
senātū occupāvit; adeō firma rēs Clūsīna tum erat magnumque  
Porsenae nōmen. 5

Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs veniunt  
urbemque ipsam mūniunt praesidiīs. Alia loca mūrīs, alia Tiberī  
objēctō, vidēbantur tūta. Pōns Sublicius tamen iter paene hostibus  
dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisse, Horātius Cocles, quī forte ad pontem  
positus erat. Clūsīnī repentinō impetū Iāniculum cēpērunt atque 10  
inde vēlōciter ad flūmen dēcurrēbant.

- adeō:** to such a degree, so, 2  
**adsum, -esse, -fui:** be present, assist, , 2  
**Clūsīnū, -a, -um:** of Clusium , 5  
**Cocles, Coclitis m.:** Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4  
**dēcurrō, -ere, -currū:** to run down, 3  
**firmus, -a, -um:** strong, steadfast, 3  
**Horātius, -i m.:** Horatius, 4  
**Iāniculum, -i n.:** Janiculum hill, 3  
**īfestus, -a, -um:** hostile, unsafe, 4  
**Lars, Lartis m.:** Lars, 1  
**mūniō, -ire, -īvi, -ītum:** to fortify, build, 5  
**mūrus, -i m.:** wall, rampart, 3  
**nī (1):** if not, unless, 1  
**obiciō, -ere, obiēci, objēctum:** cast, hurl, 1

- 1 **ut...reciperet:** so that...might; purpose  
**Lartem Porsenam:** Lars Porsena  
2 **Eī:** him; dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id  
**nē...paterētur:** that he...; negative ind.  
command; impf. dep. subj. patior, ‘allow,’  
and Porsenna is the subject  
**rēgnō:** from...; abl. of separation  
3 **Rōmam:** to...; place to which  
4 **adeō firma...:** So strong...; the predicates  
are placed first in the clause for emphasis  
**rēs Clūsīna:** the state of Clusium  
5 **Porsenae nōmen (erat):** add linking verb  
6 **cum...adessent:** with impf. subj. adsum  
**omnēs:** i.e. all the Romans  
7 **Alia loca mūrīs (vidēbātur tūta, et) alia  
(loca) Tiberī objēctō vidēbātur tūta:** some  
places...other places; There is considerable

- occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 5  
**paene:** almost, nearly, 4  
**patiō, -i, passus:** suffer, endure; allow, 7  
**pōns, pontis m.:** bridge, 7  
**praesidium, -ii n.:** garrison, protection, 5  
**pīvō (1):** deprive of, rob, strip from , 3  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum:** accept, take  
back, 4  
**repentinus, -a, -um:** sudden, unexpected, 1  
**sanguis, sanguinis m.:** blood, 2  
**sublicius, -a, -um:** on wooden piles, 1  
**terror, terroris m.:** terror, fright, 4  
**tūtus, -a, -um:** safe, secure, guarded, 2  
**vēlōciter:** swiftly, quickly, 1

- ellipsis in these parallel clauses. Walls  
enclose the city of Rome except along the  
Tiber river, where the river and riverbank  
prevent any enemy from entering.  
8 **vidēbantur:** seemed; governs a predicate  
adj.; tūta is neuter pl. nom. pred.  
**Pōns Sublicius:** Pons Sublicius; the proper  
name for a wooden bridge across the Tiber  
**iter:** a route; i.e. a way in the city  
9 **nī...fuisse:** if there...; plpf. subj. sum; nī =  
nisi = sī nōn  
**forte:** by chance; abl. as adv., foris, fortis  
**ad:** near...  
10 **Iāniculum:** This hill faces Rome on the  
far side of the Tiber river. The Pons  
Sublicius connects the hill to the city.

## 13b. Horatius Cocles

Cocles, cum suōs fugere vīdisset, ḍrāvit eōs ut manērent et 12 pontem rescinderent; sē impetum hostium, quantum ūnus posset id facere, exceptūrum esse. Prōcessit inde in prīmum aditum pontis ipsāque audāciā turbāvit hostēs. 15

Duōs tamen cum eō pudor tenuit, Sp. Larcium et T. Herminium, ambōs clārōs genere factīsque. Cum hīs prīmam pugnam paulīsper sustinuit. Deinde eōs, parvā parte pontis relictā, cēdere in tūtum iussit. Pudor inde commōvit Etrūscōs, et, clāmōre sublātō, undīque in ūnum hostem tēla coniciunt. Dēnique, ponte paene rescissō, 20

**aditus, -ūs m.**: entrance, means of approach, 1  
**ambo**: both, two together, 3  
**audācia, -ae f.**: boldness, audacity, 2  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cesso**: move; withdraw, give up, 4  
**clāmor, clāmoris f.**: cry, shout, 3  
**Cocles, Coclitis m.**: Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4  
**commoveō, -ere, -mōvī, mōtum**: upset, trouble 2  
**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī**: throw together, hurl, 5  
**dēnique**: lastly, finally, 7  
**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**: take out, receive, 5  
**genus, -eris n.**: birth, race; kind, family, 4  
**Herminius, -ī m.**: Herminius, 1  
**Larcius, -īī m.**: Larcius, 1  
**maneō, -ere, mansī**: to stay, wait, wait for, 7

12 **Cocles**: Horatius received the cognomen Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ after he lost an eye in a previous battle.  
**suōs (virōs) fugere**: *that...*; ind. disc., the acc. subj. are his fellow soldiers on the Pons Sublīcius

**ḍrāvit**: governs both an ind. command with *ut + subj.* and ind. statement; a construction not unusual in Caesar’s writings  
**ut...rescinderent**: *that...*; ind. command with impf. subj. governed by **ḍrāvit**

13 **sē...exceptūrum esse**: (*and*) *that he...*; ind. disc. with fut. inf. governed by **ḍrāvit**, translate with ‘would’ in secondary seq.; Horatius orders the soldiers to act and then states what he himself will do

13 **quantum**: *for however long...*; relative

**ōrō (1)**: pray , entreat, beseech, 3  
**paene**: almost, nearly, 4  
**parvus, -a, -um**: small, 4  
**paulisper**: a little while, a little, somewhat, 2  
**pōns, pontis m.**: bridge, 7  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum**: proceed, 4  
**pudor, pudōris m.**: shame, 2  
**quantus, -a, -um**: how much, how great, 3  
**rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum**: cut back, 2  
**Sp.: Spurius, 1**  
**sustineō, -ere, uī, -tentum**: hold up, endure, 5  
**T.: Titus, 1**  
**tēlum, -ī n.**: projectile, arrow, spear, 6  
**tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum**: raise, destroy 2  
**turbō (1)**: to confuse, disturb, 3  
**tūtus, -a, -um**: safe, secure, guarded, 2  
**undīque**: from everywhere, from all sides, 2

clause; quantum is acc. of duration; verbs in subordinate clauses in ind. disc. become subj., here 3s impf. subj. possum

16 **Sp.....Herminium**: in apposition to duōs

17 **genere factīsque**: *in...and in...*; ‘abl. of respect; facta are ‘things having been done’ or just ‘deeds’

**Cum hīs**: *with...*; abl. of accompaniment

18 **parvā parte...relictā**: abl. abs.  
**in tūtum**: *to safety*

19 **iussit**: pf. iubeō

**clāmōre sublātō**: abl. absolute, PPP of tollō

20 **in**: *against*

**tēla**: A tēlum is usually a projectile and may also be translated as spear or an arrow depending on the context.

**ponte...rescissō**: abl. abs.

### 13c. Horatius Cocles

Cocles armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit incolumisque ad suōs trānāvit.

Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit: statua eius in comitiō posita est, et agrī quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit datum est.

23

**armātus, -a, -um:** armed, 5

**circumarō (1):** to plow around 1

**Cocles, Coelitis m.:** Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4

**comitium, -i n.:** meeting, assembly, 4

**dēsiliō -ire -siluī -sultum:** leap/jump down, 1

**ergā:** toward, for, 1

**grātus, -a, -um:** pleasing, grateful, 4

**incolumis, -e:** unscathed, uninjured, safe 2

**quantus, -a, -um:** how much, how great, 3

**statua, -ae f.:** statue, image, 2

**trānō (1):** to swim across, 2

21 **ad suōs (virōs):** supply a noun

22 **Grāta:** predicate adjective in emphatic position (placed first for emphasis), cīvitās is fem. sg. subject

**eius:** gen. sg. is, ea, id

23 **agrī quantum...circumarāvit:** *as much of land as...;* a relative clause; agrī is a

partitive gen., the missing antecedent is subject of datum est

**ūnō diē:** *within...;* abl. of time within

## 14a. Mucius Scaevola

Porsena, praesidiō in Iāniculō locātō, in rīpīs Tiberis castra posuit. Cum Gaius Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, ad senātum adiisset, “Trānsīre Tiberim”, inquit, “ Pātrēs, et intrāre, sī possim, castra hostium volō.” Patrēs probāvērunt, et Mūcius profectus est. Ibi, cum stipendium militibus Etrūscīs forte darētur; scriba cum rēge pārī ferē ornātū sedēbat. Mūcius scribam prō rēge occīdit et statim comprehensus est. 5

Cum rēx, perīculō territus, nisī omnēs insidiās contrā rēgem aperīret, Mūcium ignī darī iubēret, Mūcius dextram in ignī ad sacrificium accensō posuit. Rēx, attonitus, ab sēde suā prōsiluit 10

- accendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsum:** to kindle, 1  
**adeō:** to such a degree, so, 2  
**aperiō, -ire, -uī, -ertus:** open, disclose, 5  
**attonitus, -a, -um:** astonished, stunned, 1  
**comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum:** to grasp, seize, 5  
**dexter, -ra, -rum:** right (hand); favorable, 3  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**Gaius, -ī m.:** Gaius, 3  
**Iāniculum, -ī n.:** Janiculum hill, 3  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 3  
**insidiae, -ārum f.:** ambush, trap, 2  
**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 2  
**locō (1):** to put, place, 2  
**Mūcius, -ī m.:** Mucius, 7

- 1 **praesidiō...locatō:** abl. abs.; once again, the Janiculum hill faces Rome on the other side of the Tiber  
2 **cum...adiisset:** plpf. subj. adeō, adīre  
3 **Tiberim:** Tiber river; acc. sg.  
Pātrēs: voc, direct address; i.e. senators  
sī possim: If I should...; or ‘in the hope that I...’ 1s pres. subj. possum, an optative subj. (subj. of wish)  
4 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor  
5 **forte:** by chance; abl. as adv., fors, fortis  
6 **pārī ornātū:** with...; abl. of manner; pārī is

- nisi: if not, unless, 7  
**occidō, -ere, occīdi, occīsus:** kill, cut down, 7  
**ornātūs, -ūs m.:** adornment, ornament, 1  
**praesidium, -ī n.:** garrison, protection, 5  
**probō (1):** approve, 4  
**prōsiliō, -ire, -uī:** to leap or jump forward, 2  
**rīpa, -ae f.:** riverbank, bank, shore, 2  
**sacrificium, ī n.:** sacrificium, 1  
**scriba, -ae m.:** scribe, secretary, 2  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī:** to sit, sit down; set, 7  
**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 6  
**statim:** immediately, on the spot, at once, 5  
**stipendium, -ī n.:** pay; military service, 3  
**terreō, -ere, -uī, territum:** to terrify, scare, 1

3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl. sg. ('i' in abl. sg.)

**prō:** instead of..., in place of...

**nisī...aperīret:** if...not...; verbs in a subordinate clause in ind. disc. become subj.; impf. subj.

9 **Mūcium...darī:** that...; ind. disc. with pass. inf.

**ignī:** dat. ind. obj.

**dextram (mānum):** add fem. sg. manum

**ignī:** abl. sg., 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem noun

**ad:** for...; expressing purpose

10 **accensō:** PPP modifying ignī

## 14b. Mucius Scaevola

āmōvērīque ab ārā iuvenem iussit. Porsenna virtūtem eius mīrātus est et “Tē intactum inviolātumque,” inquit, “hinc dīmittam.” Mūcium, cui posteā cognōmen Scaevolae datum est, lēgātī ā Porsennā Rōmam sēcūtī sunt et ibi condīcōnēs pācis tulērunt.

14

**āmōveō, -ēre, -mōvī, mōtum:** move away, 1  
**ara, arae f.:** altar, 1  
**cognōmen, -minis n.:** cognomen, nickname, 6  
**condicō, -ciōnis f.:** arrangement, state, 3  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** dismiss, let go 5  
**hinc:** from here, hence, 3

11 **āmōvērī...iuvenem:** *that...*; ind. disc.  
**eius:** gen. sg. is, ea, id  
**mīrātus est:** pf. dep. mīror  
12 **dīmittam:** 1s fut.  
13 **cui:** *to...;* dat. ind. object  
**Scaevolae:** the cognomen means ‘lefty’

**intactus, -a, -um:** untouched, 1  
**inviolō (1):** not violate, not harm, 1  
**mīror, -ārī, mīrātus:** wonder, be amazed at, 1  
**Mūcīus, -īf m.:** Mucius, 7  
**Scaevola, -ae m.:** Scaevola, 1  
**tū:** you, 6

and is appropriate because Gaius Mucius Scaevola burned his right arm  
**ā:** *from...;* abl. place from which  
14 **Rōmam:** *to...;* place to which  
**sēcūtī sunt:** pf. dep. sequor  
**tulērunt:** pf. ferō, ferre, tulī

## 15. Cloelia

Porsena fīliās nōbilium Rōmānōrum inter obsidēs accēpit. Cloelia virgō ūna ex obsidibus fuit. Cum castra Etrūscōrum forte haud procul rīpā Tiberis locāta esset, Cloelia, dux agminis virginum, inter tēla hostium Tiberim trānāvit, integrōsque omnēs Rōmam restituit. Quod ubi rēgī nuntiātum est, rēx, īrā incensus, 5 ūrātōrēs Rōmam mīsit ad Cloeliam obsidem dēposcendam.

Cum Cloelia revēnisset, Porsena virtūtem virginis laudāvit et id facinus suprā Coclītēs Mūciōsque esse dīxit. Tum, eam cum parte obsidum Rōmam rēmīsit. Pāce redintegrātā, Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestrī, dōnāvērunt; 10 in summā Sacrā viā fuit posita virgō insidēns equō.

- agmen, agminis n.: battle line, column, 1  
Cloelia, -ae f.: to close, enclose, 4  
Cocles, Coclītēs m.: Cocles, ‘one-eyed,’ 4  
dēposcō, -ere, -poposcī: demand, ask for, 1  
dōnō (1): to give, bestow, 5  
equester, -stris, -stre: equestrian, 3  
equus, -ī m.: horse, 3  
facinus, -noris n.: deed, action; crime, 3  
fēmina, -ae f.: woman, 1  
genus, -eris n.: birth, race; kind, family, 4  
haud: by no means, not at all, 4  
incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 7  
insidēō, -ēre, -sēdī: to sit on, 1  
integer, -gra, -grum: untouched, unhurt, 3  
Ira, Irae f.: anger, 3

- 2 nōbil-iūm: gen. pl. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.  
forte: by chance; abl. as adv.; fors, fortis  
3 haud procul: i.e. near  
rīpā: from...; abl. of separation  
4 inter tēla: among the projectiles; a tēlūm is a thrown weapon and can also be translated as either a javelin or an arrow  
host-iūm: gen. pl. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem noun  
5 Rōmam: to...; place to which  
Quod: this; subject of nuntiātum est; a connective relative: where Latin prefers a relative in transitions, English prefers a demonstrative.  
ubi: when  
incensus: PPP incendō  
6 ūrātōrēs: i.e. envoys or legates

- laudō (1): to praise, glorify, 5  
locō (1): to put, place, 2  
Mūcius, -ī m.: Mucius, 7  
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7  
obsēs, obsidis m./f.: hostage, 4  
ūrātōr, is, m.: speaker, orator, 1  
procul: far, from afar, from a distance, 1  
redintegrō (1): to renew, restore, 1  
remittō -ere -misi -missum: to send back, 3  
reveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus: come back, 1  
rīpā, -ae f.: riverbank, bank, shore, 2  
statua, -ae f.: statue, image, 2  
suprā: above, beyond, 1  
tēlūm, -ī n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6  
trānō (1): to swim across, 2

ad...dēposcendam: for...; lit. ‘for Cloelia... going) to be demanded;’ perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing)+ acc. object

- 7 id facinus...esse: that this deed...; ind. disc, id is a demonstrative adj.

- 8 suprā Coclītēs Mūciōsque: above the Cocles and Mucius; i.e. above Cocles and Mucius and everyone of the same character

eam: i.e. Cloelia

- 9 Pāce redintegrātā: abl. abs.

- 10 novō genere: with...; abl. of means  
equestrī: abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.

- 11 equō: on...; dat. of compound verb

## 16a. The Secession of the Plebs

Prīmīs temporibus reī pūblicae līberae magna dissēnsio orta est 1  
inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum, quō paene tōta plēbs  
premēbantur. Crēdītōrī enim licēbat dēbitōrem etiam in servitūtem  
dūcere. Praetereā iūs reddēbātur ā cōnsulibus, quī magistrātus  
tantum patribus patēbat. 5

Cum iam plēbs auxilium ā cōnsulibus postulārent, Latīnī  
equitēs nunitavērunt Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venīre. Plēbs  
exultābant gaudiō, atque inter sē hortābantur nē nōmina darent. At  
ūnus ē cōnsulibus, plēbe convocāta, pollicitus est iūdicia  
intermittere quoad mīlitēs in castrīs essent; bellō cōfēctō, senātum 10

- aes, aeris n.: bronze, 2  
aliēnus, -a, -um: of another, foreign, 5  
convocō (1): to call together, 4  
crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum: believe, trust, 7  
dēbitor, dēbitōris m.: debtor, 1  
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 3  
eques, equitis m.: horseman, rider, 6  
exultō (1): to leap up , exult, 1  
gaudium, -ii n.: gladness, joy, 2  
hortor, hortārī, hortātus: encourage, urge, 1  
intermittō, -ere: interrupt, leave off, pause, 1  
iūdiciūm, -i n.: decision, judgment; trial, 3  
līber, lībra, līberūm: free, 4  
licet, -ēre, -uit: is allowed, permitted, 3

- 1 prīmīs temporibus: *in the early times*  
reī pūblicae līberae: gen. with temporibus;  
rēs pūblica may be translated ‘government’  
or ‘republic’ depending on the context  
orta est: pf. deponent orior  
2 aes aliēnum: debt; ‘another’s bronze’ or  
‘another’s money,’ a common expression  
3 crēdītōrī: for...; dat. of interest  
licēbat: it....; impersonal impf. licet  
etiam: even  
4 iūs reddēbātur: justice was rendered;  
‘justice was given back’  
quī magistrātus: which office; relative adj.  
5 tantum: only; adverbial acc.  
patribus: dat. of interest  
6 Cum...postulārent: while...  
7 Volscōs...venīre: that...; ind. disc. Volsci  
were a local Latin tribe hostile to Rome  
7 ad...oppugnandum: for...; for...(going) to

- magistratus, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 5  
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7  
oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3  
paene: almost, nearly, 4  
pateō, -ēre, -ui: lie open, extend, 2  
polliceor, -cērī, -citus: promise, offer, 4  
postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5  
praetereā: besides, moreover, 1  
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum: press, check, 1  
quoad: how far, as far as, as long as, 2  
reddō -ere -didī -ditum: give back, render 5  
servitūs, servitūtis, f.: servitude, 1  
Volscī, -ōrum m.: Volscians, Volsci, 4

- be assaulted’ ad + acc. expresses purpose;  
perform a gerund-gerundive flip and  
translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund  
(-ing)+ obj.  
8 hortābantur: 3p impf. dep. hortor  
nē...darent: that...not; neg. ind. command  
with impf. subj. The plebs refuse to register  
their names and enroll as troops to help the  
Roman cause in the war.  
9 plēbe convocātā: abl. abs.  
pollicitus est: pf. dep. polliceor  
iūdicia intermittēre: that (they)...; ind.  
disc., iūdicia is the acc. obj. of the inf.;  
the leaders promise to stop trials regarding  
the debts of the plebs while they fight  
10 quoad...essent: impf. subj.; subj. of a  
subordinate clause in ind. disc.; impf. subj.  
sum  
bellō cōfēctō: abl. abs.

## 16b. Secession of the Plebs

plēbī cōsultūrum esse. Eō modō plēbī persuāsit ut nōmina darent. Volscī aliīque populī fīnitimī victī sunt.

Posteā tamen iūs dē crēditīs pecūniīs crūdēliter, ut anteā, dictum est. Tandem plēbs, cum exercitus, aliō bellō coörtō, in armīs esset, dēspērātō cōsulum senātūsque auxiliō, in Sacrum montem 15 sēcessērunt. Hic mons trāns Aniēnem flūmen est, tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patrēs arbitrātī nūllam spem nisi in concordiā cīvium reliquam esse, ad plēbem mīsērunt Menēnium Agrippam, ipsum plēbeium et plēbī cārum. 19

**Agrippa, ae m.:** Agrippa, 1

**Aniō, Aniēnis f.:** Anio river, 1

**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus:** judge, think 1

**cārus, -a, -um:** dear, precious, costly, 4

**consulō, -ere, -ui, consultum:** to consult, 3

**coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum:** to arise, 2

**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** believe, trust, 7

**crūdēlis, -e:** cruel, bitter, bloody, 3

**dēspērō (1):** to despair, feel no hope, 3

**Menēnus, -ī m.:** Menenius, 2

11 (et) senātūm...cōsultūrum esse: (*and*)  
that...; a second ind. statement governed by  
pollicitus est. Translate the fut. inf. in  
secondary sequence with ‘would.’

eō modō: *in this way*; abl. of manner

plēbī: *the plebs*; dat. ind. obj.

ut...darent: *that...;* ind. command. Once  
again, the patrēs made these concessions so  
that the plebs would register their names  
and enlist as soldiers in the army.

13 iūs...dictum est: *justice was delivered;*  
‘justice was spoken’

crēditīs: *lent, borrowed;* ‘entrusted’ PPP

ut: *as, just as;* parenthetical, a clause of  
comparison equiv. to ‘ut anteā dictum erat’

14 cum...esset: *since...;* causal, impf. sum.  
aliō bellō coörtō: abl. abs., a pf. deponent  
pple is often translated ‘having Xed.’

15 dēspērātō...auxiliō: abl. abs.

**mille (1):** thousand, 6

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 6

**nisi:** if not, unless, 7

**passus, -ūs:** pace, 2

**reliquis, -a, um:** remaining, left , 6

**sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī:** go away, withdraw, 2

**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6

**trāns:** across, over , 3

**Volscī, -ōrum m.:** Volscians, Volsci, 4

**cōsulum:** *of the consuls;* subjective gen.

pl. modifying auxiliō

**in Sacrum montem:** *onto...;* the Sacred Mt.  
is a hill outside of Rome

16 **tria:** neuter pl. of trēs

**mīlia passuum:** *miles;* ‘thousands of paces’  
acc. of extent of space and partitive gen.

Often this acc. follows ‘for,’ but the  
preposition is not needed here. Mīlia is  
neut. pl. of mille.

17 **arbitrātī:** pf. deponent pple. As often this  
pple is translated as ‘having Xed.’

**nūllam spem...esse:** *that...;* ind. disc.  
governed by the pple arbitrātī.

**nisi:** *except*

18 **Menēnium Agrippam:** *Menenius Agrippa*

19 **plēbī cārum:** *dear to the plebs;* dat. of  
reference (point of view)

## 17. Menenius Agrippa

Menēnius hoc narrāvisse fertur: “Ōlim relinquae partēs corporis 1  
hūmānī indignābantur quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō  
ventrī omnia quaererentur, venter in mediō quiētus datīs  
voluptātibus fruerētur; coniūrāvērunt inde nē manūs ad ōs cibum  
ferrent, nēve ōs datum cibum acciperet, nēve dentēs cōnficerent. 5  
Sed dum ventrem famē domāre volunt, ipsa membra tōtumque  
corpus paene periērunt. Inde sēnsērunt ventris quoque ministerium  
haud iners esse.”

Ostendit deinde dissēnsiōnem inter partēs corporis similem esse  
īrae plēbis in patrēs et ita flexit mentēs hominum. Concordiā 10  
reconciliātā, plēbī permissum est suōs magistrātūs creāre tribūnōs  
plēbeiōs, quī auxilium plēbī adversus cōnsulēs ferrent.

**cibus, -ī m.:** food, 2

**coniūrō (1):** to swear together, conspire, 4

**cūra, -ae f.:** care, concern, worry, 5

**dēns, dentis m.:** tooth, 1

**dissensio, -siōnis f.:** conflict, dissension, 3

**domō (1):** to subdue, tame, master, 1

**famēs, -is f.:** hunger, 2

**flectō, -ere, flexī, flectum:** turn, bend, 3

**fruor, fruī, fructum:** enjoy , 1

**haud:** by no means, not at all, 4

**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 4

**hūmānus, -a, -um:** human, humane, 3

**indignor, -ārī, indignātūm:** be offended, 3

**iners (1):** idle, indolent, inert, 1

**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 3

**labor, -is m.:** labor, toil, 3

**magistratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 5

**manus, -ūs f.:** hand; group 7

**membrum, -ī n.:** limb, member, 1

1 **fertur:** is reported

2 **quod...quaererentur (sed)...fruerētur:**  
because...; ‘on the grounds that...’ causal  
quod clause; quod + subj. suggests an  
alleged cause from a character’s point of  
view; impf. pass. subj. quaero

**suā cūrā (et) suō labōre ac ministeriō:** by  
their...; abl. means, suus refers to partēs

3 **ventrī:** for...; dat. of interest

(sed) **venter:** (but) the stomach...

**dātīs voluptātibus:** abl. object of dep.

**Menēnius, -ī m.:** Menenius, 2

**mēns, mentis f.:** mind, intent, purpose, 2

**ministerium, -ī n.:** service, office, 2

**narrō (1):** to relate, tell, narrate, 2

**nēvē:** or not, and not, nor, 2

**ōlim:** once, formerly, 3

**ōs, ḫoris n.:** face, mouth, 4

**ostendō (1):** show, display, 7

**paene:** almost, nearly, 4

**pereō, -ire, perī:** to pass away, perish, 3

**permittō -ere -mīsī -missum:** send through, 3

**plēbeius, -a, -um:** of the plebs, 2

**quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītūm:** to seek,  
ask, inquire, 6

**quiētus, -a, -um:** resting, calm, undisturbed 4

**reconciliō (1):** win back, recover, 2

**sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsūm:** to feel, perceive, 2

**similis, simile:** similar to, like , 2

**venter, ventrīs m.:** belly, 4

fruerētur

4 **nē...ferrent...nēve...nēve...:** that...not...  
or that...not...or that not...; ind. commands  
impf. subj.; -ve, ‘or,’ is an enclitic

7 **ventrīs...esse:** that...; ind. disc., sum

9 **dissēnsiōnēm...patrēs:** that...; ind. disc.  
īrae: to the anger; dat. with adj. similis

11 **permissum est:** it was...; impersonal pf.  
tribūnōs plēbeiōs: in apposition to  
acc. pl. magistrātūs

12 **quī...:** who would...; relative of purpose

## 18a. Cincinnatus

Posteā, dum tribūnī imperium cōsulāre lēgibus dēfīnīre 1  
cōnantur, L. Quīntius Cincinnātus cōsul factus est. Ut  
magistrātum init, reprehendit et senātum et plēbem, quod eīdem  
tribūnī etiam atque etiam cīvitātem turbārent. Senātus 5  
dēcrēvit magistrātūs continuārī contrā rem pūblicam esse.

Plēbs tamen eōsdem, quōs anteā, tribūnōs creāvērunt. Patrēs  
quoque, nē quid cēderent plēbī, Lūcium Quīntium cōsulem  
fēcērunt. At is, “Minimē mīrum est,” inquit, “sī nihil auctōritātis,  
patrēs cōscrīptī, habētis apud plēbem. Vōs eam minuitis, quī in  
continuandīs magistrātibus plēbem imitāmini. Ego mē contrā 10

- auctōritās, -tatis f.: authority, 4  
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cессum: move; withdraw,  
give up, 4  
**Cincinnātus**, -ī m.: Cincinnatus, 1  
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: to try, attempt, 7  
cōnscribō, -ere, -scripsī: enroll, register, 1  
cōsulāris, -e: consular, of a consul, 1  
continuō (1): to make continuous, 2  
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum: decide, judge, 5  
dēfīniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum: to limit, 1  
imitor, imitārī, imitātum: imitate, copy, 3

- 1 cōnāntur: 3p pres. deponent  
2 cōsul: predicate nom. following factus est  
Ut: When...  
3 et...et: both...and  
quod...turbārent: because..., ‘on the  
grounds that...’ quod + subj. suggests an  
alleged cause from a character’s point of  
view; impf.. subj.  
eīdem tribūnī: nom. pl. īdem, eadem, idem  
4 etiam atque etiam: again and again; a  
common expression  
5 dēcrēvit: i.e. decreed, decided (by decree)  
**magistrātus...esse**: that it is contrary to the  
republic that...; ind. disc., magistrātus  
continuārī is a second acc. + inf. clause and  
is the subject of esse and often translated in  
English afterwards  
6 eōsdem...tribūnōs: acc. īdem, eadem, idem

- ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum: go into, enter, 4  
**Lūcius**, -ī m.: Lucius, 3  
**magistrātus**, -ūs m.: magistrate, officer, 5  
minimē: least, by no means, not at all, 1  
minuō, -ere, minuī: diminish, ebb, 1  
mīrus, -a, -um: amazing, wonderful, strange 3  
**Quīntius**, -ī m.: Quinctius, 5  
reprehendō, -ere, -dī: blame; hold back, 3  
turbō (1): to confuse, disturb, 3  
vōs: you, you all, 5

- quōs anteā (creāvērunt): just as before;  
‘whom (they had created) before’  
7 nē ...: so that...might not; neg. purpose +  
impf. subj.  
quid: anything; acc.; after sī, nisi, num, and  
nē (ali)quis, (ali)quid is indefinite (any,  
some)  
8 fēcērunt: made (x) (y); double acc.  
mīrum est: it is amazing; impersonal  
auctōritātis: partitive gen. with nihil  
9 patrēs cōscriptī: vocative, direct address.  
i.e. senators, those registered/enrolled as  
senators by the census.  
eam: it; i.e. fem. sg. auctōritātēs  
**in continuandīs magistrātibus**: in...; ‘in...  
(going) to be reelected,’ Perform a gerund-  
gerundive flip and translate as a gerund  
(-ing) + acc. obj.

## 18b. Cincinnatus

senātūs cōnsultum cōnsulem reficī nōn patiar.” Alius igitur cōnsul factus est.

Post paucōs annōs Aequī exercitum Rōmānum mūnītiōnibus clausum obsidēbant. Cum hoc Rōmam nuntiātum esset, L. Quīnctius consensū omnium dictātor dictus est. Lēgātī ā senātū missī eum invēnērunt trāns Tiberim agrum quattuor iūgerum colementem atque in opus intentum. Rogāvērunt ut togātus mandāta senātūs audīret. Quīnctius admīrātus iubet uxōrem togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre. Cum, abstersō sūdōre, togā vēlātus prōcessisset, dictātōrem eum lēgātī salūtant atque in urbem vocant; quī terror sit 20 in exercitū expōnunt.

abstergeō, -ere, -tersī, -tersum: wipe away, 1  
admīror, -ārī, admīrātus: admire, wonder, 4  
Aequī, -ōrum m.: Aequi, Aequians, 1  
claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum: to close, enclose, 6  
colō, -ere, colū, cultum: cultivate; worship, 3  
consensus, -ūs m.: agreement, consent, 5  
cōnsultum, -ī n.; resolution, 2  
expōnō, -ere, -posū, -positum: set forth, 5  
intentus, -a, -um: attentive, intent, 3  
inveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum: come upon, find, 5  
iūgerum, ī n.: acre, a juger , 2  
mandō (1): to entrust, give, commit, 5  
mūnītiō, -iōnis f.: fortification, paving, 1  
nuntiō (1): announce, report, 7  
obsidēō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum: beset, besiege 5

patior, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 7  
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; proceed, 4  
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: carry forward 4  
properus, -a, -um: hasty, quick, rapid, 1  
quattuor: four, 5  
Quīnctius, -īī m.: Quīnctius, 5  
reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum: remake, renew, 1  
rogō (1): to ask, 3  
salūtō (1): to greet, 2  
sūdor, -ōris m.: sweat, perspiration, 1  
terror, terrōris m.: terror, fright, 4  
toga, -ae f.: toga, 5  
togātus, -a, -um: toga-clad, 1  
trāns: across, over , 3  
tugurium, -ī n.: hut, cottage, 1  
vēlō (1): to veil, shroud, 1

- 11 **senātūs consultum:** *resolution of the senate;* The senate does not pass laws (lēgēs) but advice or resolutions which carry weight because of the authority and clout of the Romans within the Senate.  
**reficī:** pass. inf.. reficiō; cōnsulem is pred.  
**patiar:** 1s fut. patior, ‘allow’  
**cōnsul:** as consul; predicative nom.  
14 **clausum:** *closed off (from escape);* The Aequians had surrounded the army and built fortifications, likely a ditch and wall, to keep the army from escaping.  
**Rōmam:** *to...;* acc. place to which  
**nuntiātum esset:** plpf. subj.  
15 **omnium:** subjective gen. with consensū  
**dictātor:** predicative nom. after dictus est

- trāns...colementem: a participial phrase with pres. pple modifying eum  
**quattuor iūgerum:** *of four iugera;* gen. pl. of measure; a iūgerum is 0.6 of an acre  
17 **in:** *upon..., on...*  
**ut...audīret:** *that...;* ind. command + impf. subj.  
**mandāta:** *orders;* ‘things ordered,’ PPP  
**uxōrem...prōferre:** *that...;* ind. disc.  
19 **abstersō sūdōre:** abl. abs.  
20 **salūtant:** *salute (x) as (y);* a double acc.: acc. direct object and acc. predicate  
**(eum) vocant:** supply a direct object  
**quī terror...in exercitū:** *what terror...;* ind. question + pres. subj. sum; quī is an interrogative adj.

## 18c. Cincinnatus

Quīnctius exercitum obsessum celeriter līberāvit et hostēs sub 22  
iugum mīsit. Triumphāns urbem init sextōque decimō diē  
dictatūram in sex mensēs acceptam dēposuit. 24

---

**celeriter:** swiftly, quickly, 5

**decimus, -a, -um:** tenth, 2

**dēponō, -ere, -posuī:** put down, deposit, 5

**dictatūra, -ae f.:** dictatorship, 2

**ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum:** go into, enter, 4

**iugum, -ī n.:** yoke, range, 2

**līberō (1):** free, liberate, 5

**mensis, -is m.:** month, 2

**obsidēo, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum:** beset, besiege 5

**Quīnctius, -īī m.:** Quinctius, 5

**sex:** six, 1

**sextus, -a, -um:** sixth, 2

**triumphō (1):** celebrate a triumph, 4

22 **sub iugum mīsit:** sent...under the yoke;  
i.e. enslaved them. A iugum is a harness  
used on oxen to compel them to pull a cart  
or plow. This expression is found in Caesar  
and elsewhere to describe when an army is  
forced to surrender and reduced to slavery.

23 **Triumphāns:** celebrating a Triumph; A  
triumph is a formal parade where a military  
leader given permission by the Senate to

bring armed soldiers into Rome for a  
celebratory parade. It is considered one of  
the highest honors bestowed by the Senate  
on a Roman.

**sextōque decimō diē:** on...; abl. of time  
when

24 **in sex mensēs:** for...; acc. of duration. The  
office of dictator lasted half the length of a  
typical consulship.

## 19a. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Ōlim lēgātī ab Clūsīnīs Rōmam vēnērunt auxilium petentēs 1  
adversus Senonēs, gentem Gallicam. Tum Rōmānī mīsērunt  
lēgātōs quī monērent Gallōs nē amīcōs populī Rōmānī  
oppugnārent. Proeliō tamen commissō, lēgātī Rōmānī contrā iūs  
gentium arma cēpērunt auxiliumque Clūsīnīs tulērunt. Gallī posteā 5  
ā senātū Rōmānō postulāvērunt ut prō iūre gentium ita violātō  
lēgātī Rōmānī dēderentur. Hōc negātō, exercitus Gallicus Rōmam  
profectus est.

Rōmānī, quī nihil ad tantum perīculum idōneum parāvērunt,  
apud flūmen Alliam superātī sunt. Diem quō hoc proelium factum 10

Allia, -ae f.: Allia river, 3

amīcus, -ī m.: friend, 4

Clūsīnūs, -a, -um: (inhabitants) of Clusium, 5

committō, -ere, -mīsī: commit; begin, 3

dēdō, -ere: to give over, surrender, 7

Gallicus, -a, -um: Gallic, of Gaul, 3

idōneus, -a, -um: suitable, appropriate, 1

moneō, -ēre, -ūī, monitum: to warn, 4

negō (1): to deny, say that...not, 4

ōlim: once, formerly, 3

oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3

postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5

Senonēs, -um m.: Senones, 1

violō (1): to violate, commit outrage, 4

1 ab Clūsīnīs: from the Clusinians

Rōmam: to...; place to which

2 adversus: against + acc.

3 quī monērent: who would...; relative of purpose with impf. subj.

nē...oppugnārent: that...not...; or ‘not to...’ neg. indirect command governed by monērent

4 Proeliō...commissō: abl. abs., committere proelium, ‘to begin battle,’ is an common idiom

iūs gentium: the law of nations

5 cēpērunt: took up

Clūsīnīs: dat. ind. object

tulērunt: 3p pf. ferō

6 ut...dēderentur: that...; ind. command with impf. subj. governed by postulāvērunt

prō...violātō: in return for...

7 hōc negātō: abl abs., hōc refers to the demand for surrender

8 profectus est: pf. dep. proficīscor

9 ad: for...; expressing purpose

idōneum: modifies nihil not perīculum

10 apud: at...

quō: on which (day); abl. of time when

## 19b. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

est Rōmānī postea Alliēnsem appellāvērunt. Magna pars exercitūs incolumis Veiōs perfūgit. Cēterī Rōmam petiērunt et nē clausīs quidem portīs urbīs, in arcem Capitoliumque cum coniugibus et liberīs sē contulērunt.

Gallī ingressī urbem nēmini parcunt, dīripiunt incenduntque 15 tēcta. Post aliquot diēs, testūdine factā, impetum in arcem fēcērunt. At Rōmānī mediō ferē colle restitērunt atque inde, ex locō superiōre impetū factō, Gallōs pepulērunt. Obsidio inde ā Gallīs parāta est. Pars exercitūs Gallicī dīmissa est ad frūmentum conferendum ex agrīs populōrum fīnitimōrum. Hōs fortūna ipsa 20

**aliquot:** several, 5

**Alliēnsis, -e:** of the Allia river, 3

**arx, arcis m.:** citadel, hilltop, 5

**Capitolium, -i n.:** Capitolium, 5

**cēterī, -ae, -a:** the remaining, rest, others, 4

**claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum:** to close, enclose, 6

**collis, -is m.:** hill, 3

**conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, 4

**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus:** dismiss, let go 5

**dīripiō, -ere, -uī, reuptus:** snatch, ransack, 3

**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7

**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4

**frūmentum, -i n.:** grain, 3

**Gallicus, -a, -um:** Gallic, of Gaul, 3

**incendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 7

11 **appellāvērunt:** called (*x*) (*y*); a double acc. with diem and Alliēnsem (diem); originally in 390 BCE; Alliensis diēs, ‘day of the Alilia river’ is celebrated every June 18<sup>th</sup>

12 **Veiōs:** to *Veii*; acc. place to which; the name of the town is plural

**Cēterī (mīlitēs):** the rest (of the soldiers)

**nē clausīs quidem:** not even having been closed; nē...quidem, ‘not even’ emphasizes the intervening words; nē here does not introduce a clause; a PPP in an abl. absolute in arcem **Capitoliumque:** The two peaks of the Captioline hill are the Capitolium, seat of the temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus and the arx, ‘citadel,’ which holds the treasury in the temple of Juno Moneta

14 **sē contulērunt:** carried themselves; i.e.

**incolumis, -e:** unscathed, uninjured, safe 2

**ingredior, -gredi, ingressum:** step in, enter, 4

**nēmō, nūlliūs, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā:** no one, 6

**obsidio, -iōnis f.:** seige, blockade, 3

**parcō, -ere, pepercī:** spare, refrain , 3

**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum:** drive, beat, 6

**perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee, take refuge, 2

**porta, -ae f.:** gate, 3

**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly 10

**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, previous, 6

**tectum, -i n.:** house, shelter, 1

**testūdo, -tūdinis f.:** tortoise, 1

**Veii, -ōrum m.:** Veii , 3

‘hastened’ or ‘went’

15 **ingressī urbem:** pf. dep. pple ingredior, as often, translate the pple as ‘having Xed’

16 **testūdine factā:** abl. abs. The ‘tortoise’ is a close formation of troops with shields out on all sides and on top to form a ‘shell’ for protection from projectiles.

17 **mediō colle:** on...; abl. place where **superiōre:** higher

18 **impetū factō:** abl. abs., ex locō superiōre is part of the absolute

19 **exercitūs Gallicī:** partitive gen. **ad...conferendum:** for...; ‘for...(going) to be gathered’ perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc. obj.

20 **hōs:** these; i.e. Gallic soldiers

## 19c. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

dūxit Ardeam, ubi Camillus, imperātor clārissimus, in exsiliō vīvēbat. Ardeātēs, eō duce, castra Gallōrum nocte oppugnant et solūtōs somnō trucīdant. Veīs interim nōn animi sōlum in diēs sed etiam vīrēs crescēbant.

Nam praeter Rōmānōs, quī ex pugnā Alliēnsī eō perfūgerant, voluntāriī ex Latiō conveniēbant. Hī iam constituērunt Rōmam hostibus līberāre. Omnibus placuit Camillum arcessī, sed anteā senātū cōnsulī. Ad eam rem Pontius Cominius, audāx iuvenis, sublevātus cortice secundō Tiberī ad urbem dēfertur. Senātū probante, Camillus dictātor dictus est. 30

- Alliēnsis, -e: of the Allia river, 3  
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -itum: summon, call, 1  
Ardea, -ae f.; Ardea, 4  
Ardeātēs, -ium m.: inhabitants of Ardea, 1  
audāx (1): bold, daring, 1  
Camillus, -ī m.: Camillus, 4  
Cominius, -ī m.: Cominius, 1  
conveniō -tre -vēnī -ventus: come together, 6  
cortex, corticis m.: bark, 1  
crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētūm: grow, increase, 4  
dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum: offer, give over 6  
exsilium, -ī n.: exile, 5  
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4  
Latiō, -ōnis f.: Latium, 2  
līberō (1): free, liberate, 5

- 21 Ardeam: acc. place to which  
Camillus: a Roman leader  
22 eō duce: *this one being leader*; abl. abs., subj. and obj. in abl., supply pple ‘being’  
nocte: *at...; abl.* of time when  
23 (illōs) solūtōs somnō: *those...; Camillus and his troops attacked as the enemy slept*  
Veīs: *at Veii; locative, place where*  
nōn sōlum...sed etiam: *not only...but also in diēs: day by day; ‘over the days’*  
24 vīrēs: *strength; 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. nom. pl. vīs;*  
25 Alliēnsī: i-stem abl. modifies pugnā eō: *(to) there; adv. equiv. to ‘to that (place)’*  
26 voluntāriī: *volunteers*  
Rōmam: obj. of līberāre  
hostibus: *from...; abl.* of separation  
27 placuit: *it...; pf. of impersonal placet*

- oppugnō (1): capture by assault, attack, 3  
perfugiō, -ere, -fūgi: flee, take refuge, 2  
placet: it is pleasing, it is resolved, 2  
Pontius, -ī m.: Pontius, 1  
praeter: in addition to, besides; except (acc) 2  
probō (1): approve, 4  
secundus, -a, -um: following, favorable, 3  
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtūm: loosen; pay, 1  
somnus, -ī m.: sleep, 2  
sublevō (1): to lift up, hold up, support, 1  
trucīdō (1): slaughter, massacre, 2  
Veī, -ōrum m.: Veii , 3  
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum: live, 4  
voluntārius, -a, -um: voluntary, 1

- Camillum arcessī...senātū cōnsulī:  
*that...but that...; acc. + inf. clauses; both are subject of placuit; pass. inf. arcessō and cōnsulō*  
28 Ad: *for...; expressing purpose, eam is a demonstrative adj. modifying rem*  
29 corticē: abl. means, i.e. a raft made of cork; cork products are a renewable resource made from the thick bark of the cork tree, so a raft made of cork-bark is reasonable; Pontius Cominius had to travel through enemy territory to Rome  
secundō Tiberī: *(down) a favorable Tiber river; dat. of compound verb; translate as obj. of the prefix dē-, ‘down’*  
Senātū probante: abl. abs.  
30 dictus est: *was appointed*

## 19d. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Interim arx Rōmae Capitōliumque in ingentī perīculō fuērunt. Nocte enim Gallī, praemissō mīlite quī viam temptāret, tantō silentiō in summum ēvāsērunt ut nōn sōlum custōdēs fallerent, sed nē canēs quidem excitārent. Ānsērēs autem nōn fefellērunt, quī avēs Iūnōnis sacrae erant. Nam M. Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius, clangōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitātus, dēiēcit Gallum quī iam in summō constiterat. Iamque aliī Rōmānī tēlīs saxīsque hostēs prōpellunt, tōtaque aciēs Gallōrum praeceps dēfertur.

Sed famēs iam utrumque exercitū urgēbat, Gallōs pestilentia etiam. Diem ex diē Rōmānī fristrā auxilium ab dictātōre

aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
āla, -ae f.: wing, 1  
ānsēr, -eris m.: goose, 1  
arx, arcis m.: citadel, hilltop, 5  
avis, avis f.: bird, 1  
canis, -is m. f.: dog, 1  
Capitōlium, -i n.: Capitolium, 5  
clangor, -ōris m.: noise, 1  
crepitus, -ūs m.: rattle, clatter, 1  
custōs, custōdis m.: guard, doorkeeper, 3  
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum: offer, give over 6  
dēiciō, -ere, -iēci, -iectum: throw/cast down 4  
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7  
ēvadō, -ere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum: go out, escape, 1  
excitō (1): to rouse, stir up; awaken, 6  
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum: deceive, cheat, 3  
famēs, -is f.: hunger, 2

- 31 **arx, Capitōlium:** the two peaks of the Capitoline hill  
ingentī: abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. ingēns
- 32 **Nocte:** abl. time when  
praemissō mīlite: abl. abs.; translate sg. mīlite as plural: ‘soldiers’  
quī ...temptāret: who would...; relative clause of purpose modifying mīlite; The Gallic soldiers were trying to find a way to climb the hill and avoid the gates fortified by the Romans.  
tantō silentiō: with...; abl. of manner
- 33 in summum (montem): supply the noun ut...excitārent: that...; result clause with impf. subj.; translate in the same tense  
nōn sōlum...sed: not only...but

fristrā: in vain, for nothing, 4  
ingēns (1): huge, immense, vast, 8  
interim: meanwhile, in the meantime, 4  
Iūnō, -ōnis m.: Juno, 1  
M.: Marcus, 5  
Mānlius, -ii m.: Manlius, 2  
pestilentia, -ae f.: plague, pestilence, 1  
praeceps, praecepītis adj.: headlong, fast, 1  
prāmittō, -ere: send forward, send ahead, 2  
prōpellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive forth, 1  
quidem: indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly 10  
saxum, saxī n.: rock, 1  
silentium, -ii n.: silence, 1  
tēlūm, -i n.: projectile, arrow, spear, 6  
temptō (1): attempt, test; attack, 2  
urgeō, -ere, ursī: press, urge, distress, 1  
uterque, utra-, utrum-: each , both, 6

- 34 nē...quidem: not even...; emphasizes the intervening word  
Ānsērēs: acc. pl., the enemy is the subject  
35 bellō: in...; abl. of respect as often qualifying and clarifying an adj.  
36 eōrum: i.e. of the geese, from is, ea, id  
excitātus: PPP modifying Manlius  
37 iam constiterat: already had been standing; plpf. progressive after iam  
38 dēfertur: i.e. fell down the slope as the result of the projectiles cast upon them;  
3s pres. pres. dēferō  
39 utrumque: acc. sg. uterque  
pestilentia (urgēbat): ellipsis, supply another main verb  
40 Diem ex diē: Day after day

## 19e. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

exspectābant. Postrēmō mille pondō aurī cum Gallīs pactī sunt ut obsidiōnem relinquerent. Huic reī, per sē turpissimae, indignitās addita est; nam pondera ab Gallīs allāta sunt iniqua. Rōmānīs recūsantibus, gladius ā Brennō, rēge Gallōrum, ponderī additus est cum hīs verbīs, “Vae victīs.” Sed priusquam rēs perfecta est, 45 dictātor pervēnit auferrīque aurum dē mediō et Gallōs summōvērī iussit. Cum illī dicerent sē pactōs esse, negat eam pactiōnem valēre, quae, postquam ipse dictātor creātus esset, iniussū suō facta esset; tum dēnuntiāt Gallīs ut sē ad proelium parent. 49

**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 7  
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus:** take away, carry away, 5  
**aurum, -ī n.:** gold, 3  
**Brennus, -ī m.:** Brennus, 1  
**dēnuntiō, (1):** declare, order 2  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 6  
**indignitās, -tatis f.:** indignity, outrage, 2  
**iniquus, -a, -um:** uneven, unequal, not fair, 2  
**iniussū:** without orders, 3  
**mille (1):** thousand, 6  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 4  
**obsidio, -iōnis f.:** seige, blockade, 3  
**pacīscor, -ī, pactum:** to agree, bargain, 2

41 **mille pondō aurī:** 1000 in weight of gold; i.e. 1000 pounds of gold; abl. of respect and gen. of material; mille is neuter acc. obj. of pactī sunt  
**pactī sunt:** pf. dep. pacīscor: translate in the active; the Romans are the subject  
**ut...relinquerent:** so that...might...; purpose clause with impf. subj.

42 **Huic reī, per sē turpissimae:** to this matter, in itself most shameful; dat. ind. obj.  
**pondera:** i.e. the weights that the Gauls brought to serve as standards as they measured the gold on the scales.  
**allāta:** PPP afferō, not 3p pf. pass.  
**Rōmānīs recūsantibus:** abl. abs.

44 **ponderī:** to...; dat. ind. obj.

45 **Vae victīs:** Woe to the vanquished; or ‘woe to the conquered,’ famous expression:

**pactiō, -tiōnis f.:** agreement, bargain, 1  
**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** accomplish, bring about, 1  
**perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum:** to come through, arrive, 2  
**pondus, ponderis n.:** weight, 6  
**postquam:** after, when, 6  
**postrēmus, -a, -um:** last, 3  
**priusquam:** before than, sooner than, 2  
**recūsō (1):** refuse, give a reason against, 5  
**summōvēd, -ēre, -mōvī:** remove, move up, 1  
**turpis, turpe:** ugly, shameful, 1  
**Vae:** woe, 2  
**valeō, -ēre, uī:** be strong, fare well, be able, 1

an interjection and dat. of interest, PPP of vincō, vincere

46 **auferrīque...summōvērī:** that...; ind. disc. with pres. pass. inf. governed by iussit

47 **iussit:** pf. iubeō  
**illī:** those; i.e. the Gauls

**sē pactōs esse:** that this...; ind. disc., with pf. pass. pacīscor

**negat:** Camillus is the subject  
**eam...valēre:** that this...; ind. disc. eam is a demonstrative adj.

48 **quae...facta esset:** which...; relative clause, subj. of subordinate clause in ind. disc.; here, plpf. subj. faciō

**iniussū suō:** without his order

49 **ut...parent:** that...; ind. command with pres. subj. parō, parāre

**ad:** for...; expressing purpose

## 19f. The Gallic Invasion of 390 BC

Gallī et in urbe et alterō proeliō viā Gabīnā superātī sunt. 50  
 Dictātōr triumphāns in urbem rediit; “Rōmulus” ac “parens patriae conditorque alter urbis” appellābātur. Deinde servātam in bellō patriam iterum in pāce servāvit. Cum enim tribūnī plebem agitārent ut, relictīs Rōmae ruinīs, Veiōs migrārent, Camillus ūrātiōne ācrī cīvibus persuāsit ut Rōman restituerent. Centuriō 55 quoque populum mōvit vōce opportūnē ēmissā, quī cum cohortibus forum trānsiēns clāmāvit: “Signum statue, signifer, hīc manēbimus optimē.” Quā vōce audītā, et senātus ē Cūriā ēgressus ūmen accipere sē conclāmāvit, et plēbs circumfūsa probāvērunt. 59

---

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp; fierce, keen, 4

**agitō (1):** to drive, impel, 1

**alter, -era, -erūm:** other , second, 7

**Camillus, -ī m.:** Camillus, 4

**centurio, -iōnis m.:** centurion, 1

**circumfundō -ere -fūdī -fūsus:** pour around 1

**clāmō (1):** to cry, shout out, 6

**cohors, cohortis m.:** cohort (unit of ~480) 2

**conclāmō (1):** cry out together, shout, 1

**conditor, -toris m.:** founder, 1

**Cūria, -ae f.:** senate house, Curia, 8

**ēgredior, -ī, -gressus:** go out, disembark, 1

**ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** send out, 3

**Gabīnus, -a, -um:** of Gabii, 6

**hīc:** here, 1

**iterum:** again, a second time, 3

**maneō, -ēre, mansī:** to stay, wait, wait for, 7

**migrō (1):** to travel, migrate, 3

**moveō, -ere, -vī, mótm̄:** to move, arouse, 5

**ōmen, ūminis n.:** omen, 1

**opportūnus, -a, -um:** suitable, convenient, 1

**optimus, -a, -um:** best, noblest, finest, 6

**ōrātio, -ionis f.:** speaking, speech, language, 3

**parens, -rentis m.:** parent, ancestor, 4

**probō (1):** approve, 4

**ruina, -ae f.:** ruins, downfall, 3

**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 7

**signifer, -ī m.:** standard bearer, 1

**signum, -ī n.:** sign, signal; standard, 6

**triumphō (1):** celebrate a triumph, 4

**Veiī, -ōrum m.:** Veii , 3

**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 7

50 **et...et:** both...and...

(in) **viā Gabīnā:** i.e. on the road to Gabii

51 **“Romulus”...appellābātur:** he was named...; all of the nom. predicate forms in quotation marks are honorific titles

53 **servāvit:** Camillus is subject

**enim:** for...; postpositive: translate first

54 **ut...migrārent:** that they...; i.e. the plebs, ind. command

**relictīs...ruinīs:** abl. abs.

**Veiōs:** to Veii; acc. place to which

55 **ōrātiōne ācrī:** abl. of means; ācrī is an abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.

**cīvibus:** dat. ind. obj. of persuāsit

**ut...restituerent:** that...; ind. command

56 **vōce...ēmissā:** abl. abs.; The centurion was making an off-hand remark that was heard by others and taken to be an ominous sign.

**opportūnē:** adverb

57 **trānsiēns:** nom. sg. pres. pple. trānseō

**Signum:** the standard; i.e. the military standard, a long wood staff with insignia that soldiers used as a guide to arranged themselves under in formation

**statue:** set up; ‘make stand,’ sg. imperative

58 **optimē:** very well; superlative adv.

**quā vōce audītā:** this utterance...; abl.

abs.; a connective relative: Latin prefers a relative in transitions where English prefers a demonstrative.

**et...et:** both...and

59 **ēgressus:** pf. dep. pple; as often, translate the pf. dep. pple as ‘having Xed’

**accipere sē:** that they...; sē is acc. subject

**circumfūsa:** pf. dep. pple; as often, translate the pf. dep. pple as ‘having Xed’

## Part Two

### Roman Republic

- 280 - 275 Pyrrhic War
- 264 - 241 First Punic War
- 218 - 201 Second Punic War
- 133 Tiberius Gracchus killed
- 107 - 100 Consulships of Gaius Marius
- 82 - 79 Dictatorship of Lucius Cornelius Sulla
- 59 First Triumvirate: Pompey, Crassus, Caesar
- 44 Death of Gaius Julius Caesar
- 43 Death of Marcus Tullius Cicero
- Second Triumvirate: Mark Antony, Lepidus, Octavian
- 31 Battle of Actium: Octavian defeats Mark Antony
- 31 – AD 14 Augustus (Octavian) is first Emperor of Rome

## 20a. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

Rōmānī, ā Pyrrhō, rēge Epīrī, proeliō superātī, lēgātōs Tarentum 1  
 ad eum dē redimendīs captīvis mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs  
 erat C. Fabricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper.  
 Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna  
 dōna obtulit, sī Rōmānīs pācem suādērent. Quamquam haec omnia 5  
 sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dīcitur sine pretiō Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus, Fabriciī virtūtem admīrātus, illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam  
 regnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret sēcumque vīveret; cui  
 Fabricius ita respondit: “Sī mē virum bonum iūdicās, cūr mē vīs  
 corrumpere? Sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīcitiam cupis?” Annō 10

**admīror, -ārī, admīrātus:** admire, wonder, 4

**admodum:** in great measure, very, greatly, 1

**amīcitia, -ae, f.:** friendship, 5

C.: Gaius, 5

**corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum:** ruin, 4

**cūr:** why?, 2

**dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum:** to desert, 2

**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5

**ēgregius, -a, -um:** excellent, outstanding, 7

**Ēpirus, -ī m.:** Epirus (in northern Greece), 3

**hīc:** here, 1

**iūdicō (1):** judge, decide, assess, 3

**meus, -a, -um:** my, mine, 6

**offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum:** offer, 3

**pauper, -is:** poor, 1

**pretium, iī n.:** price, value, 1

**quartus, -a, -um:** one-fourth, 2

**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum:** buy/take back 6

**respondeō, -ere, -dī, -ōnsus:** answer, reply, 4

**sēcrētō:** secretly, 1

**sīn:** but if; if, however, 1

**sine:** without , 5

**spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum:** spurn, reject, 3

**suādeō, -ere, suāsī, suāsum:** persuade, urge 3

**Tarentum, -ī n.:** Tarentum, 1

**vīvō, -ere, vīxi, vīctum:** live, 4

1 ā **Pyrrhō:** abl. of agent with PPP

**rēge:** in apposition to Pyrrhō; Epirus is a region in northeastern Greece. Pyrrhus is a relative of Alexander the Greek

**proeliō:** in...; abl. means or place where

**superātī:** PPP superō

**Tarentum:** to...; acc. place to which, towns and cities do not employ ‘ad’

2 dē redimendīs captīvis: about...; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as gerund (-ing) + obj.  
**inter:** among...

3 **bellō:** in (*respect to*)...; abl. of respect

4 **lēgātīs:** dat. ind. object

5 sī...suādērent: if they persuaded; protasis of a fut. more vivid condition (sī fut., fut) in an implied ind. disc.: ‘he offered THAT he would give many gifts, if they persuaded...’ in ind. disc. in secondary sequence a fut. protasis becomes impf. subj.

**haec omnia:** nom. neut. pl., add ‘things’

6 **Rōmam:** accusative, place to which

**mīsisse:** pf. inf. mittō following dīcitur

7 **admīrātus:** pf. dep. pple is often translated ‘having X’ and may govern an acc. obj.

illī: to that one; dat. ind. obj., i.e. Fabricius

8 **regnī suī:** partitive gen. with partem

sī...dēsereret...vīveret: if he deserted...;

see note 5; protasis in implied fut. more

vivid: ‘he offered THAT he would...if...’

**sēcumque:** et cum sē

**cui:** to this one; a connective relative, dat. in obj.; English prefers to use a demonstrative

9 sī...iūdicās,...vīs: if...; two pres. ind. verbs in a simple pres. condition; 2s volō

10 **Sīn malum (me iūdicās):** but if...; sīn = sī nē; ellipsis: add a verb and dir. obj. in this pres. simple condition

**Annō interiectō:** abl. abs.

## 20b. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

interiectō, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae 21  
 ablātā, Fabricius, consul factus, contrā eum missus est. Cumque  
 vīcīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad  
 Fabricium vēnit eīque pollicitus est, sī praemium sibi prōposuisset,  
 sē Pyrrhum venēnō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vīnctum ad 25  
 Pyrrhum remīsit atque eum certiōrem fēcit quae medicus pollicitus  
 esset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum dīxisse fertur: “Ille est Fabricius, quī  
 difficilis ab honestātē quam sōl ā suō cursū potest āvertī.”

Fabricius cum apud Pyrrhum rēgem lēgātūs esset, cum Cīneā, 30  
 lēgātō Pyrrhī, sermōnem contulit. Hic dīxit quendam philosophum

**admīror, -ārī, admīrātūs:** admire, wonder, 4  
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātūs:** take away, 5  
 carry away, 5  
**āvertō, -ere, -vertī:** turn aside, turn away, 3  
**certus, -a, -um:** certain, reliable, sure, 6  
**Cīneas, -ae m.:** Cineas, 1  
**conferō, -ferre, -tuli:** bring together, collect, 4  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 6  
**difficilis, difficile:** hard, difficult, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditūs:** put forth, give out, 5  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**honestās, -tātīs f.:** integrity, respectability, 1  
**interiaciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectūm:** put in, 1

- 21 **omnī spē...ablātā:** abl. abs., omnī is a 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.  
**pācis...conciliandae:** of..., objective gen. with spē; perform a gerundive-gerund flip. and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.
- 22 **consul:** nom. pred. following PPP faciō  
**Cumque...habērent:** cum-clause with impf. subj.
- 23 **ipse:** (*he*) himself, i.e. Fabricius; the two camps were near each other
- 24 **nocte:** at...; abl. of time when
- 25 **eīque:** and to whom; dat. ind. obj., dat. sg. of is, ea, id
- 26 **pollicitus est:** pf. dep. policeor  
**sī...prōposuisset, sē...necātūrum (esse):** that, if he would..., he would...; a fut. more vivid (sī fut. (pf.), fut.) in ind. disc. becomes sī impf (plpf) subj. + fut. inf. in ind. disc.; in secondary sequence, what was originally a fut. pf. protasis (prōposuerit) becomes plpf.

**medicus, -ī m.:** doctor, physician, 2  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 6  
**philosophus, -ī m.:** philosopher, 2  
**polliceor, -cērī, -cītūs:** promise, offer, 4  
**praemium, -ī n.:** reward, prize, 1  
**prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, posītūm:** to set forth, 3  
**remittō -ere -mīsī -missūm:** to send back, 3  
**sermō, -ōnis n.:** conversation, discourse, 2  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 3  
**venēnum, -ī n.:** poison, 3  
**vīcīnus, -a, -um:** neighboring, 3  
**vīncīō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctūm:** bind, tie, 1

- subj.; the reflexives sibi and sē refer to the subject of the main verb: Pyrrhus
- 25 **hunc...vīnctum:** i.e. the medicus  
**certiōrem fēcit:** made...more certain; i.e. informed, a common idiom in Caesar
- 26 **quae...pollicitus esset:** what...; ind. question governs a plpf. dep. subj.
- 27 **admīrātūs:** pf. dep. pple is often translated ‘having X’ and may govern an acc. obj.  
**dīxisse:** pf. inf.  
**fertur:** is reported; another idiom
- 28 **difficilis:** with more difficulty;  
 comparative adv.  
**ab honestātē...ā...:** from...; separation  
**quam...potest...:** than...; quam is an adv. introducing a clause of comparison  
**āvertī:** pres. pass. inf.
- 29 **cum...esset:** when...; with impf. subj. sum  
**apud...:** at the house/dwelling of...+ acc.  
**Hic:** this one; i.e. Cineas  
**Quendam philosophum:** that...; ind. disc.

## 20c. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

esse Athēnīs, quī dīceret omnia quae facerēmus ad voluptātem esse 31  
 referenda. Tum Fabricium exclāmāsse ferunt: “Utinam id hostibus  
 nostris persuādeāmus, quō facilius vincī possint, cum sē  
 voluptātibus dederint!” Nihil magis ab eius vītā aliēnum erat quam  
 voluptās et lūxus. Tōta eius suppellex argentea ex salīnō ūnō 35  
 cōnstābat et ex patellā ad ūsum sacrōrum, quae corneō pediculō  
 sustinēbātur. Cēnābat ad focum rādīcēs et herbās, cum lēgātī  
 Samnītium ad eum vēnērunt magnamque eī pecūniā obtulērunt;  
 quibus sīc respondit: “Quamdiū cupiditātibus imperāre poterō, nihil  
 mihi deerit; vōs autem pecūniā eīs quī cupiunt dōnāte.” 40

---

**aliēnus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 5  
**argenteus, -a, -um:** silvery, of silver, 1

**Athēnae, -ārum f.:** Athens, 2

**cēnō (1):** to dine, 1

**constō, -stāre, -stīti:** stand firm; is agreed, 5

**corneus, -a, -um:** of cornel wood, 2

**cupiditās, -tātis f.:** desire, 2

**dēsum, -esse, -fūi:** to fail, be lacking, 2

**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5

**ēdō, -ere, -dīdi, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**exclāmō (1):** to shout out, shout, 2

**facilis, -e:** easy, 4

**focus, -ī m.:** hearth, fire-place, 1

**herba, -ae f.:** plant, 1

**imperō (1):** order, command, 4

**lūxus, -ī m.:** luxury, splendor, 2

**magis:** more, 7

**noster, nostra, nostrum:** our, 1

**offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum:** offer, 3

**patella, -ae f.:** little dish, platter, 1

**pediculus, -ī m.:** little foot, 1

**quamdiū:** as long as; how long?: 2

**rādīx, rādīcis f.:** root; foot, base, 1

**referō, -ferre, -tuli:** to report, bring back, 7

**respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -ōnsus:** answer, reply, 4

**salīnum, -ī n.:** vessel of salt, salt-cellar, 1

**Samnis, (-ītis):** Samnite (Italian people) 1

**sīc:** thus, in this way, 6

**suppellex, -llectis f.:** furniture, ornaments, 1

**sustineō, -ēre, uī, -tētum:** hold up, endure, 5

**ūsus, -ūs m.:** use, practice; advantage, 1

**utinam:** would that..., 1

**vinciō, -ire, vīnxī, vīnctus:** bind, tie, 1

**vōs:** you, you all, 5

31 **Athēnīs:** locative, place where

**quī dīceret:** who...; relative clause; subj. of a subordinate verb. in ind. disc., impf. subj.  
**omnia...esse referenda:** that...must be brought back; ind. disc. ‘are (going) to be brought back,’ a passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expresses necessity  
**quae facerēmus:** relative clause; subj. of a subordinate verb. in ind. disc., impf. subj.

32 **Fabricum exclāmā(vi)sse:** that...; ind. disc. with pf. inf.

**ferunt:** they report; common idiom

**Utinam...persuādeāmus:** Would that...; utinam introduces an optative subj. (subj. of wish); pres. subj. + acc. + dat. ind. obj.

**id:** (about) that; acc. obj. of persuādeō

33 **quō...possint:** in order they they may...;

purpose; pres. subj. possum (quō = ut)

**cum...dederint:** when...; 3p pf. subj. dō, sē, ‘themselves,’ refers to the hostēs

34 **magis aliēnum:** more foreign; nom. pred.

**eius:** i.e. of Fabricius; gen. sg. of is, ea, id

**quam:** than...; clause of comparison

36 **cōstābat:** consisted out of

**ad:** for...; ad + acc. expressing purpose  
**sacrōrum:** sacred rites

**corneō pediculō:** by...; abl. means

37 **ad:** near...

38 **ēī:** dat. ind. obj., is, ea, id

39 **quibus:** to these; connective relative

**cupiditātibus:** dat. obj. of imperāre

**poterō, deerit:** 1s fut. possum, 3s fut dēsum

40 **mīhi:** for...; dat. of interest

**dōnāte:** pl. imperative

## 20d. Pyrrhus of Epirus and Gaius Fabricius

Fabricius omnem vītam in gloriōsā paupertāte exēgit, adeōque 41  
inops dēcessit ut unde dōs filiārum dārētur nōn relinqueret. Senātus  
patris sibi partēs sūmpsit et, dātīs ex aerāriō dōtibus, filiās  
collocāvit.

---

**adeō:** to such a degree, so, 2

**aerārium, -ī n.:** treasury, 2

**collocō (1):** place together, arrange, set up, 1

**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessi:** depart, withdraw, die, 3

**dōs, dōtis f.:** dowry, 2

**exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum:** drive out; spend, 3

41 **omnem vītam:** *his entire life*; agere + vītam, ‘to spend/live life’ is a common idiom

42 **dēcessit:** i.e. departed from life; a euphemism for dying

42 **ut...relinqueret:** *that...;* result clause with impf. subj.

**unde...dārētur:** *(an estate) from which...;* a relative clause, the missing antecedent is the object of relinqueret; impf. pass. subj. of a subordinate verb in a result clause

**dōs filiārum:** Roman families would often

**gloriōsus, -a, -um:** glorious, 2

**inops (1):** without resources, poor, penniless 1

**paupertās, -tātis f.:** poverty, 1

**sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum:** to take (up) 5

**unde:** whence, from which source, 3

entice husbands for their daughters by offering land or wealth as a dowry

43 **patris...partēs:** *the roles of father;* acc. dir. obj. i.e. after Fabricius died, the Senate interceded on his behalf and acted as a father would

**sibi:** *for...;* dat. of interest

**dātīs...dōtibus:** abl. abs.; PPP dō

44 **collocāvit:** i.e. found husbands and therefore placed the daughters in new households

## 21a. Regulus and the 1<sup>st</sup> Punic War

Cum prīmō Pūnicō bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē 1 imperiō Siciliae contenderent, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, consul Rōmānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proeliō factō, Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit simulāns sē velle dē pāce agere, rē verā ut tempus extraheret, dum novae cōpiae ex 5 Africā advenīrent. Mīlitēs Rōmānī clamāre coepērunt Rēgulum idem facere oportēre quod Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs ante annīs in cōnsule quōdam fēcissent. Is enim tamquam in colloquium per fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs comprehēnsus erat et in catēnās coniectus. Iam Hannō timēre incipiēbat, sed perīculum respōnsō 10

**adveniō, -ire, -vēni:** to come to, approach, 4  
**Atilius, -ī m.:** Atilius, 1  
**catēna, -ae f.:** chain, fetter, shackle, 2  
**clāmō (1):** to cry, shout out, 6  
**classis, -is f.:** fleet, 4  
**colloquium, -ī n.:** conversation, conference, 4  
**comprehendō, -ere, dī, -prehensum:** to grasp, seize, 5  
**conicīō, -ere, -īcī:** throw together, hurl, 5  
**contendō, -ere, -ī:** strive; hasten; contend, 3  
**cōpia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 5  
**extrahō, -ere, -trāxī:** to draw or pull out, 1  
**fraus, fraudis f.:** deceit, fraud, trickery, 3

- 1 **Cum...contenderent:** when...; impf. subj.
- prīmō Pūnicō bellō: in...; abl. time when
- 2 **imperio Siciliae:** i.e. control over Sicily; Siciliae is an objective gen.
- 3 **nāvālī pugnā:** abl. means with a 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. ('-ī' instead of '-e')
- Proeliō factō: abl. abs., PPP faciō
- 4 **simulāns:** nom. sg. pres. pple; Hanno is lying about he intentions
- sē...agere:** that...talked; ind. disc.; agō, 'carry on' can also mean 'converse' or 'talk' in this context; velle is pres. inf. volō
- 5 **rē verā:** in true fact; or 'actually'
- ut...:** so that...might; purpose, impf. subj.
- dum...advenīret:** until...; temporal clause, cōpiae: troops; elsewhere 'supplies'

**Hannō, -ōnis m.:** Hanno, 3  
**incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum:** begin, 5  
**M.:** Marcus, 5  
**nāvālis, -e:** naval, nautical, of a ship, 2  
**oportet:** ought; it is proper, fitting, 1  
**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7  
**Pūnicus, -a, -um:** Punic (Carthaginian), 6  
**respōnsūm, -ī n.:** response, reply, 3  
**Sicilia, -ae f.:** Sicily, 6  
**simulō (1):** feign, pretend; make like, 2  
**tamquam:** as if, as much as, so to speak, 6  
**timeō, -ēre, -ūi:** fear, dread, 2

- 6 **Rēgulum...oportēre:** that...; ind. disc. oportēre, 'ought,' governs an inf.; the entire clause is governed by clamāre
- 7 **idem:** the same thing; neut. acc. sg.
- quod...fēcissent:** which...; relative clause with plpf. subj; subj. of subordinate clause in ind disc.
- paucīs ante annīs:** a few years before; 'before by a few years' abl. of degree of difference with the adverb ante
- in...cōnsule:** to...
- 8 **Is:** he.; i.e. Regulus
- 9 **vocātus:** PPP vocō
- 10 **coniectus (erat):** plpf. pass., supply verb
- respōnsō:** with...; abl. means respōnsūm

## 21b. Regulus and the 1<sup>st</sup> Punic War

callidō reppulit. “Sī hoc fēceritis,” inquit, “nihilō eritis Poenīs 11 meliōrēs.” Consul tacere iussit eōs quī pār pārī referrī volēbant, et conveniēns gravitatī Rōmānae respōnsum dedit: “Istō tē metū, Hannō, fidēs Rōmāna līberat.” Dē pāce, quia Poenus ex animō nōn agēbat et consul bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat, nōn 15 convēnit.

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga, L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam prīmī Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Ibi, multīs castellīs expugnātīs magnāque praedā captā, Tūnētem occupāvērunt, quae urbs decem tantum milibus passuum ā Carthāgine aberat. Vulsō in Italiam cum 20

- absum, -esse, āfui:** to be away, be absent, 5  
**callidus, -a, -um:** clever, skilful, adroit, 1  
**castellum, -ī n.:** stronghold, fort, 1  
**collēga, -ae m.:** colleague, partner, 5  
**conveniō -ire -vēnī -ventus:** come together, 6  
**decem:** ten, 2  
**expugnō (1):** to take by storm, capture, 2  
**fidēs, eī f.:** faith, trust, loyalty, 7  
**gravitās, -tatis f.:** weight, heaviness, 1  
**Hannō, -ōnis m.:** Hanno, 3  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**iste, ista, istud:** that (of yours), those 2  
**līberō (1):** free, liberate, 5  
**mālō , malle, maluī:** prefer, 5  
**Mānlius, -ī m.:** Manlius, 2  
**melior, melius:** better, 4

- 11 **reppulit:** rejected; pf. repellō  
**sī...fēceritis...eritis:** if you..., you will...;  
 a fut. more vivid condition; translate the  
 2p fut. pf. as present with future sense; the  
 pf. here denotes an action completed before  
 the fut. action in the apodosis but does not  
 have to be translated into English  
**nihilō:** not at all, in no way; abl. of degree  
 of difference with meliōrēs  
**Poenīs:** than...; abl. of comparison  
 12 **pār pārī referrī:** to respond like for like;  
 “equal to be returned for equal,” i.e. in a  
 give and take conversation  
 13 **conveniēns:** being consistent with + dat.;  
 people conveniō  
**istō...metū:** from...; abl. separation  
 14 **Hannō:** vocative, direct address

- metus, -ūs f.:** dread, fear, 1  
**mille (1):** thousand, 6  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 5  
**passus, -ūs:** pace, 2  
**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian, 7  
**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7  
**praeda, -ae f.:** plunder, spoils 7  
**quia:** because, 2  
**referō, -ferre, -tuli:** to report, bring back, 7  
**repellō, -ere, -ppulī, -pulsum:** drive away, 2  
**respōnsum, -ī n.:** response, reply, 3  
**taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum:** be silent, say nothing 2  
**tū:** you, 6  
**Tūnēs, Tūnētis m.:** Tunis (in Africa), 1  
**Vulsō, -ōnis m.:** Vulso, 2

- Dē pāce...nōn convēnit:** they did not  
 agree...; an impersonal pf. verb, which one  
 may translate as active: “they agreed”  
**ex animō:** i.e. from the heart, sincerely  
**agēbat:** was talking; “was carrying on”  
 15 **quam:** (rather) than; clause of comparison  
 17 **prīmī:** the first; modifying both subjects  
 18 **Rōmānōrum ducum:** partitive gen. pl.  
 trānsiērunt: pf. trānseō  
 18 **multīs...expugnātīs:** abl. abs.  
**magnā...captā:** abl. abs.  
 19 **quae urbs:** which city...; relative adj.  
**decem...milibus passuum:** by...miles;  
 ‘thousand of paces;’ abl. of degree of  
 difference (one expects an acc. of extent)  
 20 **tantum:** only; ‘just so much’ adv. acc.

## 21c. Regulus and the 1<sup>st</sup> Punic War

parte mīlitum rediit, collēgā ad agrōs vāstandōs relictō. Dum 21 Rēgulus ita hiemem in Āfricā agit, vīlicus in agellō septem iugerum, quem Rēgulus cōnsul habēbat, mortuus est; occāsiōnem nactus mercenārius, ablātō rūsticō īstrūmentō, aufūgit. Ita perīculum erat nē, dēsertō agrō, alimenta uxōrī Rēgulī ac līberīs 25 deessent. Dīcitur litterīs ā cōnsulibus petīsse ut sibi successor mitterētur. At senātus agrum colī pūblicē et alimenta coniugī eius ac līberīs praebērī rēsque quās āmīserat redimī iussit.

Īsequēntī annō Lacedaemonius quīdam, nōmine Xanthippus, reī mīlitāris perītissimus, Carthāginem cum conductīs vēnit. 30

agellus, -ī m.: a little field, piece of land, 1  
alimentum, -ī n.: nourishment, food, 2  
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum: lose, let go, 6  
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus: take away, carry away, 5  
aufugiō, -ere, -fūgī: to flee away, 1  
collēga, -ae m.: colleague, partner, 5  
colō, -ere, colui, cultum: cultivate; worship, 3  
conductus, -ī m.: hirelings, hired men, 1  
dēserō, -ere, -uī, -sertum: to desert, 2  
dēsum, -esse, -fuī: to fail, be wanting, 2  
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
hiems, hiemis f.: winter, 1  
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus: follow, ensue, 3  
īstrūmentum, -ī n.: tool, implement, 1  
iūgerum, ī n.: acre, a juger, 2

21 mīlitum: partitive gen.  
rediit: pf. red-eō  
collēgā...relictō: abl. abs.  
ad...vāstandōs: for...; perform a gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.  
dum...agit: while... spends; temporal clause, dum governs ind. with exact time and a subj. when there is expectation or anticipation; agō often means ‘spends’  
22 septēm iugerum: of...; gen. of measure  
23 mortuus est: pf. dep. morior  
24 nactus: having attained; PPP nanciscor  
ablātō īstrumentō: abl. abs., PPP auferō  
25 perīculum erat: there was a risk...  
nē...deessent: lest..., or ‘that,’ fearing clause with impf. subj. desum  
dēsertō agrō: abl. abs.

Lacedaemonius, -ī m.: Lacedaemonian, 1  
littera, -ae f.: letter, 2  
mercenārius, -ī m.: hired, hireling, 1  
mīlitāris, -e: military, warlike, 2  
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus: obtain, meet, 1  
occāsio, -ōnis f.: opportunity, 2  
pereō, -ire, perīt: to pass away, perish, 3  
praebēō, -ere, -uī, -itum: present, put forth, 4  
redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum: buy/take back 6  
rūsticus, -a, -um: rural, rustic, 1  
septēm: seven, 4  
successor, -ōris m.: follower, sucessor, 3  
vāstō (1): lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3  
vīlicus, -ī m.: estate-manager, steward, 1  
Xanthippus, -ī m.: Xanthippus, 1

uxōrī...ac līberīs: for...; dat. of interest  
26 dīcitur: he is said  
ā cōnsulibus: from...; abl. of source  
petī(vi)sse: pf. inf. petō  
ut...mitterētur: that...be...; ind. command  
sibi: for...; dat. of interest  
27 At: but; a strong adversative  
agrūm...colī, alimenta...praebērī,  
rēs...redimī: that..., ind. disc., a series of three acc. + inf. clauses following iussit, the pf. of iubeō; pass. inf. colō, praebeō, redimō  
pūblicē: at public expense  
coniugī...ac līberīs: to...; dat. ind. obj.  
28 rēs: i.e. wealth or resources  
29 īsequēntī annō: in...; abl. time when, pres. pple (3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl. ending)  
30 reī mīlitāris: military science; gen. sg.  
Carthāginem: to...; acc. place to which

## 21d. Regulus and the 1<sup>st</sup> Punic War

Carthāginiēnsibus celeriter persuāsit ut sē ducem facerent. Quō 31 factō fortūna mutāta est. Nam nōn sōlum exercitum Rōmānum vīcērunt sed etiam Rēgulum imperātorem cēpērunt.

Paucīs post annīs, cum iterum dē pāce agere cōnstituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam mīsērunt quī Rōmānīs pācem 35 suādēret, et dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret; iūre iūrandō autem adstrictus est ut, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāret, redīret ipse Carthāginem. Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac Poenī mandāverant. Nam senātuī suāsit nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim fractōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; reddī captīvōs 40

**adstringō, -ere, -strīnxī:** to bind, 1

**aliter:** otherwise, in some other way, 1

**cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, mishap; fall, 2

**celeriter:** swiftly, quickly, 5

**commūtō (1):** to change, exchange, 2

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**exerceō, -ere, -uī, -ercitum:** exercise, 3

**fiō, fieri, factus sum:** to be made, occur, 3

**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4

**frangō, -ere, frēgī, fractus:** break, shatter, 3

**impetrō (1):** attain , accomplish, 3

31 **Carthāginiēnsibus:** dat. ind. obj.

**ut...facerent:** that...; ind. command, impf. subj. faciō governs a double acc. (acc. dir. obj. and acc. pred.)

**Quō factō:** this...; abl. abs. and connective relative: translate quō, ‘which’ as ‘this;’ Latin prefers a relative where English prefers a demonstrative

32 **nōn sōlum...sed etiam:** not only...but also

33 **vīcērunt:** pf. vincō

34 **paucīs post annīs:** a few years later; ‘after by a few years,’ abl. of degree of difference with adv. post

35 **Romam:** acc. place to which

**quī...suādēret...ageret:** who would...; relative clause of purpose (quī = ut is)

36 **dē commūtandīs captīvīs:** about...; do a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.

**iūre iūrandō:** by swearing an oath; means;

**iterum:** again, a second time, 3

**iūrō (1):** to swear (an oath), 3

**mandō (1):** to entrust, give, commit, 5

**mutō (1):** to change, alter, 3

**nisi:** if not, unless, 7

**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7

**reddō -ere -didī -dditum:** give back, render 5

**stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictum:** draw, pull out, 1

**suādeo, -ere, suāsī, suāsum:** persuade, urge 3

**tot:** so many, 2

a common noun + gerundive; perform the gerund-gerundive flip

37 **adstrictus est:** i.e. was compelled

**ut...redīret:** that...; ind. command, impf. subj. redeō

**nisi...impetrāret:** if...not; or ‘unless;’ subj. of subordinate verb in ind. command

**ipse: he himself**

**Carthāginem, Rōmam:** acc. place to which

**ēgit:** pf. agō

38 **aliter ac:** otherwise than...; ac is here an conjunction in a clause of comparison

39 **senātuī:** the senate; dat. ind. obj.

**nē...fieret:** that...not; neg. ind. command with impf. subj. fiō

**illōs...habēre:** (and) that those...; ind. disc. also governed by suāsīt; supply “et”

40 **fractōs:** PPP frangō

**tot cāsibus:** abl. means with the PPP

**reddī captīvōs:** that...; acc. + inf. clause, subject of esse below; pass. inf. reddō

## 21e. Regulus and the 1<sup>st</sup> Punic War

negāvit esse ūtile; adulēscētēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē iam 41  
confectum senectūte; dīxit etiam malum exemplum futūrum esse,  
sī captīvī Rōmānī redimerentur. Senatus eō auctore pācem  
recūsāvit Poenōsque captivōs retinuit. Rēgulus ut captīvus  
coniugem parvōsque nātōs ā sē remōvit Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi 45  
crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necātus esse dīcitur.

---

**auctor, auctōris m.:** agent, creator, 3

**crūdēlis, -e:** cruel, bitter, bloody, 3

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**eō, ire, iī , itūrus:** go, 2

**exemplum, -ī n.:** example, 3

**malus, -a, -um:** bad, evil, wicked, 1

**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 6

**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, 4

**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 4

41 **esse ūtile:** *that it is...*; ind. disc., since the acc. + inf. construction, reddī captīvōs, is the subject; the pred. ūtile is neuter in agreement; inf. sum

**adulēscētēs esse:** *(and) that...*; ind. disc. et: *also;* adverb

**sē...confectum (esse):** *(and) that...*; ind. disc. with pf. pass. inf. conficiō; conficiō can mean ‘exhausted’ or ‘wearied’

42 **senectūte:** abl. of cause or means

**(sē) malum...futūrum esse:** *that (he)...;* ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum; add sē

43 **sī...redimerentur:** *if...*; a fut. more vivid

**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7

**recūsō (1):** refuse, give a reason against, 5

**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum:** buy/take back 6

**removeō, -ere, -mōvī, -mōtus:** remove, 1

**retineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum:** to hold back, 3

**senectūs, -tūtis f.:** old age, 2

**supplicum, -ī n.:** punishment, supplication, 5

**ūtilis, -e:** useful, effective, 1

condition (sī fut., fut.) becomes sī + impf. subj. and fut. inf. in secondary sequence

**eō auctore:** *with him (being) the agent;* abl. abs.; since there is no npple for sum, the subject and predicate are placed in the abl.

44 **ut captīvus:** *as a captive;* ut introduces a clause of comparison

45 **nātōs:** *children;* ‘those born’ PPP nāscor  
ā sē: *from...*; abl. of separation

**rediit:** pf. redeō

46 **crūdellissimīs suppliciīs:** abl. means  
**necātus esse:** pf. pass. inf. following dīcitur

## 22a. Hannibal and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Carthāginiēnsēs post prīmū Pūnicū bellū imperium 1 opēsque in Hispaniā diligenter auxērunt. Dux huius operis Hamilcar erat, quī imperātor primō bellō fuerat atque indignābātur quod Carthāgō eō bellō Siciliam Sardiniamque āmīserat.

Hannibal, eius filius, annōs novem nātus, patre incitante, iūrāvit 5 sē semper hostem futūrum esse populī Rōmānī. Posteā in Hispaniam missus est. Tam similis patrī ōre vultūque erat ut mīlitēs Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum sibi esse crēderent. Ingenium autem erat ad rēs diversissimās, pārendūm atque imperandum, aptum. Nōn minus Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī, quī, interfectō 10

- āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** lose, let go, 6  
**aptus, -a, -um:** fitting, suitable, 1  
**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum:** increase, enrich, 6  
**aurum, -ī n.:** gold, 3  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** believe, trust, 7  
**diligēns, -entis:** diligent, careful, industrious 2  
**diversus, -a, -um:** different, contrary, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eō, īre, īī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**Hamilcar, -is m.:** Hamilcar, 3  
**Hasdrubal, -is m.:** Hasdrubal, 5  
**hic:** here, 1  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 4  
**incitō (1):** urge on, incite, 1  
**indignor, -ārī, indignātūm:** be offended, 3

- 1 **post...bellum:** after...; post + acc.  
 2 **opēs:** acc. pl. ops  
     auxērunt: pf. augēō  
     *huius operis:* objective gen. sg., hic opus  
 3 **primō bellō:** in...; abl. time when  
     *indignābātur:* impf. dep.  
 4 **quod...āmīserat:** because...; causal quod clause with ind. denoting a cause from the narrator's point of view; plpf. āmittō  
     *eō bellō:* in that...; abl. of time when, eō is a demonstrative adj., is, ea, id  
 5 **eiūs:** his; i.e. Hamilcar's, gen. sg.  
     *annōs novem:* nine years (ago); acc. of duration  
     *nātus:* PPP nascor  
     *patre incitante:* abl. abs. with pres. pple  
 6 **sē...futūrum esse:** that...; ind. disc. with fut. inf. sum

- ingenium, -ī n.:** intellect, talent; character, 5  
**iūrō (1):** to swear (an oath), 3  
**novem:** nine, 2  
**opera, -ae f.:** effort, exertion, work, 3  
**ops, opis f.:** power; pl. resources, influence, 6  
**pareō, -ēre, parūī:** to obey, submit, 1  
**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 4  
**Pūnicus, -a, -um:** Punic, 6  
**reddō -ere -didī -ditum:** give back, render 5  
**Sardinia, -ae f.:** Sardinia (island), 1  
**semper:** always, ever, forever, 3  
**Sicilia, -ae f.:** Sicily, 6  
**similis, simile:** similar to, like , 2  
**vultus, -ūs m.:** expression, face, 2

- 7 **patrī:** to...; dat. of special adj. similis  
     *ōre vultūque:* in...; abl. of respect; an example of hendiadys, using two terms to describe one object: 'expression on his face'  
     *ut...crēderet:* that...; result clause  
 8 **Hamilcarem...esse:** that Hamilcar was returned as a youth again for them;  
     iuvenem is a pred. acc. and redditum esse is pf. pass. inf. reddō; sibi is a dat. of interest  
 9 **ad...:** for...; expressing purpose  
     *pārendūm atque imperandum:* gerunds (-ing) in apposition to rēs, object of ad  
 10 **aptum:** neut. predicative nom. after erat  
     *minus:* less; comparative adv.  
     *Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī (carus erat):* (he was dear) to Hasdrubal...; dat. of reference and apposition, add 'carus erat' from l. 11  
     *interfectō Hamilcare:* abl. abs.

## 22b. Hannibal and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Hamilcare, eī successor fuit in Hispāniā, quam exercituī cārus erat. 11  
Neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam mīlitibus praeficere malēbat,  
neque mīlites aliō duce plūs cōfidēbant aut audēbant.

Hasdrubale interfectō, Hannibal, nātus annōs vīgintī septem imperātor creātus, cōnstituit Rōmānōs vincere, ut Carthāginem in 15 pristīnam auctōritātem restitueret. Prīmum obsidiōne urbem Saguntīnōrum cēpit, quī sociī Hispāniēnsēs Rōmānōrum erant. Deinde per montēs Pyrenaeōs atque Alpēs iter difficile in Italiam fēcit. Ibi Rōmānōs exercitūs superāvit ad Tīcīnum flūmen, ad Trebiam, ad Trasummenum lacum, in Āpuliā ad Cannas. In 20

- Alpēs, -ium f.: Alps, 1  
Āpūlia, -ae f.: Apulia, 2  
auctōritās, -tātis f.: authority, 4  
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum: to dare, venture, 5  
Cannae, ae f.: Cannae, 1  
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4  
confidō, -ere: trust, believe, rely upon, 1  
difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult, 2  
Hamilcar, -is m.: Hamilcar, 3  
Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5  
Hispāniēnsis, -is m.: Hispanic, of Hispania, 3  
lacus, -ī m.: lake, 3  
mālō , malle, maluī: prefer, 5  
obsidio, -iōnis f.: seige, blockade, 3

- 11 eī successor: *his successor*; eī is a dat. of possession and refers to Hamilcar  
quam: *just as*; (tam) quam; an adverbial conjunction introducing a clause of comparison  
exercitū: *to...;* dat. of reference with cārus, parallel to Hasdrubalī
- 12 alium quemquam: *someone else*; ‘anyone other;’ ‘else’ is an alternative to ‘other’  
militibus: *over...;* dat. of compound verb, as often, translate the prefix (here pree-) as a preposition and the dat. as the object
- 13 aliō duce: abl. abs., add the pple ‘being’
- 14 Hasdrubale interfectō: abl. abs.  
nātus: PPP nascor + acc. of duration, see 1.  
5 (p. 74) for translation

- plūs (1): more, 4  
praeficiō -ere -fēci: set or put in charge over 2  
pristinus, -a, -um: former, previous, earlier 1  
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um: of the Pyrenees, 1  
quisquam, quidquam: any one, any body, 2  
Saguntīnī, -ōrum m.: Saguntinians, of Saguntum (a city in Hispania), 1  
septem: seven, 4  
socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7  
successor, -ōris m.: follower, sucessor, 3  
Tīcīnus, -ī m.: Ticinus (river), 2  
Trasumennus, -a, -um: of Trasimene, 2  
Trebia, -ae, f.: Trebia (town) or (river), 1  
vīgintī: twenty, 6

- 14 vīgintī (et) septem: indeclinable with annōs
- 15 imperātor: nom. pred. of creātus, which in turn is a PPP modifying Hannibal  
Rōmānōs vincere: *that...; ind. disc.*  
ut...resitueret: *so that...might; purpose*
- 16 prīmum: *first (of all); adverbial acc.*  
obsidiōne: abl. means
- 19 exercitūs: acc. pl. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun  
ad...ad...ad: *near...(and) near...; or “at;”*  
these are separate battles in separate places, supply the conjunction “et;” Hannibal killed or captured approximately 20,000+ Romans and allies at Trebia River, 15,000+ at Lake Trasimene, 30,000+ at Cannae.

## 22c. Hannibal and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Āpūliam vēnerat eō cōnsiliō, ut spē libertatis sociōs Rōmānōrum sollicitāret. Quīdam ex sociis amīcitiam Hannibalis secūtī sunt, sed multī in fidē Rōmānōrum mānsērunt. Cum optimī ducēs Rōmānī adversus Hannibalem mitterentur, numquam tamen eum dēvincere potuērunt. Sēdecim annōs in Italiā neque victor neque victus mānsit.

amīcitia, -ae, f.: friendship, 5

Āpūlia, -ae f.: Apulia (a region of Italy) 2

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī: to conquer, overcome, 2

eō, īre, ī , itūrus: go, 2

fidēs, eī f.: faith, trust, 7

libertās, -tātis f.: freedom, liberation, 2

maneō, -ēre, mansī: to stay, wait, wait for, 7

numquam: never, 3

sēdecim: sixteen, 1

socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7

sollicitō (1): to worry, agitate, stir up, 1

21 **in Āpūliam**: a region in the southeast region of Italy (i.e. the heel of the boot)

21 **eō cōnsiliō**: *with this purpose, with this plan*; abl. of manner with demonstrative adj.

**ut...sollicitāret**: *(namely) so that...; a*

*purpose clause in apposition to eō cōnsiliō*

**spē**: abl. means or cause, 5<sup>th</sup> decl. spēs

22 **quīdam**: *certain ones*; a substantive

23 **multī**: *many (allies)*; another substantive

**cum...tamen**: *although...nevertheless*; a cum clause followed by tamen in the main clause is very often concessive in sense

25 **potuērunt**: pf. possum

**sēdecim annōs**: *for...; acc. of duration*

**neque victor neque victus**: *neither...nor...*

*predicative nom., PPP vincō*

## 23a. Quintus Fabius Maximus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Postquam Rōmānī clādem ad Trasumennum lacum accēpērunt, 1  
Q. Fabius Maximus dīctātōr creātus est, et M. Minūcius Rūfus  
magister equitum. Cōnsilium erat Fabiī nūllō locō cum hoste  
dēcertāre, sed finēs Rōmānōrum sōciōrumque intuērī et levibus  
proeliīs mīlitum fortitūdinem augērē. Hannibal, hōc cōnsiliō 5  
turbātus, dictātōrem invidiā onerāre cōnstituit. Itaque cum ager  
Fabiī eī monstrātus esset, omnibus agrīs circā vastātīs, ūnī agrō  
dictātōris pepercit. At Fabius, missō Rōmam Quintō fīliō, agrum  
vēndidit pecūniāque redāctā captīvōs Rōmānōs redēmit.

Ratiō Fabiāna bellī gerendī, propter quam Fabiō cognōmen 10  
Cūnctātōr datum est, Rōmānīs grāta nōn erat. Cum Minūcius,

**augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum:** increase, enrich, 6  
**circā:** about, around, 4  
**clādes, -is f.:** disaster, destruction, loss, 1  
**cognōmen, -minis n.:** cognomen, nickname, 6  
**Cūnctātōr, -is m.:** Cunctator , 1  
**dēcertō (1):** fight to the finish or decisively, 1  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eques, equitīs m.:** horseman, rider, 6  
**Fabiānus, -a, -um:** of Fabius, 1  
**finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 3  
**fortitūdō, -dīnis f.:** strength, courage, 1  
**grātus, -a, -um:** pleasing, grateful, 4  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum:** look over, 2  
**invidia, -ae f.:** hatred, ill-will, unpopularity, 1  
**lacūs, -i m.:** lake, 3  
**levis, -e:** light; light-armored, 1  
**locō (1):** to put, place, 2

**M.:** Marcus, 5  
**magister, -rī m.:** Master; helmsman, teacher 6  
**Minūcius, -ī m.:** Minucius, 3  
**monstrō (1):** to point out, show, 1  
**onerō (1):** to load, burden, weight down, 1  
**parcō, -ere, pepercī:** spare, refrain (dat.) 3  
**postquam:** after, when, 6  
**Q.:** Quintus, 2  
**Quintus, -ī m.:** Quintus, 1  
**ratiō, ratiōnis, f.:** account, way, method, 1  
**redigō -ere -ēgī -actum:** drive/bring back, 3  
**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum:** buy/take back 6  
**Rūfus, -a, -um:** Rufus, 1  
**socius, -īi m.:** comrade, companion; ally, 7  
**Trasumennus, -a, -um:** of Trasimene, 2  
**turbō (1):** to confuse, disturb, confuse, 3  
**vāstō (1):** lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3  
**vendō, -ere, vendidī:** to sell, 1

- 1 **Postquam...accēpērunt:** after...received, temporal clause
- 2 **dictātōr:** predicative nom. after pf. pass. creō; a dictatorship is an tradition office lasting only six months in an emergency
- 3 **magister equitum:** *Master of the Horse;* second-in-command to the dictator
- 4 **nūllō locō:** abl. place where
- 5 **intuērī:** pres. dep. inf. intueor
- 6 **levibus proeliīs:** with...; abl. of means
- 7 **invidiā:** abl. means
- 8 **cum...monstrātus esset:** when...; cum clause with plpf. pass. subj., translate in the

- same tense
- 7 **eī:** to him; i.e. to Hannibal, dat. ind. obj.
- 8 **omnibus...vastātīs:** abl. abs.
- 9 **ūnī agrō:** one farm; dat. obj. of pf. parcō ūnus, a pronomial adj. has –ius in the gen. and –ī in the dat.
- 10 **missō...fīliō:** abl. abs., PPP mittō
- 11 **Rōmam:** acc. place to which
- 9 **pecūniāque redāctā:** abl. abs.
- 10 **bellī gerendī:** of...; perform a gerundive-gerund flip and translate this gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + acc.
- 11 **propter quam:** on account of which...
- 11 **Rōmānīs:** to the Romans; dat. reference

## 23b. Quintus Fabius Maximus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

absente dictātōre, aliquantum victōriæ forte adeptus esset, lēx lāta 12  
 est ut iūs magistrī equitum et dictātōris aequārētur. Iniūriam tamen  
 Fabius aequō animō tulit, satis fidēns haudquāquam cum imperiī  
 iūre artem imperandī aequātam esse. Legiōnēs inter dictātōrem et 15  
 magistrum dīvīsae sunt. Dēnique Minucius, temere proeliō  
 commissō, ā Fabiō servātus est. Tum sub imperium dictātōris rediit  
 legiōnēsque restituit et Fabium patrem appellāvit. Rōmae, ut est  
 perlāta fama eius reī, omnēs Maximum laudibus ad caelum  
 ferēbant. Multīs post annīs, allīs rēbus interim gestīs, Fabius 20  
 mortuus est.

---

**absum, -esse, āfui:** to be away, be absent, 5  
**adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum:** obtain, overtake 1  
**aequō (1):** make equal, make level, 2  
**aliquantus, -a, -um:** some, considerable, 1  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 7  
**caelum, -i n.:** sky, 1  
**committō, -ere, -misi:** commit; begin, 3  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**dīvidō, -ere, -visi, -visum:** divide, separate, 7  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 6  
**fama, -ae f.:** fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7  
**fidō, -ere:** to trust, confide, rely upon, 1

12 **absente dictātōre:** abl. abs.; pres. pple.  
 absum  
**aliquantum victōriæ:** *some victory;* ‘some amount of victory,’ an appositional gen.  
**forte:** by chance; abl. as adverb, from fors  
**adeptus esset:** plpf. dep. subj. adipiscor  
 in a cum clause  
**lāta est:** *was proposed;* ‘was brought (up)’  
 pf. pass. ferō; ferre and referre legem is an i  
 idiom for proposing a law  
 13 **ut...aequārētur:** (*namely*) that...; ind.  
 command in apposition to lēx  
**iūs:** *legal right, legal authority*  
 14 **aequō animō:** *with a level head;* abl. of  
 manner  
**tulit:** *endured;* pf. ferō  
**satis:** *sufficiently;* adv.  
**haudquāquam...aequātam esse:** that...;

**haudquāquam:** by no means whatsoever, 1  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 4  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 5  
**interim:** meanwhile, in the meantime, 4  
**laus, laudis f.:** praise, glory, merit, 4  
**legio, legiōnis f.:** legion, 2  
**magister, -rī m.:** Master; helmsman, teacher 6  
**Minucius, -i m.:** Minucius, 3  
**perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latus:** carry, endure, 4  
**satis:** enough, 5  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 7  
**temere:** heedlessly, rashly, blindly, 1

ind. disc., artem is acc. subj. with pf. pass.  
 inf. aequō, all governed by pres pple fidō  
**imperandi:** of...; gen. sg. gerund (-ing)  
 16 **temere...commissō:** abl. abs., committere  
 proelium is an idiom: ‘to commence battle’  
 17 **ā Fabiō:** by...; abl. agent  
**redit:** pf. redeō  
 18 **appellāvit:** governing a double acc.  
**Rōmae:** at...; locative, place where  
**ut...:** as...; a clause of comparison  
 19 **perlāta est:** pf. pass. perferō  
**eius reī:** of this account  
**Maximum:** i.e. Fabius  
**laudibus:** abl. means  
 20 **multīs post annīs:** many years later; ‘later  
 by many years,’ abl. of degree of difference  
**allīs...gestīs:** abl. abs.  
 21 **mortuus est:** pf. dep. morior

## 24a. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

P. Cornēlius Scipiō filius erat cōsulīs quī exercituī Rōmānō in 1 proeliō ad Tīcīnum flūmen praefuerat. Fāma est patrem, cum, in eō proeliō vulnerātus, ab hostibus circumvenīrētur, ā filiō septendecim nātō annōs servātum esse.

Posteā cum aedīlītātem peteret, tribūnī plēbis resistēbant, quod 5 nōndum ad petendum lēgitima aetās esset. Tum Scīpiō, “Sī mē,” inquit, “omnēs Quirītēs aedīlēm facere volunt, satis annōrum habeō.” Aedīlis magnō favōre populī, nūllō tribunō resistente, creātus est. 9

**aedīlis, -is m.:** aedile (city manager), 3

**aedīlītās, -tātīs f.:** aedileship, 1

**aetās, aetātīs f.:** age, lifetime, time, 7

**circumvenīō, -ire, -vēnī:** to surround, 1

**Cornēlius, -ī m.:** Cornelius, 3

**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**eō, īre, ī, itūrus:** go, 2

**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7

**favor, favōris m., (1):** good-will, favor, 3

**lēgitimus, -a, -um:** lawful, legal, 1

**nōndum:** not yet, 3

**P.:** Publius, 3

**praesum, -esse, -fui:** be over, preside over, 2

**Quirītēs, -iūm m.:** Quirites (Romans), 2

**resistō, -ere, -stītū:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7

**satis:** enough, 5

**septendecim:** seventeen, 1

**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 7

**Tīcīnus, -ī m.:** Ticinus river, 2

**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

1 **cōsulīs:** of a consul; with pred. filius  
**exercituī Rōmānō:** over...; dat. of compound verb; make the prefix (prae-) into a preposition and the dat. into the obj.

2 **praefuerat:** plpf. prae-sum

**Fama est:** there is a rumor that...

**patrem...servātūm esse:** that...; acc. + inf. clause is the true subject of est above; pf. pass. inf. servō

**cum...circumvenīrētur:** when he...; the understood subject is the pater

3 **vulnerātūs:** PPP vulnerō, modifying the missing subject ‘he’

**septendecim annōs:** 17 years ago; acc. of duration

**nātō:** PPP nascor modifying filiō

5 **cum...peteret:** when...; i.e. campaigning for political office

**tribūnī plēbis:** tribunes of the plebs:

Roman officials; nom. pl., the subject

**quod...esest:** because...; ‘on the grounds that...’ quod + subj. suggests an alleged cause from a character’s point of view: ‘because (as they claim)...?’; impf. subj. sum, translate as impf. indicative

6 **ad petendum:** for...; a gerund (-ing), ad + acc. expresses purpose

6 **Sī...volunt,...habeō:** a simple pres. condition (sī pres., pres.)

7 **inquit:** says; used to indicate direct disc. **facere:** make (x) (y); governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)

**satis annōrum:** acc. obj. and partitive gen.

8 **Aedīlis:** predicative nom.

**magnō favōre:** abl. means

**populī:** subjective gen. sg.

**nūllō...resistente:** abl. abs.

## 24b. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Multīs post annīs pater Scīpiōnis et patruus, quī bellum in 10 Hispāniā gesserant, intrā diēs trīgintā cecidērunt. Comitiīs ēdictīs ad imperātōrem creandum omnēs seniōrēs imperium Hispāniēnse accipere nolēbant; tum subitō P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quattuor et vigintī annōs nātus, professus est sē petere et in superiōre locō unde cōnspicī posset, cōnstituit. Deinde ad ūnum omnēs P. Scīpiōnī 15 imperium esse in Hispāniā iussērunt. Posteā tamen cīvēs ob aetātem imperātōris novī dubitāre incipiēbant num rectē fēcissent. Scīpiō, hōc animadversō, cōntiōnem habuit et tam grāviter disseruit ut animōs rūrsus excitāret omnēsque certā spē implēret.

- aetās, aetātis f.: age, lifetime, time, 7  
 animadvertō, -ere, -vertī: notice; punish, 4  
 cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum: to fall, 4  
 certus, -a, -um: certain, reliable, sure, 6  
 comitium, -ī n.: meeting, assembly, 4  
 conspiciō, -ere, spexi, spectus: see, behold, 1  
 constō, -stāre, -stītī: stand firm; is agreed, 5  
 cōntiō, cōntiōnis f.: meeting, assembly, 1  
 Cornēlius, -ī m.: Cornelius, 3  
 disserō, -ere, -sēvī: to discuss, speak, 1  
 dubitō (1): waver, hesitate, be in doubt, 1  
 ēdicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum: proclaim, 1  
 edō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
 excitō (1): to rouse, stir up; awaken, 6  
 hīc: here, 1  
 Hispāniēnsis, -is m.: Hispanic, of Hispania, 3  
 impleō, -ere, -ēvī, implētum: to fill , 3  
 incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5

- 10 multīs post annīs: many years later; ‘later by many years,’ abl. of degree of difference  
 11 cecidērunt: pf. cadō  
 comitiīs ēdictīs: abl. abs.  
 31 ad...creandum: for...; perform a gerund-gerundive flip. Translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.  
 12 seniōrēs: older men; comparative  
 13 quattuor...annōs: ... (ago); acc. of duration  
 14 nātus: PPP nascor  
 professus est: pf. dep. profiteor  
 sē petere: that...; ind. disc., i.e. he is campaigning for (seeking) the office  
 15 unde...posset: from where he would...;

- intrā: within, inside (acc.), 2  
 locō (1): to put, place, 2  
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī: not...wish, be unwilling, 4  
 num: surely...not?; whether, 1  
 ob: on account of , 5  
 P.: Publius, 3  
 patruus, -a, -um: uncle, paternal uncle, 1  
 profiteor, -ērī, professus sum: declare, 2  
 quattuor: four, 5  
 rectē: rightly, justly, 1  
 rūrsus: again, backward, back, 2  
 senex, senis m.: old man, 2  
 subitō: immediately, straightforward, 3  
 superus, -a, -um: upper, higher, above, 3  
 trīginta: thirty, 3  
 unde: whence, from which source, 3  
 vigintī: twenty, 6

- a relative clause of purpose with impf. subj. possum and pass. inf.  
 cōnstituit: he stood; or ‘he stopped’  
 ad ūnum: to the man; qualifying omnēs  
 P. Scīpiōnī...esse: that Scipio has...; ind. disc.; dat. of possession + esse can often be translated as subject + verb ‘have’  
 17 num...fēcissent: whether...; ind. question with plpf. subj. faciō  
 18 hōc animadversō: abl. abs.  
 graviter: adv. from 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. grāvis, -e  
 19 ut...excitāret...implēret: that...; result clause with impf. subj.  
 certā spē: abl. means

## 24c. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Quīnque annōs in Hispaniā bellum adversus Carthāginiēnsēs 20  
 continuō cursū victōriārum gessit. Exercitūs hostium ex Hispāniā  
 expulit et amīcitiās gentium Hispāniēnsium sibi conciliāvit. Multa  
 narrantur dē Scipiōnis mānsuētūdine in miserōs et dē cōmitātē in  
 hostēs ac barbarōs. Virginem Hispānam, captam Carthāgine Novā,  
 quae Alluciō, prīncipī Celtibērōrum, dēspōnsa erat, spōnsō trādidit. 25  
 Magnum quoque aurī pondus, quod virginis parentēs ad  
 redimendam filiam attulērunt, spōnsō dedit. Allucius, ut  
 beneficium remūnerāretur, domum profectus ad Scipiōnēm cum  
 delēctīs mille et quadrīgentīs equitibus revertit. Massīvam

---

- afferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latum:** to bring , 2  
**Allucius, -ī m.:** Allucius, 2  
**amīcitia, -ae, f.:** friendship, alliance, 5  
**aurum, -ī n.:** gold, 3  
**barbarus, -a, -um:** barbarian, foreigner, 1  
**beneficium, -ī n.:** favor, benefit, kindness, 1  
**Celtibērī, -ōrum m.:** Celts (people) 1  
**comitās, -tatis f.:** friendliness, kindness, 4  
**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous, successive, 3  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 6  
**dēdō, -ere:** to give over, surrender, 7  
**dēlīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum:** choose, select, 3  
**dēspōndō, -ere, -spondī:** to betroth, 3  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 6  
**expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum:** to drive out, 1  
**Hispāniēnsis, -is m.:** Hispanic, of Hispania, 3

- 20 **Quīnque annōs:** for...; acc. of duration  
 21 **continuō cursū:** abl. of manners  
     gessit...conciliāvit: Hannibal is subject  
     exercitūs: acc. pl. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun  
     hostium: gen. pl. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem noun  
     gentium Hispāniēnsium: gen. pl.  
 22 **sibi:** for himself  
     *Multa:* many things; substantive  
 23 **in miserōs:** toward...  
     in hostēs ac barbarōs: toward...  
 24 **captam:** PPP capiō modifying fem. sg.  
     virginem  
     *Carthāgine Novā:* in...; locative, place  
     where; a colony in Spain  
 25 **Alluciō:** to Allucius; dat. ind. obj  
     prīncipi: dat. apposition  
     *Celtibērī:* i.e. Gauls inhabiting the Iberian

- Hispānus, -a, -um:** Hispanic, of Hispania, 1  
**mansuētūdo, -inis f.:** clemency, mildness, 1  
**Massīva, -ae m.:** Massiva (a person) 1  
**mille (1):** thousand, 6  
**miser, misera, miserum:** sad, gloomy, 2  
**narrō (1):** to relate, tell, narrate, 2  
**parens, -rentis m.:** parent, ancestor, 4  
**pondus, ponderis n.:** weight, 6  
**quadrigentī, -ae, -a:** four hundred, 1  
**quīnque:** five, 4  
**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum:** buy/take back 6  
**remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum:** pay back, 1  
**revertō, -ere, reversī:** turn back, return, 4  
**spōnsus, -ī m.:** betrothed man, bridegroom, 2  
**trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditum:** hand over, give, 7

- peninsula (modern Spain)  
**spōnsō:** dat. ind. obj.  
**trādītī:** pf. trādō  
 26 **aurī:** gen. of apposition following pondus  
     *quod...attulērunt:* which...; relative  
     clause, 3p pf. afferō  
     **ad redimendam filiam:** for...; expressing  
     purpose; perform a gerund-gerundive flip  
     and translate this noun + gerundive as a  
     gerund (-ing) + acc.  
 27 **ut...remūnerārētur:** so that...might;  
     purpose; impf. pass. subj.  
     *domum:* to...; acc. place to which  
 28 **profectus:** pf. dep. pple proficīscor, as  
     often, translate as 'having Xed'  
 29 **delēctīs:** PPP dēlīgo modifies equitibus  
     *mille et quadrīgentīs:* 1,400

## 24d. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

adulescentem, captīvum Āfrum, restituit avunculō Masinissae 30  
Numidārum rēgī, quī cum equitātū subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus  
vēnerat.

Scīpiō, receptā Hispaniā, gloriam cōnficiendī bellī spectāre  
coepit. Cōnstituit prius conciliāre rēgēs Āfrōs, Syphācem et  
Masinissam, quī sociī Carthāginiēnsium erant. Syphāx colloquium 35  
cum duce Rōmānō postulāvit. Scīpiō ab Carthāgine Novā  
profectus forte invectus est in rēgium portum eō ipsō tempore quō  
Hasdrubal, dux Carthāginiēnsis, quī Hispāniā pulsus erat. Rōmānus  
et Carthāginiēnsis, quamquam hostēs erant, ā Syphāce in hospitium

---

Āfrus, -a, -um: African, 2

avunculus, -i m.: uncle, mother's brother, 1

colloquium, -ī n.: conversation, conference, 4

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5

eō, īre, ī , itūrus: go, 2

equitātus, -ūs m.: cavalry, 1

glōria, -ae, f.: glory, fame, 3

Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5

hospitium, ī n.: hospitality; banquet, 2

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum: convey, ride in 3

Masinissa, -ae m.: Masinissa, Numidia king 4

Numida, -ae m.: Numidian; a nomad; 2

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum: drive, beat, 6

portus, -ūs m.: harbor, part, 1

postulō (1): demand, claim, request, ask, 5

prior, prius: before, earlier , 5

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum: accept, take, 4

rēgius, -a, -um: royal, of the king or queen, 6

socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7

spectō (1): to watch, look at, 2

subsidiū, -ī n.: assistance, reinforcement, 1

Syphāx, Syphācis m.: Syphax, 6

30 restituit: he restored; i.e. released

avunculō: back to (his)...; dat. of interest

Masinissae...rēgī: dat. in apposition

31 subsidiō Carthāginiēnsibus: as assistance  
for the Carthaginians; a double dative (dat.  
of purpose and dat. of interest)

33 receptā Hispaniā: abl. abs., PPP recipiō  
cōnficiendī belli: of...; perform a gerund-  
gerundive flip and translate the noun +  
gerundive as gerund (-ing) + acc. obj.

34 cōnstituit: he decided

prius: first; lit. 'earlier,' comparative adv.

35 Carthāginiēnsium: gen. pl.

37 profectus: pf. dep. pple profic̄scor, as

often, translate as 'having Xed'

forte: by chance; abl. as adverb; fors

invectus est: pf. dep. invehor

eō ipsō tempore: at this...; abl. time

when, eō is a demonstrative adj.

quō (tempore): at which (time)...;

relative pronoun, abl. of time when

38 Hispāniā: from...; abl. of separation

pulsus erat: plpf. pass. pellō

39 ā Syphāce: by...; abl. of agent

in hospitium: to a banquet

## 24e. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

invītātī eōdem lectō accubuērunt. Tanta autem inerat comitās 40  
Scīpiōnī ut Hasdrubal nōn minus quam Syphāx Rōmānum  
admirārētur. Scīpiō cum Syphāce foedere factō Novam  
Carthāginem rediit.

Posteā iter longum per Hispāniam fēcit, ut cum Masinissā 45  
quoque colloquerētur, quem comitāte atque maiestāte facile  
conciliāvit. Numida grātiās ēgit quod Scīpiō frātris filium  
remīsisset dīxitque sē velle in fidē atque amīcitiā populī Rōmānī  
esse; Rōmānōs, sī Scīpiōnem ducem in Āfricam mitterent, brevī  
tempore Carthāginem captūrōs esse. Scipio, fidē datā acceptāque,  
in castra rediit atque mox Rōmam profectus est. 50

- accumbō, -ere, accubū: to recline 1  
admīror, -ārī, admīratūs: admire, wonder, 4  
amīcitia, -ae, f.: friendship, 5  
brevis, -e: short, brief, 5  
colloquor, -quī, -locūtūm: to converse, 1  
comitās, -tatis f.: friendliness, kindness, 4  
ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
facilis, -e: easy, 4  
fidēs, ei f.: faith, trust, 7  
foedus, -eris n.: treaty, alliance, 5  
grātia, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks, 3  
Hasdrubal, -is m.: Hasdrubal, 5

- 40 **invītātī**: PPP invītō with both subjects  
eōdem lectō: on...; abl. of time where  
**accubuērunt**: referring to the practice  
of lying down and dining  
41 **Scīpiōnī**: in...; dat. of compound verb;  
treat the prefix (in-) as a preposition and  
employ the dat. as an object  
**ut...admirārētur**: that...; result clause  
with impf. dep. subj. admīror governing an  
acc. obj.  
**nōn minus**: no less; comparative adv.  
42 **foedere factō**: abl. abs., PPP faciō  
43 **Novam Carthāginem**: place to which  
rediit: pf. redeō  
44 **ut...colloquerētur**: so that...might...;  
purpose with impf. dep. subj.  
45 **quem...conciliāvit**: whom...; relative, the  
antecedent is Masinissa  
**comitāte atque maiestāte**: abl. means  
**facile**: easily; adv.

- insum, -esse, -fuī: to be in, 2  
invītō (1): to invite, summon, 2  
lectus, -ī m.: couch, bed, 2  
longus -a, -um: long, 2  
maiestās, -tatis f.: splendor, dignity, honor, 1  
Masinissa, -ae f.: Masinissa, 4  
mox: soon, 4  
Numida, -ae m.: a nomad; Numidian, 2  
parvus, -a, -um: small, 4  
remittō -ere -mīsī -missum: to send back, 3  
Syphāx, Syphācis m.: Syphax, 6

- 46 **Numida**: the Numidian; i.e. Masinissa  
**grātiās ēgit**: pf. agō; agō grātiās is an  
idiom for 'I give thanks'  
**quod...remīsisset**: because...; causal  
quod clause with plpf. subj. for alleged  
cause  
47 **sē velle...esse**: that...; ind. disc. with inf.  
volō and sum  
48 **Rōmānōs...captūrōs esse**: that...; ind.  
disc. with pf. pass. inf. capiō  
**sī...mitterent...captūrōs esse**: if...sent...  
would...; in a fut. more vivid condition (sī  
fut., fut.) in ind. disc. the apodosis becomes  
a fut. inf. and the protasis becomes impf.  
subj.  
**ducem**: as leader; acc. apposition  
**brevī tempore**: in...; abl. of time when  
49 **Carthāginem**: the Carthaginian  
**fidē...acceptā**: abl. abs.  
50 **profectus est**: pf. dep. proficīscor

## 24f. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Cum ibi consul ingentī favōre factus esset, Sicilia eī prōvincia 51  
 dēcrēta est permissumque ut in Āfricam trānsīret. Dum in Siciliā  
 bellum parat, Rōmam ab inīmicīs eius nūntiātum est imperātōrem  
 exercitumque Syrācūsārum amoenitāte licentiāque corrumpī. 55  
 Lēgātīs ā senātū Syrācūsās ad haec cognōscenda missīs, Scīpiō  
 mīlitēs in terrā dēcurrentēs, classem in portū simulācrum nāvālis  
 pugnae ēdentem, armāmentāria, horrea, bellī alium apparātum  
 ostendit; tantaque admīrātiō lēgātōs cēpit ut satis crēderent aut illō  
 duce atque exercitū vincī Carthāginiēnsēs aut nūllō aliō posse.  
 Senātus igitur cēnsuit ut Scīpiō quam prīmum in Āfricam trānsīret. 60

**admīrātiō, -nis f.:** admiration, astonishment, 3  
**amoenitās, -tatis f.:** pleasantness, 1  
**apparātus, -ūs m.:** equipment, tool, 1  
**armāmentārium, -ī n.:** armory, arsenal, 1  
**cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī:** to judge, estimate, 1  
**classis, -is f.:** fleet, 4  
**cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum:** learn, know, 4  
**corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum:** ruin, 4  
**crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** believe, trust, 7  
**dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum:** decide, decree, 5  
**dēcurrō, -ere, -currūrī:** to run down, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, display, 5  
**exerceō, -ere, -uī, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**favor, favōris m., (1):** good-will, favor, 3  
**hīc:** here, 1

51 **cum...factus esset:** when he...; cum clause with plpf. pass. subj.; consul is a predicative nom.  
**ingentī favōre:** with...; abl. of manner  
 eī: to him; dat. ind. obj., is, ea, id  
 52 **dēcrēta est:** i.e. by the Senate  
**permissumque (est):** and it was permitted (for him); impersonal pf. pass. permittō  
 ut...trānsīret: that...; ind. command  
 53 **eius:** gen. sg. is, ea, id  
**nūntiātum est:** it was...; impersonal pf. pass. nūnitō  
**imperātōrem...corrumpī:** that...; ind. disc. with pres. pass. inf.  
 54 **amoenitāte licentiāque:** by...; abl. of means  
 55 **Lēgātīs...missīs:** abl. abs., PPP mittō  
**Syrācūsās:** to...; acc. place to which; the name of the city Syracuse is plural in form

**horreum, -ī n.:** granary, storehouse, barn, 1  
**inīmicūs, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 6  
**licentia, -ae f.:** license, freedom, 2  
**nāvālis, -e:** naval, nautical, of a ship, 2  
**nūntiō (1):** announce, report, 7  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 7  
**permittō -ere -mīsī -missum:** send through, 3  
**portus, -ūs m.:** harbor, part, 1  
**prōvinicia, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**satis:** enough, 5  
**Sicilia, -ae f.:** Sicily, 6  
**simulācrum, -ī n.:** likeness, image, 1  
**Syrācūsae, -ārum f.:** Syracuse (city), 2  
**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 7  
**vincō, -ire, vīnxī, vīnctus:** bind, tie, 1

**ad haec cognōscenda:** for...; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.  
**Scīpiō...ostendi:** the main verb is in line 58  
 56 **dēcurrentēs:** drilling; pres. pple  
**nāvālis pugnae:** objective gen.  
 57 **ēdētentēs:** presenting; pres. pple modifying classem  
 58 **ut...crēderet:** that...; result clause with impf. subj.  
**satis:** sufficiently  
**aut...posse:** that the Carthaginians were able...; ind. disc., Carthāginiēnsēs is acc. subject  
**aut...aut:** either...or...  
**illō duce...exercitū:** by...; abl. of agent  
 59 **vincī:** pass. inf. governed by posse  
 60 **ut...trānsīret:** that...; ind. command  
**quam prīmum:** as soon as possible

## 24g. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Scipiōnī in Āfricam advenientī Masinissa sē coniūnxit cum 61 parvā manū equitum. Syphāx, quī ā Rōmānīs ad Poenōs dēfēcerat, captus est Rōmamque missus. Dēnique Carthāginiēnsēs, salūte desperatā ob multās victōriās Scipiōnis, Hannibalem ex Italiā revocāvērunt. 65

Frendēns gemēnsque ac vix ā lacrimīs temperāns dīcitur lēgātōrum verba audīsse. Respexit saepe Italiae lītora, sē accusāns quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsī pugnā Rōmam dūxisset. Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ab Carthāgine abest. Inde praemissī speculātōrēs exceptī sunt ab 70 custōdibus Rōmānīs et ad Scipiōnēm dēductī. Ille autem iussit eōs per castra circumdūcī et ad Hannibalem dīmīsit.

**absum, -esse, āfuī:** to be away, be absent, 5  
**accūsō (1):** to accuse, blame, reprimand, 3  
**adveniō, -ire, -vēnī:** to come to, approach, 4  
**Cannēnsis, -e:** of Cannae, 1  
**circumdūcō, -ere, -dūxi:** to lead around, 1  
**coniungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum:** join, 2  
**custōs, custōdis m.:** guard, doorkeeper, 3  
**dēdūcō, -ere:** to lead away, 1  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** fail; defect, 3  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**dēspērō (1):** to despair, feel no hope, 3  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** dismiss, let go 5  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 6  
**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take out, receive, 5  
**exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**frendō, -ere, -uī:** gnash teeth; grind, bruise, 1  
**gemō, -ere, -uī:** sigh, groan; lament, 1

- 61 **Scipiōnī:** with...; dat. of compound verb  
**advenientī:** dat. sg. pres. pple  
62 **manū:** group  
63 **Rōmam:** place to which  
**missus (est):** 3s pf. pass., add est  
**salūte desperatā:** abl. abs.  
64 **Frendēns gemēnsque:** while...; nom. sg.  
 pres. pples, the subject is Hannibal  
**ā lacrimīs:** from...; abl. of separation  
**temperāns:** pres. pple  
65 **lēgātō-ōrum:** gen. pl.

**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 2  
**lītus, lītoris n.:** shore, beach, strand, 1  
**manus, -ūs f.:** hand; group 7  
**Masinissa, -ae f.:** Masinissa, 4  
**ob:** on account of , 5  
**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 4  
**Poenus, -a, -um:** Carthaginian (Phoenician), 7  
**praemittō, -ere:** send forward, send ahead, 2  
**quīnque:** five, 4  
**respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum:** look back, 3  
**revocō (1):** call back, summon back, revoke, 3  
**saepe:** often, 3

**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 4  
**speculātōr, -ōris m.:** scout, explorer, spy, 1  
**statim:** immediately, on the spot, at once, 5  
**Syphāx, Syphācis m.:** Syphax, 6  
**temperō (1):** refrain from, keep from, 1  
**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4  
**Zama, -ae f.:** Zama, 1

- audī(vi)sse:** pf. inf. audiō  
**respexit:** looked back at...; Hannibal left Italy to return to Carthage  
**accusāns:** pres. pple, Hannibal is subject  
68 **quod...dūxisset:** because...; quod + plpf. subj. for alleged cause (character's view)  
**victōrem:** as victor; in apposition to exercitum  
69 **Quae urbs:** which city...; relative adj.  
**quīnque diērum:** of....; gen. description  
**ēos...circumdūcī:** that...; ind. disc., pass.

## 24h. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

Deinde, quaerente colloquium Hannibale, diēs locusque 73  
cōnstituitur. Itaque congressī sunt duo maximī suaē aetātis ducēs.  
Paulīsper tacuērunt admīratiōne mūtuā dēfīxī. Cum vērō dē 75  
condiciōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad suōs sē  
recēpērunt renūntiantēs armīs dēcernendum esse. Commissō  
deinde proeliō, Hannibal, victus, cum paucīs equitibus fūgit.

Pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est eīs condiciōnibus quae Rōmānōs  
suaē partis orbis terrārum dominōs facerent. Pāce terrā marique 80  
partā, Scīpio, exercitū in nāvēs impositō, Rōmam profectus est.  
Per Italiam laetam pāce nōn minus quam victōriā iter fēcit. Nōn

**admīratiō, -nis f.:** admiration, astonishment, 3  
**aetās, aetātis f.:** age, lifetime, time, 7  
**colloquium, -ī n.:** conversation, conference, 4  
**committō, -ere, -mīsī:** commit; begin, 3  
**condicō, -ciōnis f.:** arrangement, state, 3  
**congreḍior, -ī, -gressus sum:** gather, 1  
**conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus:** come together, 6  
**dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum:** decide, judge, 5  
**dēfigō, -ere, -fixī, -fictum:** fix, fasten down 1  
**domīnus, -ī m.:** master, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eques, equitis m.:** horseman, rider, 6  
**exerceō, -ere, -ui, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**impōnō, -ere, -posuī:** to place upon, impose 2

73 **quaerente Hannibale:** abl. abs., pres. pple  
diēs: time  
74 **congressī sunt:** pf. dep. congreḍior  
suae aestātis: gen. of description; i.e. of  
their generation  
75 **admīratiōne mūtuā:** with...; manner  
dēfīxī: PPP, nom. pl.  
vērō: indeedi; adl. as adverb, vērus  
76 **convēnisset:** it had been agreed; i.e. they  
had agreed; impersonal plpf. subj.  
**ad suōs (milites):** supply noun  
**sē recēpērunt:** sē recipere is a common  
idiom for ‘retreated’ or ‘returned’  
77 **renūntiantēs:** pres. pple  
**armīs dēcernendum esse:** that it must...;  
ind. disc., lit. ‘it is (going) to be decided...’  
an impersonal passive periphrastic  
(gerundive + esse) expressing necessity  
**commissō proeliō:** abl. abs., in this idiom  
committere often means ‘commence’

**laetus, -a, -um:** happy, joyful, glad, 4  
**mare, maris n.:** sea, 6  
**mūtuus, -a, -um:** mutual, reciprocal, 1  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.:** ship, boat, 2  
**orbis, -is m.:** sphere, orb, 2  
**pariō, -ire, peperi, partum:** produce, create 1  
**parvus, -a, -um:** small, 4  
**paulisper:** a little while, a little, somewhat, 2  
**quaerō, -ere, quaesiō, quaesitum:** to seek,  
ask, inquire, 6  
**recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** accept, take, 4  
**renuntiō, (1):** bring back word, report, 2  
**taceō, -ere, -ui, -itum:** be silent, say nothing 2  
**terra, -ae f.:** land, earth, 7

78 **victus:** PPP vincō  
79 **eīs condiciōnibus:** with...; abl. of manner,  
eīs is a demonstrative  
**quae...facerent:** which would...; a relative  
clause of characteristic with impf. subj.; the  
verb governs a double acc.  
80 **suae partis:** of their own part...; objective  
gen. with dominōs  
**orbis terrārum:** of the world; ‘of the  
sphere of lands,’ an idiom  
**pāce...partā:** abl. abs., PPP pariō  
**terrā marīqu:** abl. place where, marī is a  
3<sup>rd</sup> decl. neuter i-stem ablative  
**exercitū...impositō:** abl. abs.  
81 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor  
82 **pāce, victōriā:** because of...; abl. of cause  
**nōn minus:** no less...; comparative adv.

## 24i. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus and the 2<sup>nd</sup> Punic War

urbēs modo ad habendōs honōrēs effūsae sunt, sed agrestium etiam 83  
turba viās obsidēbat. Triumphō omnium clārissimō urbem est  
invictus cognōmenque Āfricanum sibi sūmpsit. 85

---

**Āfricānus, -a, -um:** Africanus, 2

**agrestis, -e:** of the fields, rural, rustic, 1

**cognōmen, -minis n.:** cognomen, nickname, 6

**ēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum:** pour out, shed, 3

**invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum:** convey to, ride 3

**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 3

**obsideo, -ère, -sēdī, -sessum:** beset, besiege 5

**sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum:** to take (up) 5

**Triumphus, -i m.:** Triumph (procession), 4

**turba, -ae f.:** crowd, throng; tumult, 1

83 **Nōn modo...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*

**ad habendōs honōrēs:** *for...;* expressing purpose; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the noun + gerundive as gerund (-ing) + acc. obj.

**effūsae sunt:** *poured out;* lit. ‘were poured out’

**agrestium:** *of the country-folk;* a

substantive; gen. pl.

84 **Triumphō...clārissimō:** *with...;* abl. of means; a parade

**invictus est:** Scipio is the subject; this pf. pass. verb governs an acc.

85 **sibi:** *for...;* dat. of interest

**sumpsit:** Scipio is again subject. The name ‘Africanus’ was added to his name.

## 25a. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

Tiberius et Gaius Gracchī Scipiōnis Āfricānī ex filiā nepōtēs 1  
 erant. Hōrum adulēscētia bonīs artibus et magnā omnium spē  
 exācta est; ad ēgregiam enim indolem optima accēdēbat ēducātiō.  
 Erant enim dīligențiā Cornēliae mātris ā puerīs doctī et Graecīs  
 litterīs ēruditī. Maximum mātrōnīs ḍrnāmentum esse līberōs bene 5  
 īstitūtōs meritō putābat māter illa sapientissima. Cum Campāna  
 mātrōna, apud illam hospita, ḍrnāmenta sua, illō saeculō  
 pulcherrima, ostentāret eī muliēbriter, Cornēlia trāxit eam sermōne,  
 quōusque ē scholā redīrent līberī. Quōs reversōs hospitae  
 ostendēns, “Haec,” inquit, “mea ḍrnāmenta sunt.” Nihil quidem 10

**accēdō, -ere, -cessi:** approach, add to, 2  
**adulescentia, -ae f.:** youth, 1  
**Āfricānus, -a, -um:** Africanus, 2  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 7  
**bene:** well, 1  
**Campānus, -a, -um:** of Campania (region), 1  
**Cornēlia, -ae f.:** Cornelia, 3  
**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 2  
**doceō, -ere, -ui, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēducātiō, -tiōnis f.:** training, rearing, 1  
**ēgregius, -a, -um:** excellent, outstanding, 7  
**ēō, īre, ī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**ērudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:** educate, instruct, 2  
**exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum:** drive out; spend, 3  
**Gaius, -ī m.:** Gaius, 3  
**Gracchus, -ī m.:** Gracchus, 4  
**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 4  
**hospita, -ae f.:** guest; host, 2  
**indoles, -is f.:** natural or inborn ability, 1

- 1 **Tiberius et Gaius Gracchī:** *Tiberius Gracchus and Gaius Gracchus*
- 2 **Scipiōnis Āfricānī:** *of Scipio Africanus*
- 3 **hōrum:** gen. pl. of hic; i.e. the two brothers
- 4 **bonīs...spē:** with...; abl. of manner
- 5 **omnium:** subjective gen., i.e. all hope that...
- 6 **enim:** for...; translate first in the sentence
- 7 **erant...doctī...ēruditī:** they...; plpf. pass.
- 8 **diligentia Cornēliae mātris:** abl. of means, Cornelia is the name of their mother
- 9 **ā puerīs:** by...; abl. agent, Tiberius and Gaius' siblings helped teach them
- 10 **Graecīs litterīs:** abl. of means; in the plural, litterīs often refers to 'literature'

**līberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 3  
**littera, -ae f.:** letter; pl. literature 2  
**mātrōna, -ae f.:** married woman, matron, 2  
**meritus, -a, -um:** deserved, due, just, 1  
**muliēbriter:** in a womanly way, 1  
**nepōs, nepōtīs m.:** grandson, decendent, 3  
**ōrnāmentum, -ī n.:** jewelry, adornment, 3  
**ostendō (1):** show, display, 7  
**ostentō (1):** show , 1  
**putcher, -ra, -rum:** pretty, beautiful, 2  
**putō (1):** to think, 1  
**quōusque:** until what time, till when, 1  
**revertō, -ere, which:** turn back, return, 4  
**saeculum, -ī n.:** generation, lifetime, 1  
**sapiens (sapientis):** wise, 1  
**schola, -ae f.:** school, place of learning, 3  
**sermō, -ōnis n.:** conversation, discourse, 2  
**Tiberius, -ī m.:** Tiberius, 5  
**trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum:** to draw, drag, 1

- 5 **Maximum...esse...meritō:** that...; ind. disc. governed by putābat
- 6 **īstitūtōs:** trained; PPP
- 7 **meritō:** deservedly, rightly; abl. as adv.
- 8 **apud illam:** at the house of that one; i.e. Cornelia; hospita is in apposition to mātrōna
- 9 **ōrnāmenta sua:** acc. obj. of ostentāret
- 10 **illō saeculō:** in...; abl. of time when
- 11 **eī:** i.e. to Cornelia; dat. ind. obj. is, ea, id
- 12 **trāxit...sermōne:** i.e. drew out the conversation
- 13 **quōs reversōs:** these boys, having returned; a connective relative: translate in English as 'these,' PPP in the middle (dep.) voice

## 25b. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

hīs adulēsentibus neque ā nātūrā neque ā doctrīnā dēfuit; sed 11 ambō rem pūblicam, quam tuērī poterant, perturbāre māluērunt.

Tiberius Gracchus, tribūnus plēbis creātus, ā senātū dēscīvit; populī favōrem profūsīs largītiōnibus sibi conciliāvit; agrōs plēbī dīvidēbat, prōvinciās novīs colōniīs replēbat. Cum autem 15 tribūniciam potestātem sibi prōrogārī vellet et palam dictitāasset, interēmptō senātū omnia per plēbem agī dēbēre, viam sibi ad rēgnum parāre vidēbātur. Quā rē cum convocātī patrēs dēlīberārent quidnam faciendum esset, statim Tiberius Capitōlium petit, manum ad caput referēns, quō signō salūtem suam populō commendabat. 20

**ambo:** both, two together, 3

**Capitōlium, -ī n.:** Capitolium, 5

**colōnus, -ī m.:** settler, colonist, 2

**commendō (1):** commend, entrust, 1

**convocō (1):** to call together, 4

**dēbēo, -ēre, -uī, dēbitum:** to owe, ought, 3

**dēlīberō (1):** to ponder, meditate, 2

**dēsciscō, -ere, dēscīvī, -itum:** defect, desert, 1

**dēsum, -esse, -fui:** to fail, be wanting, 2

**dicitō (1):** to say often, insist, 1

**dīvidō, -ere, -visī, -visum:** divide, separate, 7

**doctrīna, -ae f.:** instruction, teaching, 2

**ēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**favor, favōris m., (1):** good-will, favor, 3

**Gracchus, -ī m.:** Gracchus, 4

**hīc:** here, 1

**interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum:** take away, 2

**largītio, -tiōnis f.:** bribery; generosity, gift, 1

11 **hīs adulēsentibus:** *for...*; dat. interest

**neque...neque:** *either...or...*; following the subject nihil, these correlatives are positive  
**ā...ā...:** *from...*; abl. of separation

**dēfuit:** pf. dēsum

12 **rem pūblicam:** *the government, the republic;* ‘public affairs’

13 **tribūnus plēbis:** *Tribune of the Plebs;* a predicative nom. following PPP creō

14 **profūsīs largītiōnibus:** abl. abs. or means  
**plēbī:** *among...*; dat. ind. obj.

15 **novīs colōnīs:** abl. means

**cum...vellet...dictitā(vi)sset:** *when...*  
impf. subj. volō and plpf. subj. dicitō

16 **sibi:** *for...*; dat. of interest

**prōrogārī:** pass. inf.

**mālō , malle, maluī:** prefer, 5

**manus, -ūs f.:** hand; group 7

**nātūra, -ae f.:** nature, 1

**palam:** openly, publicly, 3

**perturbō (1):** disturb, throw into confusion, 3

**potestās, -tātis f.:** power; rule, sovereignty, 4

**prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum:** to pour out, 2

**prōroḡ (1):** to prolong, extend, protract, 1

**prōvinciā, -ae f.:** province, 7

**quisnam, quidnam:** who pray? what pray?, 1

**referō, -ferre, -tuli:** to report, bring back, 7

**repleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum:** to refill, fill again, 1

**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 4

**signō (1):** to mark out, designate, 1

**statim:** immediately, on the spot, at once, 5

**Tiberius, -ī m.:** Tiberius, 5

**tribūnicius, -a, -us:** of a tribune, 1

**tueor, tuērī:** to look over or after, guard, 2

17 **interēmptō senātū:** abl. abs.

**omnia...dēbēre:** *that...*; ind. disc., agī is  
the pass. inf. of agō, ‘do’  
**sibi:** *for...*; dat. of interest

18 **vidēbātur:** *he seemed;* impf. pass.

**Quā rē:** *For this reason;* ‘because of  
which matter,’ abl. of cause

19 **quidnam...esset:** *what...*; ind. question  
with passive periphrastic in the subj., equiv.  
to faciendum erat (often translated as ‘must  
be in the present and ‘had to be’ in the past

**Capitōlium:** one of the two peaks of the  
Capitoline Hill

20 **referēns:** nom. sg. pres. pple

**quō signō:** *by which...;* relative adj.  
**populō:** dat. ind. obj.

## 25c. Tiberius Gracchus and 133 BCE

Hoc nōbilitās ita accēpit, quāsī diadēma posceret, sēgniterque 21  
 cessante cōsule, Scīpiō Nāsīca, cum esset cōnsobrīnus Tiberī  
 Gracchī, patriam cognātiōnī p̄aeferēns sublātā dextrā prōclāmāvit:  
 “Quī rem pūblicam salvam esse volunt, mē sequantur!” Dein  
 optimātēs, senātus atque equestris ūrdinis pars maior in Gracchum 25  
 irruunt, quī fugiēns dēcurrēnsque clīvō Capitōlinō frāgmentō  
 subsellī īctus vītam, quam glōriōsissimē dēgere potuerat, immātūrā  
 morte fīnīvit. Mortuī Tiberī corpus in flūmen prōiectum est.

---

<b>Capitōlinus, -a, -um:</b> Capitoline, 4	<b>immātūrus, -a, -um:</b> untimely, premature, 1
<b>cessō (1):</b> to be remiss, cease, delay, be idle, 1	<b>irruō, -ere, -ruī:</b> rush in, 2
<b>clīvus, -ī m.:</b> slope, 1	<b>maiōr, maius:</b> greater, larger; older, 4
<b>cōgnātiō, -tiōnis f.:</b> kinship, 1	<b>mors, mortis, f.:</b> death, 6
<b>cōnsobrīnus, -ī m.:</b> cousin, maternal cousin, 1	<b>Nāsīca, -ae m.:</b> Nasica, 1
<b>dēcurrō, -ere, -cururrī:</b> to run down, 3	<b>nōbilitās, -tātis f.:</b> nobility, renown, 1
<b>dēgō, -ere, dēgī:</b> to spend, pass (time), 1	<b>optimas, -ātis m.:</b> optimates, 1
<b>dein:</b> then, next, 1	<b>ōrdō, ūrdinis m.:</b> arrangement, order, rank, 3
<b>dexter, -ra, -rum:</b> right (hand); favorable, 3	<b>poscō, -ere, popōscī:</b> ask, demand, 1
<b>diadēma, -ātis n.:</b> diadem, headress, crown, 3	<b>praeferō, -ferre, -tulfī:</b> prefer, carry before, 1
<b>ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:</b> put forth, give out, 5	<b>prōclāmō (1):</b> to cry out, call out, 1
<b>equester, -stris, -stre:</b> equestrian, 3	<b>proiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:</b> project forth 2
<b>fīniō, -ire, -īrī:</b> to limit, end, enclose, 2	<b>quāsī:</b> as if, just as, as though, 2
<b>frāgmentum, -ī n.:</b> piece, fragment, 1	<b>salvus, -a, -um:</b> saved, preserved, safe, 1
<b>glōriōsus, -a, -um:</b> glorious, 2	<b>sēgnis, -e:</b> sluggish, inactive, lazy, slow, 1
<b>Gracchus, -ī m.:</b> Gracchus, 4	<b>subsellium, -ī n.:</b> seat, bench, 1
<b>hīc:</b> here, 1	<b>Tiberius, -ī m.:</b> Tiberius, 5
<b>īciō, īcere, īcī, īctus:</b> to strike, pelt, hit	<b>tollō, tolle, sustulī, sublātum:</b> raise, destroy 2

- 21 **nōbilitās:** the nobility; i.e. senatorial class  
**accēpit:** i.e. perceived, interpreted  
**quāsī...posceret:** a conditional clause of comparison governs a subj.  
**segñiter:** 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adv. from sēgnis, -e  
 22 **cessante cōsule:** abl. abs.  
 22 **cum esset...:** although...; cum clause with impf. sum is concessive in sense  
 23 **cognātiōnī:** over...; dat. compound verb  
**sublātā dextrā (manū):** abl. abs., PPP  
 tollō; dextrā modifies a missing fem. manū  
 24 **Quī:** (those) who...; the missing

- antecedent is subject of sequantur  
**sequantur:** Let...; or ‘should...’ a jussive  
 3p pres. dep. subj.  
 25 **equestris ūrdinis:** of equestrian rank  
 in...: upon...  
 26 **fugiēns dēcurrēnsque:** while...; pres. pple  
**clīvō Capitōlinō:** abl. of separation  
**frāgmentō:** abl. means  
 27 **ictus:** PPP īciō modifying Gracchus  
**potuerat:** plpf. possum  
**glōriōsissimē:** superlative adv.

## 26a. Gaius Marius

C. Marius humili locō nātus, prīma stīpendia in Hispāniā duce 1 Scīpiōne fēcit. Imprīmīs Scīpiōnī ob ēgregiam virtūtem cārus erat; Scīpiō enim dīxit, sī quid sibi accidisset, rem pūblicam nūllum alium successōrem Mariō meliōrem inventūram esse. Quā laude excitātus Marius spīritūs dignōs rēbus quās posteā gessit concēpit. 5

Posteā lēgātus fuit Q. Metellī, quī bellum in Numidiā contrā Iugurtham rēgem gerēbat. Rōmam missus, Metellum apud populum incusāvit, quod bellum dūceret; sī sē cōnsulem fēcissent, brevī tempore aut vīvum aut mortuum Iugurtham captūrum esse. 9

**accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall to, 2

**brevis, -e:** short, brief, 5

**C.: Gaius, 5**

**cārus, -a, -um:** dear, precious, costly, 4

**concipiō, -ere, -cēpī:** receive, take in, 1

**dignus, -a, -um:** worthy of, deserving (abl) 1

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**ēgregius, -a, -um:** excellent, outstanding, 7

**excitō (1):** to rouse, stir up; awaken, 6

**humilis, -e:** on the ground, low; humble, 2

**imprīmīs, in prīmīs:** in particular, especially

**incusō (1):** to accuse, complain of, 3

1 **humili locō:** from...; abl. of source/origin; locus refers to his status or position in society; 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl.

**nātus:** PPP nascor

**duce Scīpiōne:** abl. abs., supply ‘being’ as the pple

2 **Imprīmīs:** elsewhere in prīmīs

**Scīpiōnī:** to...; dat. of reference (viewpoint)

3 **sī...accidisset,...inventūram esse:** that, if...had..., would...; ind. disc.; originally a future more vivid condition (sī fut. pf., fut.) becomes plpf. subj. and fut. inf. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence

**quid:** anything; i.e. death; quis, quid is indefinite before sī, nisi, num, and nē

**rem pūblicam:** acc. subj.

4 **nūllum alium successōrem:** acc. obj.

**Mariō:** than...; abl. of comparison

**Quā laude:** by this...; connective relative abl. of means or cause

**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** find, 5

**Iugurtha, -ae m.:** Jugurtha, 4

**laus, laudis f.:** praise, glory, merit, 4

**locō (1):** to put, place, 2

**Metellus, -ī m.:** Metellus, 2

**Numidia, -ae f.:** Numidia, 3

**ob:** on account of , 5

**Q.: Quintus, 2**

**spīritus, -ūs m.:** breath, spirit, inspiration, 1

**stipendium, -īī n.:** pay; military service, 3

**successor, -ōris m.:** follower, successor, 3

**vīvus, -a, -um:** alive, living, 3

5 **rēbus:** the adj. dignus often governs an abl. of respect

**quās...gessit:** which...; relative clause

6 **fuit:** pf. sum, Marius is subject

7 **Rōmam:** place to which

**missus:** PPP mittō

**apud:** before..., in front of...

8 **quod...dūceret:** because...; ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view

**sī...fēcisset... (sē) captūrum esse:** that if they had...he would...; ind. disc. governed by incusāvit; see line 3; fēcissent governs a double acc.

**brevī tempore:** in...; abl. of time when

9 **aut...aut:** either...or...

**captūrum esse:** the missing acc. subj. is reflexive sē, i.e. Marius

## 26b. Gaius Marius

Itaque cōsul creātus in Numidiam rediit atque superāvit Bocchum, 10  
rēgem Gaetulōrum, ad quem Iugurtha profūgerat. Deinde Sulla,  
quaestor Mariī, persuāsit Bocchō ut Iugurtham trāderet.

Marius iterum cōsul creātus in Galliam profectus est, ubi vīcit 15  
Teutōnēs, gentem Germānicam, quī cum Cimbrīs novās sēdēs  
quaerēbant. Cum Teutōnēs vallem flūmenque medium tenērent, 15  
mīlitēsque Rōmānī, quibus aquae nūlla cōpia erat, aquam  
flāgitārent, Marius, “Virī,” inquit, “estis; ēn, illīc aquam habētis.”  
Mīlitēs ita concitātī tam āriter pugnāvērunt ut ducenta mīlia  
hostium caederentur et nōnaginta caperentur.

---

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp; fierce, keen, 4  
**Bocchus, -ī m.:** Bocchus, (Gaetulian king), 2  
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum: kill, cut down, 4  
**Cimbrī, ḫrum m.:** Cimbri (Gallic tribe), 3  
concitō (1): stir up, incite, impel, 3  
cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5  
ducentī, -ae, -a: two hundred, 2  
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
ēn: Look! Behold! See there!, 1  
flāgitō (1): to demand urgently, ask for, 2  
**Gaetulī, -ōrum m.:** Gaetulians (a people) 1  
**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 3  
**Germānicus, -a, -um:** German, 1  
**illīc:** there, in that place, 1

10 **cōsul:** nom. pred. of PPP creō  
rediit: pf. redeō  
12 **Bocchō:** dat. ind. obj. of persuādeō  
ut...trāderet: that...; ind. command  
13 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor  
vīcit: pf. vincō  
14 **sēdēs:** settlements  
15 **Cum...flāgitārent:** when...  
**vallem...medium:** the middle of a...

iterum: again, a second time, 3  
**Iugurtha, -ae m.:** Jugurtha, 4  
**mille (pl. mīlia):** thousand, 6  
**nōnaginta:** ninety, 1  
**Numidia, -ae f.:** Numidia, 3  
pugnō (1): to fight, 3  
**quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaeſītum:** to seek,  
ask, inquire, 6  
**quaestor, -is m.:** quaestor (financial officer) 7  
sēdēs, sēdis f.: seat; abode, home, 6  
**Teutōnēs, -um m.:** the Teutons (Germanic  
tribe), 2  
trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum: hand over, give, 7  
**vallis, -is:** lowland, vale, 1

16 **quibus...erat:** dat. of possession: (1) ‘to  
whom there was ...’ or (2) ‘who had’  
17 **inquit:** said; a verb employed with direct  
disc. and often inserted in the middle of the  
the direct disc.  
18 **āriter:** 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. adv. from ācer  
**ut...caederent...caperentur:** that...; result  
clause with impf. pass.subj.  
19 **hostium:** gen. pl.

## 26c. Gaius Marius

Īnsequentī annō Cimbrī etiam caesī sunt. In ipsā pugnā Marius 20 duās cohortēs Camertium, quī mīrā virtūte vim Cimbrōrum sustinēbant, contrā lēgem cīvitāte dōnāvit. Dē quā rē posteā reprehēnsus, sē excūsāvit, quod inter armōrum strepitum verba iūris cīvīlis exaudīre nōn potuisset.

Marius, quī semper factiōnem populārem in rē pūblicā secūtus 25 erat, cum senēseret, invidēre coepit Sullae, quī dux nōbilium erat. Itaque, cum Sulla in cōsulātū bellō Mithridāticō praefectus esset, tribūnus quīdam lēge imperium Sullae abrogāvit Mariōque bellum dētulit. Quā rē commōtus, Sulla, quī ex Italiā nōndum excesserat,

- abrogō** (1): to repeal, annul, recall, 1  
**caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum:** kill, cut down, 4  
**Camertēs, -ium m.:** Camertes (people in northern Italy), 1  
**Cimbrī, ḍrum m.:** Cimbri (Gallic tribe), 3  
**cohors, cohortis m.:** cohort (unit of ~480) 2  
**commoveō, -ere, -mōvī, mōtum:** upset, trouble 2  
**cōsulātū, -ūs m.:** consulship 6  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum:** offer, give over 6  
**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5  
**ēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**exaudiō, -ire, -iū, -iūtum:** hear plainly, hear, 1  
**excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** depart, go out, 1  
**excūsō (1):** to excuse; apologize for, 1

20 īnsequentī annō: *in...*; abl. time when, pres. pple (3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem abl. ending)  
etiam: also

21 **Camertium:** *of the Camertes*  
mīrā virtūte: *with...*; abl. of manner  
vīm: acc. sg. of vīs

22 **cīvitāte dōnāvit:** *bestowed with citizenship;* dōnō can govern acc. + dat. ind. obj. or, as here, an acc. and abl. of means  
Dē quā rē: *about...;* connective relative, in English use the demonstrative, ‘this’

23 **quod...potuisset:** *because he had...;* or ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view; plpf. subj. possum: Marius is being sarcastic

24 **iūris cīvīlis:** *of civil law*

- factiō, factiōnis f.:** faction, party, 6  
**insequor, -sequī, -secūtus:** follow, ensue, 3  
**invideō, -ère, -vīdī, -vīsum:** envy, begrudge 1  
**legō, -ere, lēgi, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**mīrus, -a, -um:** amazing, wonderful, strange 3  
**Mithridāticus, -a, -um:** Mithridatic, 2  
**nōndum:** not yet, 3  
**populāris, -e:** of the people, popular, 4  
**praeficiō -ere -feci:** set or put in charge over 2  
**reprehendō, -ere, -dī:** blame; hold back, 3  
**semper:** always, ever, forever, 3  
**senescō, -ere, -ui:** to grow old, 1  
**strepitus, -ī m.:** noise, din, rattle, 1  
**sustineō, -ere, uī, -tentum:** hold up, endure, 5

25 **factiōnem populārem:** *faction of the populares;* These factions are not political parties but instead distinguish aristocrats who appeal to the nobility for power (optimates) from aristocrats to appeal to the people for power (populārēs).

**secūtus erat:** plpf. dep. sequor  
27 **cum...praefectus esset:** *when...;* plpf. pass. praeficiō

**Mithridāticō bellō:** *over...;* dat. of compound verb

28 **lēge:** *with...;* abl. of means  
Mariō: dat. ind. obj.

29 **dētulit:** pf. dēferō  
Quā rē: *by this matter;* abl. of cause and connective relative (translate as a demonstrative ‘this’)

## 26d. Gaius Marius

Rōmam cum exercitū rediit et, urbe occupātā, tribūnum interfēcit 30  
Mariumque fugāvit. Marius aliquamdiū in palūde latuit; acceptā  
nāviculā in Africam trānsiit et in agrum Carthāginiēnsem pervēnit.

Ibi cum in locīs sōlitāriīs sedēret, vēnit ad eum līctor Sextiliī  
praetōris, quī tum Africam obtinēbat. Ab hōc, quem numquam 35  
laesisset, Marius hūmānitātis aliquod officium exspectābat; at līctor  
dēcēdere eum dē prōvinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadvertī vellet;  
torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit  
tandem, ecquid renūntiārī praetōrī vellet. Marius, “Nūntiā,” inquit,  
“tē vīdisse C. Marium in Carthāginis ruīnīs sedentem.”

---

**aliquamdiū:** for some long time, 1  
**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 3  
**animadvertō, -ere, -verti:** notice; punish, 4  
C.: Gaius, 5  
**dēcēdō, -ere, -cessi:** depart, withdraw, die, 3  
**equis, ecquid:** any? anyone? anything?, 1  
**ēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** send out, 3  
**exerceō, -ere, -ui, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**exspectō (1):** look out for, wait for, await, 3  
**fugō (1):** to put to flight, 1  
**hic:** here, 1  
**hūmānitās, -tatis f.:** culture, refinement, 2  
**intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum:** look upon, 2  
**iocus, -i m.:** joke, 2  
**laedō, -ere, laesi, laesum:** to harm, hurt, 1  
**lateō, -ere, latuī:** to lie hidden, 1  
**līctor, līctoris m.:** lictor (bodyguard), 5  
**nāvicula, -ae f.:** a small ship, boat, 1  
**nisi:** if not, unless, 7

30 **Rōmam:** place to which  
rediit: pf. redeō  
urbe occupātā: abl. abs.  
31 **fugāvit:** note: 1<sup>st</sup> conj. fugō, fugāre means  
'to put to flight,' while 3<sup>rd</sup>-io fugiō, 'to flee'  
acceptō nāviculā: abl. abs.  
32 **trānsiit:** pf. trānseō; Marius is the subject  
34 **obtinēbat:** held; a praetor, consul or one  
who had served this rank previously could  
be assigned by the Senate as governor  
**Ab hōc (virō):** from this man; abl. of source  
**quem...laesisset:** whom (Marius)...; a  
relative clause of characteristic with plpf.  
subj. laedō; the subject is Marius  
35 **at:** but; a strong adversative

**numquam:** never, 3  
**nūntiō (1):** announce, report, 7  
**obtineō, -ere, -ui, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 2  
**occupō (1):** seize, occupy, 5  
**officium, -iī, n.:** duty, obligation, 4  
**palūs, palūdis f.:** swamp, marsh, 2  
**perveniō, -ire, -venī, -ventum:** to come  
through, arrive, 2  
**praetor, -ōris m.:** praetor, 3  
**prōvinciā, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**renūntiō, (1):** bring back word, report, 2  
**rogō (1):** to ask, 3  
**ruīna, -ae f.:** ruins, downfall, 3  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī:** to sit, sit down; set, 7  
Sextilius, -i m.: Sextilius (an officer) 1  
**sōlitārius, -a, -um:** isolated, solitary, alone, 1  
**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6  
**torvus, -a, -us:** grim, savage, fierce, keen, 1  
**tū:** you, 6

36 **dē prōvinciā:** from...  
**nisi...vellet:** unless...; impf. subj. of  
subordinate clause in ind. disc.(eum...  
dēcēdere); impf. subj. volō  
**in...animadvertī:** to be punished upon  
himself; an idiom with no English equiv.  
37 **torvē:** adv. of torvus  
**intuentem, ēmittentem:** two pres. pples  
modifying Marium  
38 **ecquid...vellet:** whether...anything...;  
ind. question with impf. subj. volō, ecquid  
is an interrogative, here acc. dir. obj.  
**renūntiārī:** pres. pass. inf.  
**Nūntiā:** sg. imperative  
39 **tē vīdisse:** that...; ind. disc., pf. inf. videō

## 26e. Gaius Marius

Cum Sulla ad bellum Mithridāticum profectus esset, Marius, 40 revocātus ā Cinnā, in Italiam rediit, calamitāte incēnsus magis quam frāctus. Cum exercitū Rōmam ingressus, eam caedibus et rapinīs vāstāvit; omnēs adversae factiōnis nōbilēs variis suppliciōrum generibus affēcit. Quīnque diēs continuōs totidemque noctēs illa licentia scelerum omnium dūrāvit. Tandem Marius, 45 senectūte et labōribus cōflectus in morbum incidit et ingentī omnium laetitiā mortuus est. Cuius virī sī comparentur cum virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce perniciōsior fuerit.

---

- afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** to affect, afflict, 2  
**an:** or, 1  
**caedēs, -is f.:** slaughter, killing, 4  
**calamitās, -itatīs f.:** loss, calamity, 2  
**Cinna, -ae m.:** Cinna (a Roman consul) 2  
**comparō (1):** compare; prepare, collect, 2  
**continuus, -a, -um:** continuous, successive, 3  
**dūrō (1):** to harden, last, endure, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēō, īre, īī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**facilis, -e:** easy, 4  
**factiō, factiōnis f.:** faction, party, 6  
**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus:** break, shatter, 3  
**genus, -eris n.:** kind, type; birth, race, 4  
**haud:** by no means, not at all, 4  
**incendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 7  
**incidō, -ere, -cidī:** fall into, fall upon, 1  
**ingredior, -gredī, ingressum:** step in, enter, 4  
**labor, -is m.:** labor, toil, 3
- 40 **cum...profectus esset:** when...; plpf. dep.  
subj. proficīscor
- 41 **rediit:** pf. redeō  
incēnsus: PPP, i.e. angered
- 42 **quam:** than...; a clause of comparison  
frāctus: PPP, frangō  
cum exercitū: with...; accompaniment  
ingressus: pf. dep. ingredior, as often,  
translate the pple as ‘having Xed’  
eam: Rōmam is the antecedent
- 43 **adversae factiōnis:** of opposing...; gen. of  
description with omnēs nōbilēs
- 44 **Quīnque diēs continuōs...noctēs:** for...;  
acc. of duration of time
- laetitia, -ae f.: gladness, joy, delight, 1  
licentia, -ae f.: license, freedom, 2  
magis: more, 7  
melior, melius: better, 4  
**Mithridāticus, -a, -um:** Mithridatic, 2  
**morbūs, -i m.:** disease, sickness, illness, 3  
**perniciōsus, -a, -um:** destructive, ruinous, 1  
**quīnque:** five, 4  
**rapina, -ae, f.:** pillage, rapine; prey, 1  
**revocō (1):** call back, summon back, revoke, 3  
**scelus, -eris n.:** wickedness, villainy, crime, 2  
**senectūs, -tūtis f.:** old age, 2  
**supplicium, -ii n.:** punishment, supplication, 5  
**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6  
**totidem:** so many as, as many, 2  
**utrum:** whether, 1  
**varius, -a, -um:** various, 3  
**vāstō (1):** lay waste, destroy, devastate, 3  
**vitium, -iī n.:** vice, fault, defect, 1
- 46 **confectus:** weared, exhausted; PPP  
ingentī...laetitiā: with...; abl. of manner
- 47 **omnium:** subjective gen. pl.  
mortuus est: pf. dep. morior  
Cuius virī: of this man; connective relative,  
all modifying nom. neuter pl. vitia  
**sī comparentur...facile sit:** if...should be,  
it would be easy...; fut. less vivid (sī pres.  
subj., pres. subj.); pres. subj. sum
- 48 **dictū:** to say; ‘in saying’ a supine (PPP +  
ū), abl. of respect  
**utrum...fuerit:** whether...; ind. question,  
pf. subj. sum  
**bellō, pāce:** in...in...; abl. of respect

## 27a. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

L. Cornēlius Sulla, quī bellō Iugurthīnō quaestor Mariī cōnsulis fuit, usque ad quaestūram vītam lūxuriōsam ēgerat. Marius molestē tulisse trāditur, quod sibi gravissimum bellum gerentī quaestor voluptātī dēdītus sorte obvēnisset. Eiusdem virtūs tamen, postquam in Āfricam vēnit, ēnituit. Bellō Cimbricō lēgātus cōnsulis fuit et bonam operam ēdīdit. Cōnsul ipse deinde factus, pulsō in exilium Mariō, adversus Mithridātem profectus est. Mithridātēs enim, Ponticus rēx, vir bellō ācerrimus, virtūte ēgrēgiā, odio in Rōmānōs nōn īinferior Hannibale fuit. Effēcerat igitur ut omnēs in Asiā cīvēs Rōmānī eādem diē atque hōrā interficerentur.

10

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp; fierce, keen, 4  
**Cimbricus, -a, -um:** of the Cimbri (Gauls), 1  
**Cornēlius, -ī m.:** Cornelius, 3  
**dēdō, -ere:** to give over, surrender, 7  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -dītus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 4  
**ēgregius, -a, -um:** excellent, outstanding, 7  
**ēniteō, -ere, ēnitū:** to shine forth, gleam, 1  
**exilium, -ī n.:** exile, banishment, 1  
**hōrā, -ae f.:** hour, 1  
**inferior, -ius:** lower, beneath, 1  
**Iugurthīnus, -a, -um:** Jugurthine, of J. 1  
**lūxuriōsus, -a, -um:** luxuriant, excessive, 1

- 1 **bellō Iugurthīnō:** in...; abl. time when
- 2 **ēgerat:** plpf. agō; agere vītam is an idiom that means ‘to live life’ or ‘to spend life’
- 3 **molestē:** with annoyance; adverb
- 3 **tulisse:** pf. inf. ferō, ‘endure’ or ‘bear’
- 4 **quod...obvēnisset:** because he had...; plpf. subj., subj. of subordinate verb in ind. disc.
- 5 **sibi...gerentī:** to him...; i.e. Marius, dat. of compound verb obvēnisset modified by pres. pple gerō
- 5 **quaestor:** the quaestor; i.e. Sulla, subject
- 4 **voluptātī:** dat. ind. obj. with PPP dēdītus
- 5 **sorte:** by lot, by chance
- 5 **Eiusdem:** gen. sg. idem; i.e. of Sulla
- 5 **Bellō Cimbricō:** in...; abl. of time when
- 5 **fuit:** he was; i.e. Sulla, pf. sum; a legate is a very high officer in the consul’s staff

**Mithridātēs, -īs m.:** Mithridates, 7  
**molestus, -a, -um:** troublesome, annoying, 2  
**obvēnō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** come to, 2  
**odium, -īū n.:** hatred, loathing, 1  
**opera, -ae f.:** effort, exertion, work, 3  
**pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum:** drive, beat, 6  
**Ponticus, -a, -um:** of Pontus, 2  
**postquam:** after, when, 6  
**quaestor, -īs m.:** Quaestor 7  
**quaestūra, -ae f.:** quaestorship, 2  
**sors, sortis f.:** lot, casting of lots, 3  
**trādō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum:** hand over, give, 7  
**usque:** up to, until; all the way, 3

- 6 **cōnsul ipse:** nom. pred after PPP faciō
- 6 **pulsō...Mariō:** abl. abs., PPP pellō
- 7 **profectus est:** pf. dep. proficīscor
- 7 **enīm:** for...; or ‘indeed,’ postpositive, translate first in the sentence
- 8 **bellō:** in...; abl. of respect
- 8 **ācerrimus:** superlative ācer
- 8 **virtūte ēgregiā:** with...; abl. of quality modifying vir
- 8 **odiō:** in...; abl. respect with īinferior
- 8 **in Rōmānōs:** against...
- 9 **Hannibale:** than...; abl. of comparison
- 9 **Effēcerat:** had brought it about that...
- 9 **ut...interficerentur:** that...; a noun result clause following plpf. efficiō
- 10 **eādem diē...hōrā:** on...; abl. time when

## 27b. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Ac prīmō Sulla illūs praefectōs duōbus proeliīs in Graeciā 11 superāvit; deinde in Asiā Mithridātem ipsum fūdit; oppressisset quoque nisi in Italiam ad bellum cīvile adversus factiōnem populārem redīre properāns quālemcumque pācem facere māluisset, Mithridātem tamen pecūniā multāvit; dē Asiā aliīsque 15 prōvinciīs quās occupāverat dēcēdere paternīsque fīnibus contentum esse coēgit.

Sulla propter mōtūs urbānōs cum victōre exercitū Rōmam properāvit; eōs quī Mariō favēbant omnēs superāvit. Nihil autem eā victoriā fuit crūdēlius. Sulla, urbem ingressus et dictātor 20

cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum: to collect, compel, 6  
contentus, -a, -um: content, satisfied, 1  
crūdēlis, -e: cruel, bitter, bloody, 3  
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessi: depart, withdraw, die, 3  
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -ercitum: exercise, 3  
factiō, factiōnis f.: faction, party, 6  
faveō, -ere, favī: to favor, be propitious (dat) 2  
finis, -is m./f.: end, border; territory, 3  
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: to pour, shed, 4  
Graecia, -ae f.: Greece, 2  
ingredior, -gredī, ingressum: step in, enter, 4  
mālō , malle, maluī: prefer, 5  
Mithridātes, -is m.: Mithridates, 7

- 11 **prīmō**: at first; abl. as adverb  
**illūs**: of that one; i.e. of Mithridates  
**duōbus proeliīs**: abl. means or time when  
12 **fūdit**: routed, overcame; else ‘poured’  
**oppressisset...nisi...māluisset**: he would have..., if he had not...; past contrary-to-fact condition (sī plpf. subj., plpf. subj.)  
**oppressisset**: supply Mithridates as obj.  
13 **ad bellum cīvile**: for...; expresses purpose  
**factiōnem populārem**: i.e. the populares  
14 **redire**: inf. redeō  
**properāns**: nom. sg. pres. pple  
**qualemcumque pācem**: whatever peace; acc. obj. of facere; not a relative pronoun  
15 **pecūniā**: i.e. with a fine; abl. of means  
**dē...prōvinciīs**: from...; abl. separation  
**paternīs fīnibus**: with...; abl. means with

**mōtūs, -ūs m.**: movement, disturbance, 1  
**multō (1)**: to punish 1  
**nisi**: if not, unless, 7  
**occupō (1)**: seize, occupy, 5  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum**: oppress, overwhelm, 5  
**paternus, -a, -um**: of one’s father, paternal, 1  
**populāris, -e**: of the people, popular, 4  
**praefectus, -ī m.**: commander, prefect, 1  
**properō (1)**: to hasten, 3  
**prōvincia, -ae f.**: province, 7  
**quāliscumque**: of what sort whatsoever, 1  
**urbānus, -a, -um**: of a city, urban, 2

- predicate contentum; fīnēs often means ‘territory’ or ‘borders’  
17 **coēgit (Mithridātem)**: he compelled (Mithridates)...; pf. cōgō; Sulla is subject, supply ‘Mithridates’ as the acc. obj.  
18 **mōtūs**: disturbances; 4<sup>th</sup> decl. acc. pl.  
**victōre**: as victor; in apposition to exercitū Rōmam: place to which  
19 **eōs quī**: those who...  
**Mariō**: dat. ind. obj. of favēbant  
**omnēs**: modifying eōs, note the emphatic position: ‘one and all’  
20 **eā victoriā**: than...; abl. of comparison, eā is a demonstrative adj.  
**crūdēlius**: nom. pred. neut comparative adj.  
**ingressus**: pf. dep. ingredior  
**dictātor**: nom. pred. following PPP creō

## 27c. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

creātus, vel in eōs quī sē sponte dēdiderant iussit animadvertī. 21  
 Quattuor mīlia dēditōrum inermium cīvium in circō interfici iussit.  
 Quis autem illōs potest ēnumerāre quōs in urbe passim quisquis  
 voluit occīdit? Dēnique admonuit eum Fūfidius quīdam vīvere  
 aliquōs dēbēre, ut essent quibus imperāret. Novō et inaudīto 25  
 exemplō tabulam prōscriptiōnis prōposuit, quā nōmina eōrum quī  
 occīdendī essent continēbantur; cumque omnium orta esset  
 indignatiō, postrīdiē plūra etiam nōmina adiēcit. Ingēns caesōrum  
 fuit multitudō.

---

**adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** add, throw to, 2  
**admoneō, -ēre, admonū:** warn, advise, 1  
**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 3  
**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī:** notice; punish, 4  
**caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum:** kill, cut down, 4  
**circus, -ī m.:** racetrack, circuit 3  
**contineō, -ere, -nuī, -tentum:** contain, 3  
**dēbeō, -ere, -uī, débitum:** to owe, ought, 3  
**dēdō, -ere:** to give up, surrender, 7  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēnumerō (1):** to count up, count out, 1  
**exemplum, -ī n.:** example, 3  
**Fūfidius, -ī m.:** Fufidius, 1  
**imperō (1):** order, command, 4  
**inaudītus, -a, -um:** unheard, 1

21 **in eōs quī:** against those who...

**sponte:** willingly; an abl. as adverb  
**iussit:** pf. iubeō

**animadvertī:** to be punished; pass. inf.  
 22 **quattuor...interfici:** that...; ind. disc.  
 with pass. inf. interficiō

**dēditōrum...cīvium:** partitive gen. pl.

23 **quōs..occīdit:** whom (one)...; relative  
 clause, illōs is the antecedent; pf. occīdō  
**quisquis voluit:** whoever...; relative clause,  
 the antecedent is the missing subject of  
 occīdit; pf. volō

24 **eum:** him; i.e. Sulla

**quīdam:** i.e. a certain man named Fūfidius  
**vīvere...dēbēre:** that...; ind. disc., inf.  
 debeō governs a complementary inf.

25 **ut essent quibus imperāret:** so that there  
 might be (men) whom he could command; a  
 purpose clause with impf. subj. sum, and a

**indignatiō, -tiōnis f.:** outrage, indignity, 4  
**inermis, -e:** unarmed, 1  
**mille (pl. mīlia):** thousand, 6  
**occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus:** kill, cut down, 7  
**passim:** here and there, far and wide, 1  
**plūs (plūris):** more, 4  
**postrīdiē:** the day after, the next day, 1  
**prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positum:** to set forth, 3  
**prōscriptio, -onis n.:** proscription, 1  
**quattuor:** four, 5  
**quisquis, quidquid:** whoever, whatever, 1  
**sponte:** by one's own will, willingly, 1  
**tabula, -ae f.:** tablet, 2  
**vel:** or, either...or, 2  
**vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum:** live, 4

relative clause of purpose with impf. subj.;  
 quibus is an ind. obj. of imperārent

**nōvō...exemplō:** as...; 'for...' dat. of  
 purpose; inaudītō, 'unheard (of)' describes  
 something not experienced before

26 **quā:** on which (tablet)

**eōrum:** of those...; elsewhere 'their'  
**quī occīdendī essent:** who had to ...; 'were  
 (going) to be...', a past passive periphrastic  
 (gerundive + sum) expressing necessity  
 (equiv. to occīdendī erat); this relative  
 clause of characteristic governs a subj.

27 **cum...orta esset indignatiō:** when...; cum  
 clause with plpf. dep. subj. orior

**omnium indignatiō:** his indignation for  
 everyone; omnium is an objective gen.

28 **etiam:** still, even; modifying neut. plūra  
**caesōrum:** of those...; gen. pl. PPP caedō

## 27d. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Nec sōlum in eōs saevīvit quī armīs contrā sē dīmicāverant, sed 30 etiam quiētōs cīvēs propter pecūniae magnitūdinem prōscrīptōrum numerō adīecit. Cīvis quīdam innoxius, cui fundus in agrō Albānō erat, legēns prōscrīptōrum nōmina sē quoque vīdit adscrīptum. “Vae,” inquit, “miserō mihi!” Mē fundus Albānus persequitur.” Neque longē prōgressus ā quōdam quī eum āgnōverat interfectus 35 est.

Sulla, oppressīs inimīcōrum partibus, Fēlīcem sē ēdictō appellāvit; cumque eius uxor geminōs eōdem partū ēdidisset, puerum Faustum puellamque Faustam nōminārī voluit. Sed paucīs

**adiciō, -icere, -iēctī, -iectum:** add, throw to, 2  
**agnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtūm:** to recognize, 2  
**dīmicō (1):** to fight, struggle, contend, 3  
**ēdictum, -ī n.:** proclamation, edict, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**faustus, -a, -um:** favorable, 2  
**fēlīx (1):** happy, lucky, prosperous, 1  
**fundus, -ī m.:** farm, estate, 2  
**geminī, -ae, -a:** twin, 3  
**inimīcōs, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 6  
**innoxius, -a, -um:** harmless, innocent, 1  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**longē:** far, 4  
**magnitūdō, -tūdīnis f.:** size, greatness, 2

30 **nec sōlum...sed etiam:** not only...but also  
in eōs: against...  
**armīs:** abl. means  
**contrā sē:** the antecedent of the reflexive  
is the subject of the main verb: Sulla  
(in) quiētōs cīvēs: (against)...; parallel to in  
eōs above  
**prōscrīptōrum:** of those proscribed; PPP  
32 **numerō:** to...; dat. of compound verb  
**cui...erat:** dat. of possession may be  
translated three ways (1) ‘to whom there  
was,’ (2) ‘whose...was’, or (3) ‘who had’  
33 **legēns...nōmina:** pres. pple  
**sē...adscrīptum (esse):** that...; ind. disc.  
with pf. pass. inf. adscrībō  
34 **Vae...miserō mihi:** Woe to...; dat. of  
interest

**miser, misera, miserum:** sad, gloomy, 2  
**nōminō (1):** call by name, name, mention, 1  
**numerōs, -ī m.:** number, multitude, 2  
**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** oppress,  
overwhelm, 5  
**partus, -ūs m.:** birth, bringing forth, 1  
**persequor, -sequī, -secūtūs:** follow, pursue, 2  
**progredior, -gredī, progressus:** advance, 1  
**prōscribō, -ere, -scrīpsī:** proscribe, outlaw 1  
**puella, -ae f.:** girl, 1  
**quiētus, -a, -um:** resting, calm, undisturbed 4  
**saeviō, -ire, -iī:** to rage, rave, be angry, 2  
**scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum:** to write, 6  
**Vae:** woe (exclamation) 2

**persequitur:** pursues, chases  
35 **prōgressus:** pf. dep. pple, prōgredior, as  
often is translated as ‘having Xed’  
**ā quōdam:** by a certain man; abl. of agent  
37 **oppressīs...partibus:** abl. abs.; the partēs  
are ‘factions’  
**inimīcōrum:** rivals; a substantive; political  
rivals rather than foreign enemies of Rome  
**ēdictō:** abl. means  
38 **appellāvit:** governs a double acc. (acc.  
obj. and acc. pred.)  
**eōdem partū:** by...; abl. of means  
39 **puerum...nōminārī:** pres. pass. inf.; i.e.  
(x) to be called (y); acc. subj. and pred.;  
Sulla wanted to call the children the masc.  
and fem. form of the same name  
**voluit:** pf. volō

## 27e. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

post annīs repente contrā omnium exspectatiōnem dictatūram 40 dēposuit. Dēmissīs lictōribus, diū in forō cum amīcīs dēambulāvit. Stupēbat populus eum prīvātum vidēns, cuius potestās modo tam metuenda fuerat. Quamquam iam prīvātus erat, nōn sōlum salūs, sed etiam dignitās manēbat—quī tot cīvēs occīderat. Únus adulescēns fuit quī audēret querī et Sullam redeuntem usque ad 45 forēs domūs exsecrārī. Atque ille, cuius īram potentissimī virī maximaequē cīvitatēs nec effugere nec plācāre potuerant, ūnīus adulēscēntis contumēliās aequō animō tulit, id tantum in līmine dīcēns: “Hic adulēscēns efficiet ut nēmō posthāc tāle imperium 50 dēpōnat.”

- aequō (1):** equal, make level, 2  
**amīcus, -ī m.:** friend, 4  
**audeō, -ere, ausus sum:** to dare, venture, 5  
**contumēlia, -ae f.:** insult, abuse, reproach, 1  
**dēambulō (1):** to take a walk, walk off, 1  
**dēmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** drop, sink, 1  
**dēponō, -ere, -posui:** put down, deposit, 5  
**dictatūra, -ae f.:** dictatorship, 2  
**dignitās, -tatis f.:** worth, merit, worthiness, 2  
**diū:** a long time, long, 3  
**efficiō, -ere, -fecī, -fектus:** make, form, 4  
**effugiō, -ere, -fūgī:** flee away, escape, 2  
**exsecrō, -are, -atus sum:** to curse utterly, 1  
**exspectatiō, -tiōnis f.:** awaiting, expectation 1  
**foris, -is f.:** door, entrance, 2  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**īra, īrae f.:** anger, 3  
**līctor, līctōris m.:** lictor (bodyguard), 5  
**līmen, līminis n.:** threshold, doorway, 1

- 40 **paucīs post annīs:** *a few years later;*  
‘after by a few years’ abl. of degree of difference with the adverb *ante*  
**omnium:** subjective gen.  
41 **dēmissīs lictōribus:** abl. abs.  
42 **prīvātum:** *as a private citizen*  
**vidēns:** pres. pple  
**cuius:** whose; gen. sg.  
**modo:** *just now*  
43 **metuenda fuerat:** *had to be...;* ‘had been (going) to be feared’ pass. periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expressing necessity  
**nōn sōlum...sed etiam:** *not only...but also*

- maneō, -ēre, mansī:** to stay, wait, wait for, 7  
**metuō, -ere, -ui:** to fear, dread, 3  
**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 3  
**nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā:** no one, 6  
**occidō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus:** kill, cut down, 7  
**plācō (1):** to appease, soothe, allay, 1  
**posthāc:** after this, hereafter, 1  
**potens (1):** powerful; capable, 1  
**potestās, -tatis f.:** power; rule, sovereignty, 4  
**prīvātus, -ī m.:** private citizen, 6  
**queror, querī, questum:** complain, lament, 3  
**repente:** suddenly, unexpectedly, 1  
**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 4  
**stupeō, -ēre, -ui:** be astonished, astounded 1  
**tālis, -e:** such, the sort, 2  
**tot:** so many, 2  
**usque:** up to, until; all the way, 3

- 45 **quī audēret...:** *who...;* relative clause of characteristic with impf. subj. audeō  
**querī, exsecrārī:** dep. inf. queor, exsecrō  
**redeuntem:** pres. pple redeō  
46 **domūs:** *of...;* gen. sg. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. domus  
**cuius:** gen. sg. quī, quae, quod  
47 **potuerant:** plpf. possum  
**ūnīus adulēscēntis:** subjective gen. sg.; ūnus is a pronomial adj., –īus is the gen.  
48 **aequō animō:** *with a level head;* manner  
**tulit:** pf. ferō, ‘endure’ or ‘bear’  
**id tantum:** *this alone;* tantum is an adverb  
49 **ut...dēpōnat:** *that...;* noun result clause

## 27f. Lucius Cornelius Sulla

Sulla in vīllā voluptātibus dēditus reliquam vītam ēgit. Ibi 51  
morbō correptus mortuus est, vir ingentis animī, cupidus  
voluptātum, sed glōriae cupidior. Ante victōriam laudandus erat,  
sed in eīs quae secūta sunt numquam satis reprehēnsus; urbem  
enim et Italiam cīvīlis sanguinis flūminibus inundāvit. Nōn sōlum 55  
in vīvōs saeviit, sed nē mortuī quidem pepercit. Nam Gaiī Mariī,  
cuius quaestor fuerat, ērutōs cinerēs in flūmen prōiēcit. Quā  
crūdēlitātē factōrum ēgregiōrum glōriam corrūpit.

---

cinis, cineris m.: ash, 1

corripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum: snatch, seize, 1

corrumpō, -ēre, -rūpī, -ruptum: ruin, spoil 4

crūdēlitās, -tātis f.: cruelty, crueness, 3

cupidus, -a, -um: desirous, eager, keen, 3

dēdō, -ere: to give over, surrender, 7

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5

ēgregiūs, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7

ēruō, -ere, ēruī, ērutum: dig up, tear out, 1

Gaius, -ī m.: Gaius, 3

glōria, -ae, f.: glory, fame, 3

inundō (1): to overflow, run over, 1

laudō (1): to praise, glorify, 5

51 voluptātibus: to...; dat. ind. obj.

dēditus: having surrendered; a PPP middle (reflexive) in sense

ēgit: pf. agō; agere vītam is a common idiom: ‘to live life’ or ‘to spend life’

52 morbō: abl. of means

mortuus est: pf. dep. morior

ingentis animī: of...; gen. of description

53 voluptātum: for...; objective gen. pl.

glōriæ: for...; objective gen. with cupidior

cupidior: comparative adj.

laudantus erat: had to be...; ‘was going to be praised,’ past passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum)

54 in eīs: among those (victories)

secūta sunt: pf. dep. sequor

morbus, -ī m.: disease, sickness, illness, 3

numquam: never, 3

parcō, -ere, pepercī: spare, refrain (dat) 3

proiō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum: project forth 2

quaestor, -is m.: Quaestor 7

quidem: indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly 10

reliquo, -a, um: remaining, left , 6

reprehēndō, -ere, -dī: blame; hold back, 3

saeviō, -īre, -iī: to rage, rave, be angry, 2

sanguis, sanguinis m.: blood, 2

satis: enough, 5

vīlla, -ae f.: villa, cottage, 4

vīvus, -a, -um: alive, living, 3

54 reprehēnsus (erat): plpf. pass., add ‘erat’

cīvīlis sanguinis: gen. sg.; i.e. civil wars

55 nōn sōlum...sed: not only...but (also)

56 in vīvōs: against...

nē...quidem: not even...; this pair

emphasizes the intervening word

mortuīs: the dead; a substantive

Gaiī Mariī: gen. poss. with cinerēs

57 cuius: gen. sg. relative quī, quae, quod

ērūtōs: PPP ēruō

prōiēcit: Sulla is still subject; pf. proiō

Quā crūdēlitātē: by this...; connective relative: translate as demonstrative; abl. of means

58 factōrum: deeds; ‘things done’ gen. pl.; a substantive formed from the PPP of faciō

## 28a. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Gnaeus Pompeius bellō cīvīlī annōs vīgintī trēs nātus partēs 1  
Sullae secūtus est brevīque tempore sē ducem perītum praebuit.  
Imprīmīs mīlitibus cārus erat, quod nūllum labōrem vītābat atque  
cum omnibus saltū, cursū, lūctandō certābat. Coāctīs reliquīs eius  
exercitūs cui pater praefuerat ad Sullam ex Asiā advenientem 5  
contendit, et in itinere trēs hostium exercitūs aut superāvit aut sibi  
adiūnxit. Sulla imperātōrem tum salūtāvit semperque maximō  
honōre habuit.

Multīs post annīs imperium extraōrdinārium Pompeiō dēlātum  
est, ut opprimeret praedōnēs, quī omnia maria īfesta reddēbant et 10

adiungō, -ere, adiūnxī: to join to, connect, 1  
adveniō, -ire, -vēnt: to come to, approach, 4  
brevis, -e: short, brief, 5  
cārus, -a, -um: dear, precious, costly, 4  
certō (1): to contend, strive, complete, 2  
cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctūm: to collect, compel, 6  
contendō, -ere, -ī: strive; hasten; contend, 3  
cursus, -ūs m.: course, running, haste, 6  
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātūm: offer, give over 6  
ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
extraōrdinārius, -a, -um: uncommon, 1  
Gnaeus, -ī m.: Gnaeus, 2  
imprīmīs, in prīmīs: in particular, especially 3  
īnfestus, -a, -um: hostile, unsafe, 4  
labor, -is m.: labor, toil, 3

- 1 **bello cīvili:** *in...*; abl. of time when; *cīvīlī* is 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj. in the abl.  
2 **secūtus est:** pf. dep. sequor  
**brevī tempore:** *in...*; abl. time when  
**praebuit:** pf. *praebēō*, governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)  
3 **imprīmīs:** elsewhere in prīmīs  
**mīlitibus:** *to...*; dat. of interest  
**quod...:** because...; causal quod clause  
4 **saltū, cursū:** *in...in...*; abl. of respect  
**lūctandō:** *in...*; abl. of respect, a gerund (-ing)  
**coāctīs reliquīs:** abl. abs., PPP *cōgō*  
**eius:** *his*; gen. sg. i.e. Pompeius

**lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to wrestle, struggle, 1  
**mare, maris n.:** sea, 6  
**oppīmō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** oppress, overwhelm, 5  
**pereō, -ire, perīī:** to pass away, perish, 3  
**praebēō, -ērē, -ūī, -ītūm:** present, put forth, 4  
**praedo, -ōnis m.:** pirate, plunderer, 5  
**praesum, -esse, -fūī:** be over, preside over, 2  
**reddō -ere -dīdī -dditum:** give back, render 5  
**reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, left (over), 6  
**saltus, -ūs m.:** leap, jump, spring, 2  
**salūtō (1):** to greet, 2  
**semper:** always, ever, forever, 3  
**vīgintī:** twenty, 6  
**vītō (1):** avoid, evade, shun, 3

- exercitūs:** gen. sg. modifying reliquīs  
5 **cui:** *over...*; relative, dat. of compound verb; plpf. *praesum*  
**advenientem:** pres. pple modifying Sullam  
6 **trēs hostium exercitūs:** *trēs* modifies acc. pl. exercitūs; hostium is gen. pl.  
**aut...aut:** either...or  
**sibi:** *to...*; dat. of compound verb  
9 **multīs post annīs:** *many years later*; 'later by many years,' abl. of degree of difference  
**Pompeiō:** *to Pompey*; dat. ind. obj.  
**dēlātūm est:** pf. pass.  
10 **ut...praedōnēs:** (*namely*) that...; ind. command  
**reddēbant:** *were rendering, were making*; governs a double acc. (acc. obj. and acc. pred.)

## 28b. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

quāsdam etiam Italiae urbēs dīripuerant. Hoc bellum tantā 11  
celeritāte cōnfēcit ut intrā quadrāgintā diēs omnēs praedōnēs aut  
interficerentur aut sē dēderent.

Statim in Asiam magnō exercitū missus est contrā Mithridātem, 15  
Ponticum rēgem, quōcum Rōmānī aliquot annōs iam contendēbant.  
Rēx diū castrīs sē continuuit neque pugnandī facultātem dedit. Cum  
autem frūmentum dēficere coepisset, fugere cōnātus est. At  
Pompeius secūtus hostem tertīā nocte in saltū quōdam intercēpit  
lūnāque adiuvante fūdit. Nam cum Rōmānī lūnam ā tergō  
habērent, hostēs longīs umbrīs corporum Rōmānōrum dēceptī in 20  
umbrās tēla coniēcērunt. Victus Mithridātēs in Pontum profūgit.

**adiuvō** (1): to help, assist, 4

**aliquot**: several, 5

**celeritās, celeritātis** f.: speed, 2

**coniciō, -ere, -ēci:** throw together, hurl, 5

**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7

**contendō, -ere, -ī:** strive; hasten; contend, 3

**contineō, -ere, -nuī, -tentum:** contain, 3

**decipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** catch, deceive 1

**dēdō, -ere:** to give over, surrender, 7

**dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum:** fail, give out, 3

**dīripiō, -ere, -ūi, reptus:** snatch, ransom, 3

**diū:** a long time, long, 3

**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**exerceō, -ere, -ui, -ercitum:** exercise, 3

**facultās, -tatis** f.: opportunity, skill, ability, 1

**frūmentum, -ī n.:** grain, 3

**fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum:** to pour, shed, 4

**hīc:** here, 1

11 **tantā celeritāte:** with...; abl. of manner

12 **ut...dēderent:** that...; result clause with  
impf. subj.

**aut...aut:** either...or

14 **magnō exercitū:** with...; abl. of  
accompaniment

15 **quōcum:** cum quō...

**aliquot annōs:** for...; acc. of duration of  
time; aliquot is an indeclinable adj.

16 **castrīs:** in...; abl. means

**pugnandī:** for...; gen. sg., a gerund (-ing)  
**dedit:** pf. dō

17 **cum coepisset:** when...; plpf. subj. but  
simple past in sense

**intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** catch, 1

**intrā:** within, inside (acc.), 2

**longus -a, -um:** long, 2

**lūna, -ae n.:** moon, 3

**Mithridātēs, -is m.:** Mithridates, 7

**Mithridāticus, -a, -um:** Mithridatic, 2

**Ponticus, -a, -um:** of Pontus, 2

**pontus, -ī m.:** sea, 2

**praedo, -ōnis m.:** pirate, plunderer, 5

**pugnō** (1): to fight, 3

**quadrāgintā:** forty, 5

**saltus, -ūs m.:** leap, jump, spring, 2

**statim:** immediately, on the spot, at once, 5

**tēlum, -ī n.:** projectile, arrow, spear, 6

**tergum, -ī n.:** back, hide, rear, 1

**tertius, -a, -um:** third, 2

**umbra, -ae f.:** shadow, shade, 2

**cōnātus est:** pf. dep.

**At:** but; a strong adversative

18 **secūtus:** pf. dep. pple, as often, translate  
the pple as ‘having Xed’

**tertīa nocte:** abl. of time when

19 **lūnā adiuvante:** abl. abs. with pres. pple

**fūdit:** routed, overcame; else ‘poured’

**ā tergō:** from the rear; i.e. on their backs,  
the moon was behind them

20 **longīs umbrīs:** abl. of means

**dēceptī:** PPP dēcipiō modifying hostēs  
**in:** against...; toward...

21 **victus:** PPP vincō

## 28c. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Posteā dēsperātīs fortūnīs venēnō vītam fīnīre frūstrā cōnātus est; 22  
adversus enim venēna multīs anteā medicāmentīs corpus  
firmāverat. Impetrāvit inde ā mīlite Gallō ut sē gladiō interficeret.

Cum Tigrānēs, rēx Armeniae, celeriter sē dēdisset atque ad 25  
genua victōris prōcubuisset, Pompeius eum benignīs verbīs  
allocūtus est et diadēma, quod abiēcerat, capitī repōnere iussit.  
Inde Rōmānōrum pīmus Iūdaeōs vīcit Hierosolymaque, caput  
gentis, cēpit sāctissimamque partem templī iūre victōris ingressus  
est. 30

- abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum:** to throw away, 1  
**alloquor, loqui, locūtus:** to speak, address, 3  
**Armenia, -ae f.:** Armenia, 2  
**benignus, -a, -um:** kind, kindly, 3  
**celeriter:** swiftly, quickly, 5  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**dēspērō (1):** to despair, feel no hope, 3  
**diadēma, -ātis n.:** diadem, headress, crown, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**finiō, -ire, -iū: to limit, end, enclose, 2**  
**firmō (1):** make strong, strengthen, support, 3  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**frūstrā:** in vain, for nothing, 4  
**genu, -ūs n.:** knee, 1

- 22 **dēsperātīs fortūnīs:** abl. abs.  
**venēnō:** abl. means  
**cōnātus est:** pf. dep.  
23 **venēna:** acc. obj. of preposition adversus  
**multīs medicāmentīs:** means  
24 **ā mīlite Gallō:** from...; abl. of source  
**ut...interficeret:** that...; noun result clause  
25 **cum...dēdisset...prōcubuisset:** when...;  
plpf. subj.  
**sē dēdisset:** i.e. surrendered to Pompey  
26 **genua:** neuter pl. 4<sup>th</sup> decl. noun  
**benignīs verbīs:** abl. means  
27 **allocūtus est:** pf. dep. alloquor  
**quod:** which...; the antecedent is neuter

- gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 6  
**Hierosolyma, -ōrum n.:** Jerusalem, 1  
**impetrō (1):** attain (by asking), accomplish, 3  
**ingredior, -gredī, ingressum:** step in, enter, 4  
**Iūdaeus, -a, -um:** Judean, 1  
**medicāmentum, -ī n.:** drug, remedy, 1  
**prōcumbō, -ere, -cubūt:** fall forward, 1  
**repōnō, -ere, -posūt:** to place or put back, 2  
**sanctus, -a, -um:** sacred, holy, 2  
**templum, -ī n.:** temple, 5  
**Tigrānēs, -is m.:** Tigranes, 1  
**venēnum, -ī n.:** poison, 3  
**victor, -ōris m.:** conquerer, vanquisher, 2

- sg. diadēma  
**capitī:** back on...; dat. of compound; use the prefix (re-) as a preposition and the dat. as the object  
**iussit:** pf. iubeō  
28 **Rōmānōrum:** among...; partitive gen.  
**pīmus:** for the first time; i.e. he was the first to...  
**vīcit:** pf. vincō  
**caput:** i.e. capitol city  
**Hiersolyma:** acc. pl.; the name refers to a single city but is plural in form  
29 **iūre:** by the right...  
**ingressus est:** pf. dep. ingredior

## 28d. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

Regressus in Italiam triumphum ex Asiā ēgit, cum anteā ex Africā 31 et ex Hispāniā triumphāvisset. Triumphus illūstrior fuit grātiorque populō, quod Pompeius nōn armātus, sīcūt Sulla, ad Rōmam subigendam, sed dīmissō exercitū redīsset.

Posteā, ortā inter Pompeium et Caesarem gravī dissēnsiōne, 35 quod hic superiōrem, ille parem ferre nōn poterat, bellum cīvile exārsit. Caesar īfestō exercitū in Italiam vēnit. Pompeius, relictā urbe ac deinde Italiā ipsā, Thessaliam petīvit et cum eō cōnsulēs senātūsque magna pars; quem īsecūtus Caesar apud Pharsālum aciē fūdit. Victus Pompeius ad Ptolemaeum, Aegyptī rēgem, cui 40

aciēs, -ēi f.: sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
Aegyptus, -ī m.: Egypt, 2  
ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsum: be on fire, burn, 1  
armātus, -a, -um: armed, 5  
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missus: dismiss, let go 5  
dissensio, -siōnis f.: conflict, dissension, 3  
eō, īre, iī, itūrus: go, 2  
exardeō, -ēre, exārsi: to burn, be on fire, 1  
exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -ercitum: exercise, 3  
fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum: to pour, shed, 4  
grātus, -a, -um: pleasing, grateful, 4  
hic: here, 1

- 31 **Regressus**: pf. dep. pple; as often, this pple is translated actively: ‘having Xed’ ēgit: conducted; pf. agō  
32 **cum...triumphāvisset**: when...; plpf. subj. **illūstrior, grātior**: comparative adj.; grātus has two meanings: (1) ‘grateful’ or (2) ‘pleasing’  
33 **populo**: to...; dat. of reference **quod...redīsset**: because...; ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view; plpf. subj. redeō  
**ad Rōmam subigendam**: for...; perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate this noun + gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.; subigō (sub + agō)  
34 **dīmissō exercitū**: abl. abs.  
35 **posteā**: i.e. in 49 BCE  
**ortā...dissaensiōne**: abl. abs., ortā is a pf. dep. pple translated actively: ‘having Xed’ **gravī**: abl. sg. 3<sup>rd</sup> decl. i-stem adj.  
36 **quod hic superiōrem (ferre nōn**

**illūstris, -e**: distinguished, illustrious, 2  
**īfestus, -a, -um**: hostile, unsafe, 4  
**īsequor, -sequi, -secūtus**: follow, ensue, 3  
**Pharsālus, -ī m.**: Pharsalus (Greek town), 1  
**Ptolemaeus, -ī m.**: Ptolemy, 2  
**regredior, -i, aggressus sum**: step back, 3  
**sicut**: just as, as, so as, 2  
**subigō, -ere, -ēgi**: drive up, conquer, subdue 1  
**superus, -a, -um**: upper, higher, above, 3  
**Thessalia, -ae f.**: Thessaly (northern Greece) 1  
**triumphō (1)**: to celebrate a triumph, 4  
**Triumphus, -ī m.**: triumph (parade), 4

- poterat et) ille parem ferre nōn poterat**: because this one... (and) that one...; hic, ‘this one’ refers to the closest term, Caesar, and ille, ‘that one,’ refers to the farther term, Pompey; ferre is inf. ferō, ‘endure;’ supply omitted words (ferre nōn poterat et) to create parallel clauses  
**superiōrem, parem**: a superior...an equal; treat these adjectives as substantives  
37 **exārsit**: burst into flames; inceptive pf.  
**īfestō exercitū**: with...; accompaniment  
**relictā urbe...ipsā**: abl. abs.  
38 **et...-que**: both...and  
**cum eō**: i.e. Pompey  
39 **senātūs**: gen. sg. 4<sup>th</sup> decl.  
**quem**: this one; a connective relative  
**īsecūtus**: pf. dep. pple īsequor  
**apud**: at...; a town in northern Greece  
40 **aciē**: means  
**fūdit**: routed, overcame; ‘poured’  
**victus**: PPP vincō  
**cui**: dat. sg. quī, quae, quod

## 28e. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus

tūtor ā senātū datus erat, profūgit; ille Pompeium interfici iussit. 41  
Ita Pompeius sub oculīs uxōris et līberōrum interfectus est, caput  
praecīsum, truncus in Nīlum coniectus. Deinde caput ad Caesarem  
dēlātum est, quī eō visō lacrimās nōn continuit.

Is fuit Pompeiī vītae exitus post trēs cōnsulātūs et totidem 45  
triumphōs.

---

**coniciō, -ere, -iēcī:** throw together, hurl, 5  
**cōnsulātūs, -ūs m.:** consulship 6  
**contineō, -ere, -nuī, -tentum:** contain, 3  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum:** carry away/off, 6  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**eō, īre, ī , itūrus:** go, 2  
**exitus, -ī m.:** end , death; departure, 3  
**lacrima, -ae f.:** tear, 2

**līberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 3  
**Nīlus, -ī m.:** Nile river, 1  
**oculus, -ī, m.:** eye, 1  
**praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum:** cut off, 3  
**totidem:** so many as, as many, 2  
**Triumphus, -ī m.:** Triumph , 4  
**truncus, -ī m.:** trunk , stem, 1  
**tūtor, -ōris m.:** guardian; defender, 2

Ille: i.e. Ptolemy  
**Pompeium interfici:** *that...*; ind. dis. with  
pass. inf. interficiō  
**iussit:** pf. iubeō  
42 **sub:** before...  
43 **praecīsum (est):** 3s pf. pass., add ‘est’

caput is neuter sg. subject  
**truncus:** i.e. the rest of his body  
**coniectus (est):** 3s pf. pass., add ‘est’  
44 **eō visō:** abl. abs., eō is a demonstrative  
pronoun, ‘this,’s referring to the caput  
45 **Is:** *this;* subject

## 29a. Gaius Julius Caesar

C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum familiā nātus, agēns 1  
 annum sextum et decimum, patrem āmīsit. Ā puerō vidētur  
 populārem factiōnem in rē pūblicā secūtus esse, eō magis quod  
 Marius Iūliam, Caesaris amitam, in mātrimōnium dūxisset. Ipse  
 Cornēliam dūxit uxōrem, filiam Cinnae, quī Sullae inimīcissimus 5  
 erat. Cum Sulla victor Caesarem, sīcut multōs aliōs, iussisset  
 uxōrem repudiāre, ille recūsāvit. Bonīs deinde spoliātus, cum  
 etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste, nocte urbe ēlapsus est.  
 Quamquam tum quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās  
 noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur, et dēnique ā Sullae lībertō 10

---

- amita, -ae f.:** father's sister, aunt, 1  
**āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum:** lose, let go, 6  
**C.:** Gaius, 5  
**Cinna, -ae m.:** Cinna, 2  
**cōgō, -ere, -ēgi, -actum:** to collect, compel, 6  
**commūtō (1):** to change, exchange, 2  
**Cornēlia, -ae f.:** Cornelia, 3  
**decimus, -a, -um:** tenth, 2  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**ēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**elābor, -lābī, -lapsum:** slip or slide away, 2  
**eō, ire, ī , itūrus:** go, 2  
**factiō, factiōnis f.:** faction, party, 6  
**familia, -ae f.:** family, household, 2  
**inimīcus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 6  
**Iūlia, -ae f.:** Julia, 2  
**Iūlius, -i m.:** Julius, 4  
**labōrō (1):** work, toil, labor, strive, 1  
**latebra, -ae f.:** hiding-place, lair, 1

- 1 **nōbilissimā...familiā:** from...; abl. source  
**nātus:** PPP nascor  
**agēns:** pres. pple; agō 'spend' or 'live'  
 2 **sextum et decimum:** single ordinal number  
**āmīsit:** pf. āmittō  
**Ā puerō:** from boyhood  
**vidētur:** the passive videor is often  
 translated as the linking verb 'seem'  
 3 **secūtus esse:** pf. dep. inf. sequor  
**eō magis:** all the more; a common phrase;  
 eō is abl. of degree of difference 'by this  
 (much)'  
 4 **ipse:** he himself; intensive, i.e. Caesar  
 5 **dūxit:** i.e. in mātrimōnium  
**Sullae:** dat. of special adj.

- lībertus, -i m.:** freedman (freed slave), 2  
**magis:** more, 7  
**mātrimōnium, -ii n.:** marriage, 7  
**morbus, -i m.:** disease, sickness, illness, 3  
**mutō (1):** to change, alter, 3  
**necō (1):** to kill, slay, put to death, 6  
**populāris, -e:** of the people, popular, 4  
**prope:** nearly almost; near , 5  
**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum:** to seek,  
 ask, inquire, 6  
**quārtāna, -ae f.:** a fever, quartan fever, 1  
**recūsō (1):** refuse, give a reason against, 5  
**repudiō (1):** to reject, repudiate, 1  
**sextus, -a, -um:** sixth, 2  
**sicut:** just as, as, so as, 2  
**singulus, -a, -um:** one by one, separate, 2  
**spoliō (1):** to despoil, plunder, 5  
**vestis, -is f.:** clothing, 3

- 6 **cum...iussisset:** when...; cum clause with  
 plpf. subj. iubeō  
**victor:** as victor; nom. apposition  
 7 **bonīs:** from...; abl. of separation; neuter  
 pl. bona is a substantive that means 'goods'  
 'property,' or 'possessions'  
**spoliātus:** modifying Caesar, the subject  
**cum...quaererētur:** impf. pass. subj.  
**ad necem:** for...; expressing purpose  
 8 **mūtātā veste:** abl. abs.  
**nocte:** at...; abl. time when  
**urbe:** from...; abl. separation  
 9 **morbō:** abl. means with gen. quārtānae  
**labōrābat:** he struggled...  
 10 **ā...lībertō:** by...; abl. of agent

## 29b. Gaius Julius Caesar

comprehēnsus est. Eī vix, datā pecūniā, persuāsit ut sē dīmitteret. 11  
 Postrēmō per propinquōs et affīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis tamen cōnstat Sullam monuisse eōs quī adulēscētī veniam petēbant eum aliquandō nōbilium partibus exitiō futūrum esse; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse. 15

Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit, ubi in expugnātiōne Mytilēnārum corōnā cīvīcā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tum clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trānsit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita 20

**affinis, -e:** neighboring; related, 1

**aliquandō:** sometimes, at some time, 3

**Apollōnius, -ī m.:** Apollonius, 1

**cīvīcūs, -a, -um:** civic, civil, of a citizen, 1

**comprehēndō, -ere, dī, -prehensum:** to grasp, seize, 5

**constō, -stāre, -stītī:** stand firm; is agreed, 5

**corōna, -ae f.:** crown, garland, 1

**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus:** dismiss, let go 5

**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**exitium, -ī n.:** (source of) destruction, 2

**expugnātiō, -ōnis f.:** taking by assault, 1

**hūc:** to this place, hither, here 1

**impetrō (1):** attain , accomplish, 3

**insum, -esse, -fuī:** to be in, 2

**māgister, -ī m.:** Master; helmsman, teacher 6

**manēō, -ēre, mansī:** to stay, wait, wait for, 7

**Molo, Molōnis m.:** Molo, 2

**moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum:** to warn, 4

**Mytilēnae, -ārum f.:** Mytilene (town), 1

**opera, -ae f.:** effort, exertion, work, 3

**ōtium, -ī n.:** leisure, peace, 1

**postrēmō:** at last, finally, last of all, 3

**praedo, -ōnis m.:** pirate, plunderer, 5

**prope:** nearly almost; near , 5

**propinquus, -a, -um:** near, neighboring, 1

**quadrāgintā:** forty, 5

**Rhodos, -ī f.:** Rhodes (island), 2

**satis:** enough, 5

**sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī:** go away, withdraw, 2

**spatium, -ī n.:** space; span of time, 1

**stipendium, -ī n.:** pay; military service, 3

**vix:** with difficulty, with effort, scarcely, 4

11 **Eī:** him; i.e. the freedman; dat. ind. obj. of persuāsit; Caesar is the subject

**datā pecūniā:** abl. abs.

**ut...dīmitteret:** that...; ind. command

12 **satis:** sufficiently; adv.

13 **cōnstat:** it is agreed; impersonal verb

**Sullam monuisse:** that...; ind. disc., pf. inf.

moneō governing an acc. obj. and ind. disc.

**eōs quī:** those who...

**adulēscētī:** for...; dat. interest; i.e. Caesar

14 **eum...futūrum esse:** that...; ind. disc.

with fut. inf. sum governed by monuisse

**nōbilium:** gen. pl. modifying partibus

14 **partibus exitiō:** as a source of destruction

for the factions; or with the inf. of sum:

‘serve as a source of ...;’ double dative (dat.

of purpose and dat. of interest)

**nam...inesse:** second ind. disc. governed by monuisse

15 **Caesarī: in...;** dat. of compound verb

**Mariōs:** Mariuses; i.e. many with the same

character as Marius

16 **fēcit:** (Caesar) completed...

17 **corōna cīvīcā:** with...; dōnō, ‘bestow,’

can govern an acc. and dat. or an abl. of means: ‘bestow with...’

**Mortuō Sullā:** abl. abs., subj. and pred.

supply the pple ‘being;’ mortuus, ‘dead,’ is an adj. from the PPP of morior

**statuit:** he decided

18 **ut...daret:** so that...; purpose, impf. dō

**dīcendī:** gen. sg. of the gerund (-ing)

20 **apud eōs:** among them

**quadrāgintā diēs:** for...; acc. of duration

## 29c. Gaius Julius Caesar

sē gessit ut praedōnibus pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. 21  
Redēmptus inde ab amīcīs classem contrāxit captōsque praedōnēs  
cruce affēcit, quod supplicium saepe inter iocum minātus erat.

Quaestōrī ulterior Hispānia obvēnit. Aedilis praeter comitium ac forum etiam Capitōlium īrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque apparātissimōs et cum collēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātim ēdedit. Hīs rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque aes aliēnum cōflāvit ut ipse dīceret sibi opus esse mīliēns sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

**aedilis, -is m.:** aedile (city manager), 3

**aes, aeris n.:** bronze, 2

**afficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum:** to affect, afflict, 2

**aliēnus, -a, -um:** of another, foreign, 5

**amīcus, -ī m.:** friend, 4

**apparātus, -a, -um:** prepared; equipped, 1

**Bibulus, -a, -um:** Bibulus, 4

**Capitōlium, -ī n.:** Capitolium, 5

**classis, -is f.:** fleet, 4

**collēga, -ae m.:** colleague, partner, 5

**comitium, -ī n.:** meeting, assembly, 4

**cōflō (1):** blow up; kindle, arouse, 1

**contrahō, -ere, -trāxi:** draw together, 2

**crux, crucis f.:** cross, frame for torture, 1

**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum:** pour out, shed, 3

**hīc:** here, 1

**lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6

**M.:** Marcus, 5

21 **sē gessit:** behaved; ‘carried himself’

**ut...esset:** that...; result clause, impf. subj.  
sum

**praedōnibus...venerātiōnīque:** equally as  
a terror and source of veneration for the  
pirates; or with esset: ‘served as a  
terror...’ a double dative (dat. of interest +  
two instances of dat. of purpose)

22 **redēmptus:** PPP, Caesar is subject

23 **cruce affēcit:** he crucified

**quod supplicium:** which punishment...;  
relative adj.

**minātus erat:** plpf. dep. minor

24 **Quaestōrī...obvēnit:** Farther Spain came  
to (Caesar) as quaestor; dat. compound

**mīliēns:** a thousand times, 1

**minor, -āre, -ātus sum:** threaten, menace, 1

**obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum:** come to, 2

**ōrnō (1):** to adorn, furnish, 2

**patrimōnium, -ī n.:** inheritance, patrimony, 1

**porticus, -ī m.:** portico, colonnade, 1

**praedo, -ōnis m.:** pirate, plunderer, 5

**praeter:** in addition to, besides; except (acc) 2

**quaestor, -is m.:** Quaestor 7

**redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -mptum:** buy/take back 6

**saepe:** often, 3

**sēparātim:** separately, 1

**sēstertius, ī (gen. pl. iūm):** sesterce (coin), 1

**supplicium, -īfī n.:** punishment, supplication, 5

**terror, terrōris m.:** terror, fright, 4

**ulterior, -ius:** farther, 1

**vēnātio, -ōnis f.:** hunting, the chase, 1

**venerātio, -tiōnis f.:** reverence, veneration, 1

24 **Aedilis:** Caesar, as aedile,...; subject

**praeter...forum:** in addition to...

25 **porticibus:** abl. means

26 **et...et...:** both...and...

27 **Hīs rēbus:** because of...; abl. of cause

**aes aliēnum:** debt; ‘another’s bronze’

28 **ut...dīceret:** that...; result clause, impf.

subj. dīcō

**ipse:** he himself

**opus esse...:** that there is a need...; ind.

disc.; opus est, ‘there is a need...’ is an  
idiom that governs a dat. of interest (for...) and either an abl. or nom. of the thing

needed

**ut...nihil:** so that...; result clause

## 29d. Gaius Julius Caesar

Posteā societātem cum Gnaeō Pompeiō et Marcō Crassō iūnxit, nē 30  
quid agerētur in rē pūblicā, quod displicēret ūllī ex tribus. Cōnsul  
deinde creātus cum M. Bibulō prīmus omnium cōnsulum īnstituit  
ut diurna ācta et senātūs et populī perscrīberentur atque ēderentur.  
Aliquot lēgēs prō Pompeiō et Crassō sociīs pertulit, praecipueque 35  
effēcit ut ipse prōvinciam Galliam obtinēret. Bibulus, cum frūstrā  
lēgibus obstisisset, per reliquum annī tempus domī abdītus, Cūriā  
abstinuit. Nōnnūllī igitur, cum tabulās signārent, per iocum  
addidērunt nōn Caesare et Bibulō, sed Iūliō et Caesare cōnsulib⁹.

---

**abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** to hide, put away, 2  
**abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** to keep away, 1  
**addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 7  
**aliquot:** several, 5  
**Bibulus, -a, -um:** Bibulus, 4  
**Crassus, ī m.:** Crassus, 3  
**Cūria, -ae f.:** senate house, Curia, 8  
**displiceō, -ere, -uī:** to displease, dissatisfy, 1  
**diurnus, -a, -um:** by day, during the day, 1  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**efficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectus:** make, form, 4  
**frūstrā:** in vain, for nothing, 4  
**Gallia, -ae f.:** Gaul, 3  
**Gnaeus, -ī m.:** Gnaeus, 2  
**iocus, -ī m.:** joke, 2  
**Iūlius, -ī m.:** Julius, 4  
**iungō, -ere, iunxī, -iunctum:** to join, 2

**legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**M.:** Marcus, 5  
**Marcus, -ī m.:** Marcus, 4  
**nōnnūllus, -a, -um:** some, several, 2  
**obstō, -are, -stītī:** stand in the way, oppose  
(dat), 1  
**obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** hold, maintain, 2  
**perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus:** carry, endure, 4  
**perscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī:** write in detail, 1  
**praecipuē:** especially, 2  
**prōvincia, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**reliquo, -a, um:** remaining, left , 6  
**signō (1):** to mark out, designate, 1  
**societās, -tātis f.:** association, alliance, 5  
**socius, -ī m.:** comrade, companion; ally, 7  
**tabula, -ae f.:** tablet, 2  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 4

30 **nē quid agerētur.:** so that not anything...;  
neg. purpose; quis, quid is indefinite  
before sī, nisi, num, and nē  
31 **quod:** which...; the antecedent is quid  
**ūllī:** to anyone; dat. sg. of reference, ūllus is  
a pronomial with -īus in gen. and -ī in dat.  
**Cōnsul:** nom. pred. governed by PPP creō  
**tribus:** abl. pl. trēs; i.e. Pompey, Crassus  
and Caesar, members of the 1<sup>st</sup> triumvirate  
32 **omnium cōnsulum:** partitive gen. pl.  
33 **ut...ēderentur:** that...; noun result clause  
impf. pass. subj. ēdō, ēdere  
**diuerna ācta:** daily actions; nom. neut. pl.  
**et...et...:** both...and...; both gen. sg.  
34 **prō:** on behalf of  
**sociīs:** in apposition to Pompeiō, Crassō  
**pertulit:** carried through; i.e. passed  
**effēcit:** brought it about

35 **ut...obtinēret:** that...; noun result clause  
following effēcit  
**cum...obstisisset:** cum clause, plpf. subj.  
obstō  
36 **lēgibus:** dat. of compound verb  
**domī:** at home; locative, place where  
**Cūriā:** from...; abl. of separation  
38 **Caesar et Bibulō (cōnsulibus):** in the  
consulship of Caesar and Bibulus; ‘Caesar  
and Bibulus (being) consuls,’ abl. abs., add  
the pple ‘being;’ the Romans dated each  
year by the two consuls  
**Iūliō et Caesare cōnsulibus:** see above for  
translation; the joke here is that Iūlius and  
Caesar are not two different people but one  
in the same person: Gaius Julius Caesar,  
who seemingly monopolized the consulship  
and left Bibulus to play a minor role

## 29e. Gaius Julius Caesar

Caesar, cōnsulātū perāctō, novem annīs Galliam in potestātem populi Rōmānī redēgit. Germānōs quoque aggressus est atque p̄imus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum in Britanniā trānsiit. Ipse commentāriōs rērum gestārum cōnfēcit, quibus aliōs ūtī in scrībendā historiā voluit. Sed, ut ait Cicero, “Sānōs quidem hominēs ā scrībendō dēterrūt; nihil est enim in historiā pūrā et illūstrī brevitāte commentāriōrum dulcius.”

45

Cum intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus esset, et mortua Iulia, Caesaris fília, quae nūpta Pompeiō generī sacerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam p̄īdem Pompeiō

aemulātiō, -tiōnis f.: rivalry, jealousy, envy, 1	illūstris, -e: distinguished, illustrious, 2
aggreḍior, -i, -gressus: go to, attack, 3	intereā: meanwhile, meantime, 1
āiō: say, assert, 1	Iūlia, -ae f.: Julia, 2
brevitās, -tatis f.: shortness, brevity, 1	novem: nine, 2
Britannia, -ae f.: Britain, 1	nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, -ptum: veil 1
commentārius, -i m.: commentary, 2	Parthī, -ōrum m.: Parthians, 2
cōnsulātūs, -ūs m.: consulship 6	peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum: to drive through 1
Crassus, i m.: Crassus, 3	potestās, -tatis f.: power; rule, sovereignty, 4
dēterreō, -ere, -ui: frighten off, prevent, 3	p̄īdem: long before, long ago, 1
dulcis, -e: sweet; pleasant, free, 1	pūrus, -a, -um: clean, pure, free from dirt, 1
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5	redigō-ere -ēgī -āctum: drive back, 3
ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī: burst, break out, 2	sanus, -a, -um: sound, whole, healthy, 1
Gallia, -ae f.: Gaul, 3	scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scriptum: to write, 6
gener, generī m.: son-in-law, 1	socer, socerī m.: father-in- law, 1
Germānī, -ōrum m.: Germans, 1	statim: immediately, on the spot, at once, 5
historia, -ae f.: narrative, story, account, 2	ūtor, ūtī, ūsum: to use, employ, enjoy (abl.) 5
homō, -inis m/f.: man, mortal, human, 4	

39 cōnsulātū perāctō: abl. abs.

novem annīs: within...; abl. time within

40 aggressus est: pf. dep. aggredior

41 trānsiit: pf. trānseō

imperātōrum Rōmānōrum: of Roman commanders

ipse: he himself; intensive

42 rērum gestārum: of things done; ‘things having been carried out,’ PPP gerō

quibus: which...; abl. object of inf. ūtor

ūtī: pres dep. inf. ūtor

in scrībendā historiā: Perform a gerund-gerundive flip and translate the gerundive + noun as a gerund (-ing) + obj.

43 ut: as...; clause of comparison

44 ā scrībendō: from...; abl. of separation  
abl. sg. of a gerund (-ing)

enim: for...; or ‘indeed,’ postpositive:

translate first in the sentence

pūrā et illūstrī brevitāte: than...; abl. of comparison

45 commentāriōrum: of the commentaries; Caesar’s work is called the *Commentarii*

dulcius: nom. pred. neut. comparative adj.

46 Cum...interfectus esset: when...; cum clause with plpf. pass. subj.

apud: among...

mortua (esset): had died; dep. morior

47 nūpta: PPP nūbō

Pompeiō: for Pompey; dat. of interest with

nūpta; i.e. married to Pompey

generī sacerīque: for...; dat. interest

Iam p̄īdem...erant: had long before now been; translate as plpf. progressive

## 29f. Gaius Julius Caesar

suspectae Caesaris opēs erant, et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās gravis. Dēnique Caesar, ut sē tuērētur, postulāvit ut ex lēge ante lātā sibi absentī alterum cōsulātum petere licēret. Hoc inimīcī, Pompeiō probante, negāvērunt atque iussērunt Caesarem ante certam diem exercitū prōvinciamque trādere.

Iniūriā incēnsus, ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae finis erat, cum exercitū prōcessit. Ibi paulum morātus, ut fāma fert, 55 “Etiam nunc,” inquit, “regredī possumus; quod sī hoc flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt.” Postrēmō exclāmāvit: “Iacta est ālea.” Tum, exercitū flūmen trāductō bellōque cīvīlī

**absum, -esse, āfui:** to be away, be absent, 5  
**ālea, -ae f.:** die, one of 2 dice; game of dice, 1  
**alter, -era, -erum:** other , second, 7  
**certus, -a, -um:** certain, reliable, sure, 6  
**cōsulātus, -ūs m.:** consulship 6  
**dēnique:** lastly, finally, 7  
**dignitās, -tātis f.:** worth, merit, worthiness, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**exclāmō (1):** to shout out, shout, 2  
**exerceō, -ere, -uit, -ercitum:** exercise, 3  
**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7  
**finis, -is m./f.:** end, border; territory, 3  
**hic:** here, 1  
**iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum:** throw, cast, 2  
**incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 7  
**inimīcūs, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 6  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 5  
**licet, -ere, -uit:** it is allowed, it is permitted, 3

49 **iam prīdem... ...erant:** had long before now been; past progressive  
**suspectae:** mistrusted; pred. adj.  
**Caesarī:** for...; dat. of interest  
50 **(erat) gravis:** nom. pred., supply erat  
**ut...tuērētur:** so that...; purpose; impf. pass. subj. tueor  
**ut...licēret:** that it...; ind. command  
51 **lātā:** passed; PPP ferō: ferre lēgem is an idiom for proposing or passing a law  
**sibi:** for...; dat. of interest, i.e. Caesar  
**absentī:** while...; dat. sg. pres. pple absum  
**inimīcī:** rivals; nom. subj.  
52 **Pompeiō probante:** although...; abl. abs.  
**Caesarem...trādere:** that...; ind. disc.  
54 **iniūriā:** abl. means

**moror, -ārti, -ātus:** delay, linger; detain, 1  
**negō (1):** to deny, say that...not, refuse, 4  
**ops, opis f.:** power; pl. resources, influence, 6  
**paulus, -a, -um:** little, small, 6  
**Pompeiānus –a -um:** Pompeian, of Pompey 2  
**postrēmō:** at last, finally, last of all, 3  
**postulō (1):** demand, claim, request, ask, 5  
**probō (1):** approve, 4  
**prōcēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum; proceed,** 4  
**prōvinciā, -ae f.:** province, 7  
**regredior, -ī, aggressus sum:** step back, 3  
**Rubico, -ōnis m.:** Rubicon river, 1  
**suspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum:** look at; suspect, mistrust, 1  
**trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum:** hand over, give, 7  
**trāducō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum:** lead over, 3  
**tueor, tuērī:** to look over or after, guard, 2

**incēnsus:** i.e. angered; PPP, Caesar subject  
**finis:** the border; the river is the borderline between the province Cisalpine Gaul (Northern Italy) and the rest of Italy  
55 **paulum:** a little; adverbial acc. (inner acc.)  
31 **morātus:** pf. dep. pple moror, as often, translate as ‘having Xed’  
**ut fāma fert:** as the story reports  
56 **regredī:** dep. inf. regredior  
**quod sī: but if...;** ‘as for this’ acc. respect  
56 **sī trānsierimus...erunt:** if...we cross, ...will; fut. more vivid (sī fut. (pf.), fut.); translate the fut. pf. as pres. with fut. sense  
57 **agenda erunt:** will have to be...; ‘will be (going) to be done; fut. passive periphrastic  
58 **exercitū...trāductō:** abl. abs.

## 29g. Gaius Julius Caesar

inceptō, Brundisium profectus est, quō Pompeius cum magnā parte senatūs profūgerat. Pompeium trānsīre in Ēpīrum prohibēre frūstrā 60 cōnātus, iter in Hispāniām fēcit, ubi validissimās Pompeiī cōpiās vīcit.

Deinde in Ēpīrum profectus, Pompeium Pharsālicō proeliō superāvit et fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus est. Ptolemaeum rēgem, quī Pompeium interficī iusserat īnsidiāsque Caesārī 65 tendēbat, vīcit atque rēgnū Cleopātrāe frātrīque minōrī permīsit. Pharnacem, Mithridātis fīliū, quī occāsiōne temporū ad rebellandum ūtēbātur, tam cito fūdit ut celeritātem victōriāe posteā

---

Aegyptus, -ī m.: Egypt, 2

Brundisium, -ī n.: Brundisium, Brindisi, 1

celeritās, celeritātis f.: speed, 2

cito: quickly, speedily, 1

Cleopatra, -ae f.: Cleopatra, 1

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum: to try, attempt, 7

cōpia, -ae f.: abundance, supply; troops, 5

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5

Ēpirus, -ī m.: Epirus, 3

frūstra: in vain, for nothing, 4

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum: to pour, shed, 4

incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, 5

insidiae, -ārum f.: ambush, trap, 2

59 bellō...inceptō: abl. abs. PPP incipiō

Brundisium: place to which

quō... to where; an adverb introducing a relative clause

60 trānsīre: (*from*) crossing; governed by prohibēre; Pompeium is obj. of prohibēre

61 cōnātus: pf. dep. pple cōnor; as often translate as ‘having Xed’

cōpiās: *troops*; elsewhere ‘supplies’

62 vīcit: pf. vincō

63 profectus: pf. dep. pple proficīscor, as often translate as ‘having Xed’

64 persecūtus est: pf. dep. persecuor

interfici: pass. inf.

Mithridātēs, -is m.: Mithridates, 7

occāsio, -onis f.: opportunity, right moment, 2

parvus, -a, -um: small, 4

permittō -ere -mīsī -missum: send through, entrust, 3

Pharnaces, -is m.: Pharnaces, 1

Pharsālicus, -a, -um: of Pharsalus, 1

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus: keep off, prohibit, 1

Ptolemaeus, -ī m.: Ptolemy, 2

rebellō (1): to wage war against, rebel, 1

tendō, -ere, tendī, tentum: stretch, strive, 1

ūtor, ūtī, ūsum: to use, employ, enjoy (abl.) 5

validus, -a, -um: strong, stout, vigorous, 1

65 iusserat: plpf. iubeō

Caesārī: for...; dat. of interest

66 tendēbat: was laying out

vīcit: pf. vincō

Cleopātrāe...minōrī: to...; dat. ind. obj.; minōrī here means ‘lesser (by birth)’ or simply ‘younger’

ad rebellandum: for...; expressing purpose acc. sg. of a gerund (-ing)

68 ūtēbātur: deponent with abl. obj. (means)

fūdit: routed, overcame; ‘poured’

ut...significārent: that...; result clause with impf. subj.

## 29h. Gaius Julius Caesar

tribus verbīs significāret, “Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.” Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, quī reliquiās Pompeiānārum partium in Āfricā coēgerat, dēvīcit. Postrēmō Pompeiī filiōs in Hispāniā superāvit; quod proelium tam ācre tamque dubium fuit ut Caesar equō dēscenderet cōsistēnsque ante suōs cēdentēs fortūnam increpāret, quod sē in eum exitum servāset, dēnūntiāretque mīlitibus vēstīgiō sē nōn recessūrum. Verēcundiā magis quam 75 virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Rōmam inde rediit, ubi quater triumphāvit.

**ācer, ācris, ācre:** sharp; fierce, keen, 4  
**aciēs, -ēi f.:** sharp edge, battle line, army, 6  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum:** move; withdraw, give up, 4  
**cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum:** to collect, compel, 6  
**cōsistō, -ere, -stiti:** to stand still, stop, 1  
**dēnuntiō, (1):** declare, order 2  
**dēscendō, -ere, -ndī:** to climb down, 1  
**dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī:** to conquer, overcome, 2  
**dubius, -a, -um:** doubtful, wavering, 1  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**equus, -ī m.:** horse, 3  
**exitus, -ī m.:** end (of life), death; departure, 3  
**fortūna, -ae f.:** fortune, chance, luck, 4  
**increpō, -āre, -uī:** chide, rebuke; rustle, 1

69 **tribus verbīs:** abl. means; abl. pl. trēs Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī: three 1s pf. veniō, videō, vincō with asyndeton (no conjunctions) in order to suggest speed and decisiveness  
**Scīpiōnem:** Scipio (*Metellus*); a senator defeated along with Cato in Thapsus (N. Africa) in 46 BC  
70 70 **reliquiās:** the survivors; ‘remaining factions’ fem. pl. because of fem. pl. partēs  
71 **coēgerat:** plpf. cōgō, ‘gather’  
**dēvīcit:** pf. dēvincō  
72 **quod proelium:** which...; relative adj.  
**ācre:** neuter nom. sg. ācer  
**ut...dēscenderet...dēnūntiāretque:** that...; result clause with impf. subj.  
73 **equō:** from...; abl. of separation  
**cōsistēns:** standing together; pres. pple

**Iuba, -ae m.:** Iuba (king of Numidians), 1  
**magis:** more, 7  
**Numidia, -ae f.:** Numidia, 3  
**Pompeiānus, -a, -um:** Pompeian, of P., 2  
**postrēmō:** at last, finally, last of all, 3  
**quater:** four times, 1  
**recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum:** go back, withdraw, 1  
**reliquus, -a, um:** remaining, left (over), 6  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 7  
**significō (1):** show, point out, indicate, 1  
**triumphō (1):** celebrate a triumph, 4  
**verēcundia, -ae f.:** modesty, shame, shyness 1  
**vēstīgium, -ī n.:** footprint; track, 2

**ante suōs:** before his (men)  
**cēdentēs:** pres. pple cēdō, ‘withdraw’  
**fortūnam:** his fortune  
74 **quod...servā(vi)sset:** because...; or ‘on the grounds that...’ causal quod clause with subj. for alleged cause from the character’s point of view  
**in eum exitium:** for this end  
75 **vēstīgiō:** from...; abl. of separation  
**sē...recessūrum (esse):** that...would...; ind. disc. with fut. inf. recēdō  
**Verēcundiā, virtūte:** because of...; or ‘by’ both abl. of cause  
**magis quam:** more than  
76 **resitūta est:** was restored  
**Rōmam:** place to which  
**rediit:** pf. redeō

## 29i. Gaius Julius Caesar

Bellīs cīvīlibus cōfēctīs, conversus iam ad administrandam rem pūblicam, fastōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit. Senātum supplēvit, comitiīsque cum populō dīvīsīs, 80 sibi sūmpsīt iūs nōminandae dīmidiae partis candidātōrum. Eōs quī lēge Pompeiī dē ambitū damnātī erant restituit atque admīsit ad honōrēs etiam prōscriptōrum līberōs. Omnēs medicīnam Rōmae professōs et līberālīum artīum doctōrēs cīvitātē dōnāvit. Iūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dīxit. Dē repetundīs damnātōs etiam 85 ē senātū mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īstituit. Lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit, dispositīs circā macellūm custōdībus quī obsōnia vetita retinērent.

- accommōdō (1):** to fit, adapt, adjust, 1  
**administrō (1):** to manage, direct; help, 3  
**admittō, -ere, mīsī, missum:** admit, allow, 1  
**ambitus, -ūs m.:** bribery, canvassing for votes, 1  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 7  
**candidātus, -ī m.:** candidate, 1  
**circā:** about, around, 4  
**comitīum, -ī n.:** meeting, assembly, 4  
**convertō, -ere, -ī, -rsus:** turn, reverse, 6  
**corrīgō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum:** correct, reform  
**cursus, -ūs m.:** course, running, haste, 6  
**custōs, custōdis m.:** guard, doorkeeper, 3  
**damnō (1):** condemn, punish, convict, 3  
**dīmidius, -a, -um:** half, one-half, 1  
**dispōnō, -ere:** arrange distribute, 1  
**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum:** divide, separate, 7  
**doctor, -ōris m.:** instructor, 1  
**dōnō (1):** to give, bestow, 5  
**exerceō, -ēre, -ui:** exercise, employ, 3  
**fastī, -ōrum m.:** list of days; calendar, 1  
**labōriōsus, -a, -um:** toilsome, wearisome, 1

78 bellīs...cōfēctīs: abl. abs.

conversus: having turned (his attention)

ad administrandum rem pūblicam: for...; translate gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.

80 comitiīs...dīvīsīs: abl. abs.

81 sibi: for...; dat. ind. obj.

iūs: the right; 'privilege,' neuter acc. sg.

nōminandae...partis: of...; see line 78

Eōs quī: those who...

Lēge Pompeiī: by a law of Pompey

- legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**līber, lībera, līberum:** free, 4  
**līberālis, -e:** of or befitting a free man, 2  
**macellūm, -ī n.:** market, meat-market, 1  
**medicīna, -ae f.:** art of healing, medicine, 1  
**merx, mercis f.:** goods, merchandise, 1  
**moveō, -ēre, -vī, mōtum:** to move, arouse, 5  
**nōminō (1):** call by name, name, mention, 1  
**obsōniūm, -ī n.:** food; relish; side-dish, 1  
**peregrīnus, -a, -um:** foreign; noun foreigner 5  
**portōrium, -ī n.:** toll, tax, duty, 1  
**praecipuē:** especially, 2  
**profiteor, -ērī, professus sum:** profess, 2  
**prōscribō, -ere, -scrīpsī:** proscribe, outlaw 1  
**repetundae, -ārum f.:** extortion, 1  
**retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum:** to hold back, 3  
**sevērus, -a, -um:** serious, stern, strict, 1  
**sōl, sōlis m.:** sun, 3  
**sumō, sumere, -mpsī, -mptum:** to take (up) 5  
**sumptuārius, -a, -um:** of expense, luxury, 1  
**suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī:** to fill up, fill out; supply 1  
**vetitō, -a, -um:** forbidden, prohibited, 1

83 honōrēs: political offices; 'honors'

prōscriptōrum: of those proscribed

Rōmae: at Rome; locative, place where

84 professōs: having professed; pf. dep. pple  
cīvitātē dōnāvit: bestow with citizenship

85 iūs...dīxit: dispensed justice

Dē repetundīs damnātōs: those

condemned for extortion

87 dispositīs...custōdībus: abl. abs.

88 quī...retinērent: who would...; purpose

## 29j. Gaius Julius Caesar

Dē ḍrnandā īstruendāque urbe multa cōgitābat, imprīmīs 90  
 ingēns Mārtis templum extruere theātrumque summae magnitūdinis sub Tarpeiō monte. Habēbat in animō etiam haec: iūs cīvile ad certum modum redigere atque ex ingentī cōpiā lēgum optima quaeque in paucissimōs librōs cōferre; bibliothēcās Graecās Latīnāsque quās maximās posset īstituere; siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; ēmittere Fūcīnum lacum; viam mūnīre ā marī 95 Superō per Āpennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim; perfodere Isthmum Corinthium; Dācōs, quī sē in Pontum et Thrāciam effūderant, coercēre; mox Parthīs īferre bellum per Armeniam.

---

**Āpennīnus, -ī m.:** Apennine Mtns. 1

**Armenia, -ae f.:** Armenia, 2

**bibliothēca, -ae f.:** library, 1

**certus, -a, -um:** certain, reliable, sure, 6

**coerceō, -ere, -cūi, -cītum:** restrain, confine 1

**cogitō (1):** to think, ponder, turn over, 1

**conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, 4

**cōpia, -ae f.:** abundance, supply; troops, 5

**Corinthius, -ī m.:** Corinth, 2

**Dācī, -ōrum m.:** Dacians (Hungary), 1

**dorsum, -ī n.:** back, ridge, 1

**effundō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsum:** pour, shed, 3

**ēmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum:** send/cast out, 3

**extruō, -ere, -trūxi:** to build, heap, 1

**Fūcīnus, -ī m.:** Fucinus, 1

**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 4

**imprīmīs, in prīmīs:** in particular, especially 3

**inferō, -ferre, -tūli, -lātus:** bring in, wage, 5

**īnstuō, -ere, -ūxi, -uctum:** build, draw up, 1

**Isthmus, -ī m.:** Isthmus, 1

**lacus, -ī m.:** lake, 3

89 **dē ḍrnandā īstruendāque urbe:** about... perform a flip and translate the noun + gerundives as gerunds (-ing) + obj.

**multa:** many (things); substantive, acc. pl.

**imprīmīs:** elsewhere in prīmīs

90 **(eōs) ingēns...extruere...monte:** (namely) that they...; ind. disc. in apposition to multa; supply an acc. subj. for extruere

**summae magnitūdinis:** of...; gen.of description modifying theātrum

91 **sub:** at the foot of...

**habēbat in animō:** i.e. he intended

92 **redigere...cōferre...īferre:** namely

**liber, librī m.:** book, 1

**magnitūdō, -tūdīnis f.:** size, greatness, 2

**mare, marīs n.:** sea, 6

**Mārs, Mārtis m.:** Mars, 2

**modus, ī n.:** manner, form; measure, 6

**mox:** soon, 4

**mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītūm:** to fortify, build, 5

**ōrnō (1):** to adorn, furnish, 2

**palūs, palūdis f.:** swamp, marsh, 2

**Parthī, -ōrum m.:** Parthians, 2

**perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī:** dig through, transfix, 1

**Pomptīnus, -a, -um:** Pomptine (in Latium), 1

**pontus, -īī m.:** sea, 2

**quisque, cuiusque:** each one, 3

**redigō -ere -ēgī -āctum:** drive back, reduce, 3

**siccō (1):** to dry, 2

**Tarpeius, -a, -um:** Tarpeian, 1

**templum, -ī n.:** temple, 5

**theātrum, -ī n.:** theater, 1

**Thrācia, -ae f.:** Thrace, 1

*to reduce...to gather...;* series of infinitives up to line 98 in apposition to haec

**ad certum modum:** to a certain limit

**cōpiā:** supply; lēgum is gen. pl. of lēx

93 **optima quaeque:** each (of) the best things; neuter acc. pl.

**paucissimōs:** very few; superlative

94 **quās...posset:** as large as possible; impf. subj. possūm; subj. of a subordinate verb in inf. clause (~ind. disc.)

95 **marī Superī:** Adriatic Sea; ‘Upper Sea’

**Parthīs:** on...; dat. of compound verb

98 **īferre bellum:** to carry on war

## 29k. Gaius Julius Caesar

Eum tālia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus, agere īsolentius coepit; senātū ad 100 sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut assurget monentem īrātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, comes Caesaris in omnibus bellīs et tum cōsulātūs collēga, capitī eius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs diadēma, īsigne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quārē amplius sexāgintā vīrī, 105 Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, in eum coniūrāvērunt atque cōnstituērunt eum īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū interficere.

**amplus, -a, -um:** more, full, spacious, 2

**Antōnius, -ī m.:** Antonius, 5

**assurgō, -ere, -surrexī:** to rise up, stand, 1

**aureus, -a, -um:** gold, golden, 2

**Cassius, -ī m.:** Cassius, 1

**collēga, -ae m.:** colleague, partner, 5

**comes, -ītis m. f.:** companion, comrade, 3

**coniūrō (1):** to swear together, conspire, 4

**cōsulātūs, -ūs m.:** consulship 6

**diadēma, -ātis n.:** diadem, headress, crown, 3

**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5

**eō, īre, īī, itūrus:** go, 2

**excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum:** take out, receive, 5

**īdūs, -uum:** Ides, 3

**impōnō, -ere, -posuī:** to place upon, impose 2

**īsigne, -is n.:** badge, decoration, mark, 1

**īsolēns (1):** insolent; unusual, 1

99 **eum:** him; i.e. Caesar

**talīa:** such things; neuter pl.

**agentem, meditantem:** pres. pple, agō, ‘do’ and meditor

100 **Dictātor:** nom. pred. with PPP creō

**in perpetuum:** in perpetuity, forever

**īsolentius:** comparative adv.

**agere:** to behave, act

101 **sedēns:** (while)...; nom. pres. pple

**excēpit:** he welcomed, he greeted

**quendam:** a certain man; acc. sg. quīdam

**ut assurget:** that...; ind. command

**monentem:** pres. pple. moneō, ‘warn’

102 **īrātō vultū:** with...; abl. of manner

**Cum...imposuisset:** when...; plpf. subj.

**Comes...et collēga:** nom. apposition

103 **capitī:** on...; caput, dat. of compound

**īrātūs, -a, -um:** anger, 6

**Mārtius, -a, -um:** of Mars, 4

**meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum:** reflect, think, 1

**moneō, -ēre, -uī, monitum:** to warn, 4

**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 6

**offendō, -ere, -fendī, -fensum:** to offend, 2

**perpetuus, -a, -um:** constant, everlasting, 1

**praeveniō, -īre, -vēnī:** come before, precede 1

**quārē:** For what reason? Why? 1

**rēgius, -a, -um:** royal, of the king or queen, 6

**repellō, -ere, -ppuli, -pulsum:** drive away, 2

**respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum:** to look to, 3

**rōstra, -ōrum n.:** speaker’s platform, 2

**sedeō, sedēre, sēdī:** to sit, sit down; set, 7

**sella, -ae f.:** chair, 2

**sexāgintā:** sixty, 1

**tālis, -e:** such, the sort, 2

**vultus, -ūs m.:** expression, face, 2

**eius:** his; gen. possession, is, ea, id

**sedentis:** pres. pple modifing eius

104 **prō:** in front of...

**id:** it; i.e. the neuter sg. diadēma

**ab eō:** abl. agent, i.e. Caesar

**ut...vidērētur:** that...; result, impf. subj.

**videor, ‘seem’**

**offēnsus:** predicated nom.

105 **Quārē:** for this reason; connective

**relative, abl. of cause**

**amplius:** more (than)

106 **Cassiō...ducibus:** abl. abs., subject and

**predicate, supply pple ‘being’**

**in eum:** against...

107 **eum:** him; object of interficere

**īdibus Mārtiīs:** on...; abl. of time when

i.e. March 15<sup>th</sup>; īdūs is a plural noun

## 29I. Gaius Julius Caesar

Quamquam prōdigia eum dēterrēbant et harūspex Spūrinna monēbat ut cavēret perīculum quod nōn ultrā Mārtiās Īdūs prōferrētur, statuit tamen eō diē senātum habēre. Dum Cūriam 110 intrat, Spūrinnam irrīsit, quod sine ullā suā noxā Īdūs Mārtiae adessent.

“Vēnērunt quidem,” inquit Spūrinna, “sed nōn praeteriērunt.” Caesarem assidentem coniūrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt; ūnus deinde quasi aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit et, cum Caesar 115 renueret, ab ūtrōque humerō togam apprehendit. Dum Caesar clāmat, “Ista quidem vīs est!” Casca eum adversum vulnerat

**accēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus:** approach, 2  
**adsum, -esse, -fuī:** be present, assist, , 2  
**aliquī, -qua, -quod:** some, any, definite, 3  
**apprehendō, -ere, -di:** seize, take hold of, 1  
**assidō, -ere, -sēdī:** take a seat, be seated, 1  
**Casca, -ae m.:** Casca , 2  
**caveō, -ēre, cāvī:** to beware, be on guard, 1  
**circumstō, -āre, -stetī:** to surround, beset, 1  
**clāmō (1):** to cry, shout out, 6  
**coniūrō (1):** to swear together, conspire, 4  
**Cūria, -ae f.:** senate house, Curia, 8  
**dēterreō, -ere, -ui:** frighten off, prevent, 3  
**eō, īre, īī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**harūspex, -spicis m.:** haruspex, soothsayer 1  
**humerus (umerus), -ī m.:** shoulder, 1  
**Īdūs, -uum:** Ides, 3  
**intrō (1):** go into, enter, 2  
**irrīdeō, -ere, -risī:** to laugh at, mock, 1  
**iste, ista, istud:** that , those 2

109 **ut cavēret:** that...; ind. command  
**quod...prōferrētūr:** which...; impf. pass.  
 subj.; subj. of a subordinate clause in an  
 ind. command  
**Mārtiās Īdūs:** acc. pl. object of ultrā  
 110 **statuit:** decided  
**eō diē:** on...; abl. of time when, eō is a  
 demonstrative adj.  
**habēre:** to hold  
 111 **quod...adessent:** because...; or ‘on the  
 grounds that...’ causal quod clause with  
 subj. for alleged cause from the character’s  
 point of view  
**suā:** for himself; suā is a possessive equiv.

**Mārtius, -a, -um:** of Mars, 4  
**moneō, -ēre, -ui, monitūm:** to warn, 4  
**noxa, -ae f.:** harm, injury, 2  
**officium, -ī, n.:** duty, 4  
**praetereō, -īre, -īvī:** go past, pass, pass by, 1  
**prōdigium, -ī n.:** omen, portent, 3  
**prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātūm:** extend, bring, 4  
**prope:** nearly almost; near (acc.), 5  
**quāsī:** as if, just as, as though, 2  
**renuō, -ere, -ui:** to deny, nod back, reject, 1  
**rogō (1):** to ask, 3  
**sine:** without , 5  
**species, -ei f.:** sight, look, appearance, 3  
**Spūrinna, -ae f.:** Spurinna, 3  
**toga, -ae f.:** toga, 5  
**ūllus, -a, -um:** any, 4  
**ultrā:** beyond, more than, besides (acc) 1  
**uterque, utra-, utrum-:** each (of two), both, 6  
**vulnerō (1):** wound, injure, 3

to an objective gen.  
**Īdūs Mārtiae:** nom. subj.  
 113 **Vēnērunt:** Īdūs Mārtiae is the subject  
**assidentem:** pres. pple  
**coniūrātī:** those sworn; PPP, nom. subject  
 114 **speciē officiī:** with the appearance...;  
 abl. of manner and objective gen.;  
 115 **quasi...rogātūrus:** as if about to...; fut.  
 pple rogō  
**proprius:** comparative adv. of prope  
 116 **ab ūtrōque humerō:** i.e. by...  
 117 **Ista quidem vīs est:** “This is Violence!”  
**adversum:** facing opposite

## 29m. Gaius Julius Caesar

Paulum infrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiecit cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est. 120 Deinde ut animadvertisit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit et tribus et vīgintī plagīs cōnfossus est. Cum Marcum Brūtum, quem filiī locō habēbat, in sē irruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: “Tu quoque, mī filī!”

Percussōrum autem nēmō ferē trienniō amplius supervīxit. 125 Damnātī omnēs variīs cāsibus periērunt, pars naufrāgiō, pars proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet interfēcērunt eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem cōnfōderant.

**amplus, -a, -um:** more, full, spacious, 2  
**animadvertō, -ere, -vertī:** notice; punish, 4  
**arripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus:** snatch, grab, 2  
**bracchium, -ī n.:** arm, 1  
**Casca, -ae m.:** Casca (cognomen), 2  
**cāsus, -ūs m.:** misfortune, mishap; fall, 2  
**cōnfodiō, -ere, -fodī, -fōssum:** dig, stab, 2  
**cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum:** to try, attempt, 7  
**damno (1):** condemn, punish, convict, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**graphiō, -ī n.:** stylus, s writing-stylus, 1  
**infrā:** below, underneath, 1  
**irruō, -ere, -ruī:** rush in on on, 2  
**iugulum, -ī n.:** throat, 1  
**locō (1):** to put, place, 2  
**Marcus, -ī m.:** Marcus, 4  
**naufrāgiūm, -ī n.:** shipwreck, 1  
**nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā:** no one, 6

119 **Paulum:** *a little*; adverbial acc.

Cassae: gen. possession with bracchium  
**arreptum trāiecit:** English prefers two finite verbs ‘grabbed and pierced,’ while Latin often prefers to make the first action a PPP and the second a finite verb.

120 **graphiō:** abl. means

**cōnātus:** pf. dep. pple cōnor, as often translate this pple as ‘having Xed’

**aliō vulnere:** *by...;* abl. means

121 **ut:** *when..., as...;* ut + indicative

**sē...petī:** *that...;* ind. disc., pass. inf. petō

**strictīs pūgiōnibus:** abl. means (not abs.) with PPP stringō

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um:** some, several, 2  
**obolvō, -ere, -vī:** wrap around, cover over, 1  
**paulus, -a, -um:** little, small, 6  
**percussor, -ōris m.:** murderer, assassin, 2  
**pereō, -ire, perīī:** to pass away, perish, 3  
**plaga, -ae f.:** blow, strike, 1  
**prōsiliō, -ire, -uī:** to leap or jump forward, 2  
**pūgio, pūgiōnis m.:** short dagger, 2  
**stringō, -ere, -inxī, -ictum:** draw, pull out, 1  
**supervīvō, -ere, -vīxī:** survive, live beyond, 1  
**tardō (1):** to make slow, hinder, delay, 1  
**toga, -ae f.:** toga, 5  
**trāiciō, -ere, -iēctī, -iactum:** stab, pierce, 1  
**triennium, -ī n.:** three years , 1  
**tū:** you, 6  
**undīque:** from everywhere, from all sides, 2  
**varius, -a, -um:** various, 3  
**vīgintī:** twenty, 6  
**vulnus, -eris n.:** wound, blow, 4

122 **tribus et vīgintī:** single number, abl. trēs  
**cum...vīdisset:** plpf. subj., Caesar is subject

123 **locō:** i.e. in the role; filiī is gen. sg.  
**habēbat:** held; i.e. considered, i.e. Caesar  
*in sē: upon...; against...*

124 **dīxisse:** *to...;* pf. active inf. dīcō

**fertur:** *he is reported;* common idiom  
**mī fili:** voc. direct address; -ius nouns have -ī in the voc. case

125 **trienniō:** *than...;* abl. of comparison  
**amplius:** *more*

126 **pars...pars...:** *some...others...*

127 **sēmet:** *themselves;* emphatic form of sē  
**quō:** *by which...;* relative, abl. of means

## 29n. Gaius Julius Caesar

Quō rārior in rēgibus et prīcipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. Caesar victōriā cīvīlī clémentissimē ūsus est; 130 cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompeium missārum ab eīs quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere noluit, sed combussit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi iniūriās. 135

**clēmēns, -entis:** mild, gentle, kind, 1  
**comburō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum:** burn up, 1  
**consulō, -ere, -uī, consultum:** to consult, 3  
**dēprehendō, -ere, -sī:** seize upon, discover, 2  
**dīversus, -a, -um:** different, contrary, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**epistula, -ae f. (1):** letter, epistle, 1  
**eximius, -a, -um:** exempt, excepted, 1  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**iniūria, -ae f.:** wrong, insult, injustice, 5  
**laudō (1):** to praise, glorify, 5  
**laus, laudis f.:** praise, glory, merit, 4

- 129 **Quō rārior...hōc...magis:** *the more unusual...the more...; ‘by how (much) more unusual...by this (much) more...’* the relative quō and demonstrative hōc are abl. of degree of difference with comp. adj. and adv. respectively; these correlatives are often left out in English translation  
**in:** *among...*  
**prīcipibus:** *the foremost; else ‘leaders’*  
**moderātiō (est):** subject, supply verb  
130 **laudanda est:** *has to be..., must be...;* passive periphrastic (gerundive + sum) expressing obligation or necessity; the subject is fem. sg. moderātiō  
**ūsus est:** pf. dep., ūtor governs an abl. obj.  
**clémentissimē:** superlative adv.
- 131 **cum...dēprehendisset:** *when...; plpf.* subj., Caesar is subject  
**enīm:** *for...; or ‘indeed,’ translate first*  
132 **missārum:** PPP mittō modifying gen. pl. epistulārum  
**ab eīs:** *by those; abl. of agent*

**legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**magis:** more, 7  
**moderātiō, -ōnis f.:** moderation, 1  
**neuter, -tra, -trum:** neither , 2  
**nisi:** if not, unless, 7  
**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī:** not...wish, be unwilling, 4  
**oblīviscor, -scī, oblītus sum:** forget , 1  
**rārūs, -a, -um:** unusual, scattered, set apart, 1  
**scrīnium, -ī n.:** case, chest, box, 1  
**soleō, -ere, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 4  
**tribō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum:** add, bestow 3  
**ūsus, -ūs m.:** use, practice; advantage, 1

- vidēbantur:** *seemed; passive videor is often translated as ‘seem’*  
**aut in dīversīs (partibus) aut in neutrīs partibus:** *either...or...; the partēs are political ‘factions’ and dīversus can mean ‘opposing’*  
**fuisse:** pf. inf. sum  
133 **legere, combussit:** add epistulās as obj.  
**nē...darent:** *so that by chance they might not give an opportunity of advising more harshly against many men; i.e. not bias Caesar’s opinion of men who sided with Pompey against Caesar during the civil war and whose names are mentioned in the letters; neg. purpose clause*  
134 **Caesarī:** dat. ind. obj.  
**quod...solēret:** *(namely) that he...; quod clause in apposition to laudem; the subj. indicates ind. disc. (equiv. to subj. of a subordinate clause in ind. disc.)*  
**oblīvisci:** pres. dep. inf. oblīviscor  
**nisi:** *except*

## 30a. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est 1 Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Nōndum adultus, ā patre Rōmam missus est, ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset atque eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem solet īformārī; quod magnō successū magnāque admīratiōne et 5 praceptorū et cēterōrum discipulōrum fēcit; cum enim fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrinā ad aliōs perlāta esset, multū repertī esse dīcuntur quī eius videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent.

Cum nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam mūnīrī posse intellegereret quam arte dīcendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō 10

**adeō:** to such a degree, so, 2  
**admīratiō, -nis f.:** admiration, astonishment, 3  
**adultus, -a, -um:** grown up, mature, 1  
**aetās, aetatis f.:** age, lifetime, time, 7  
**Arpīnum, -i n.:** Arpinum, 1  
**ars, artis f.:** skill, craft, art, 7  
**celeber, -ris, -re:** renowned, famous, 1  
**cēterī, -ae, -a:** the remaining, rest, others, 4  
**discipulus, -i m.:** student, pupil, 1  
**discō, -ere, didicī, --:** learn, learn how, 1  
**doctrīna, -ae f.:** instruction, teaching, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēloquentia, -ae f.:** eloquence, 5  
**eō, ire, iī , itūrus:** go, 2  
**equester, -stris, -stre:** equestrian, 3  
**fāma, -ae f.:** fame, report, rumor, reputation, 7  
**genus, -eris n.:** birth, race; kind, family, 4  
**grātia, -ae f.:** thanks; grātiā, for the sake of, 3  
**honor, -ōris m.:** honor; offering, sacrifice, 3  
**hūmānitās, -tatis f.:** culture, refinement, 2

- 1 **equestrī genere:** of...; abl. quality  
Arpīnī: at...; locative, place where
- 2 **nātus est:** pf. dep. nascor
- 3 **ut...interesset...disceret:** so that...might;  
purpose clause with impf. subj.  
scholīs: in...; dat. of compound verb
- 4 **eās:** those; a demonstrative adj.  
quibus: by which...; artēs are antecedent  
ad...: for...; expressing purpose
- 5 **quod:** this; acc. obj., a connective relative  
et...et...: both...and
- 6 **cum enim...perlāta esset:** for when...;  
plpf. pass. subj. perferō
- 7 **repertī esse:** pf. pass. inf. following

**informō (1):** to give form, shape, mold, 1  
**ingenium, -i n.:** intellect, talent; character, 5  
**intelligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum:** to realize,  
understand, 2  
**intersum, -esse, -fuī:** take part in, be in, 1  
**magis:** more, 7  
**magister, -ī m.:** Master; helmsman, teacher 6  
**Marcus, -ī m.:** Marcus, 4  
**mūnīō, -ire, -iī, -itūm:** to fortify, build, 5  
**nōndum:** not yet, 3  
**oppidum, -ī, n.:** town, fortified town, 1  
**perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus:** carry; endure, 4  
**praecceptor, -ōris m.:** instructor, teacher, 1  
**puerīlis, -e:** of a boy or child, childish, 1  
**reperiō -ire -pperi -pertum:** find, discover, 3  
**schola, -ae f.:** school, place of learning, 3  
**soleō, -ēre, -itus sum:** be accustomed, 4  
**successus, -ūs m.:** success, advancement, 1  
**Tullius, -ī m.:** Tullius, 5  
**Volsī, -ōrum m.:** Volscians, Volsci, 4

- dīcuntur; the final '-ī' agrees with multū  
**dīcuntur:** are said
- 8 **qui...adīrent:** who...; relative clause of  
characteristic with impf. subj. ad-eō  
eius videndī...grātiā: for the sake of...; +  
gen.; translate this noun + gerundive as a  
gerund (-ing) and obj. 'him'
  - 9 **cum...intellegarent:** since he...; causal  
nūllā rē magis...quam: by no thing more  
than by...; all ablatives are abl. of means  
ad...honōrēs: to...political offices  
viam...posse: that a path is able to be  
built...; ind. disc., possum
  - 10 **dīcendī:** gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)

### 30b. Marcus Tullius Cicero

animō in eius studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita versātus est ut 11  
nōn sōlum eōs quī in forō et iūdicīs causās dīcerent studiōsē  
sectārētur, sed prīvātim quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret.

Prīmum ēloquentiam et lībertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. 15  
Erat enim Rōscius quīdam, dē parricīdiō accūsātus, quem ob  
potentiam Chrysogonī, Sullae lībertī, quī in eius adversāriīs erat,  
nēmō aliis dēfendere audēbat; Cicerō tamen tantā ēloquentiae vī  
eum dēfendit, ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nēmō eī pār esse vidērētur.  
Posteā Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum  
philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē 20

accūsō (1): to accuse, blame, reprimand, 3  
adversāriū, -ī m.: opponent, adversary, 1  
Antiochus, -ī m.: Antioch, 1  
ars, artis f.: skill, craft, art, 7  
Athēnae, -ārum f.: Athens, 2  
audeō, -ere, ausus sum: to dare, venture, 5  
Chrysogonus, -ī m.: Chrysogonus, 1  
dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēnsūm: to defend, 6  
dīligēns, -entis: diligent, careful, industrious 2  
ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
eloquentia, -ae f.: eloquence, 5  
exerceō, -ere, -ui, -ercitūm: exercise, 3  
grātiā, -ae f.: gratitude; favor, thanks; grātiā,  
for the sake of + gen. 3  
incumbō, -ere, -cubūt: lie on, recline, lean, 1  
iūdicium, -ī n.: judgment; trial, court, 3  
lībertās, -tatis f.: freedom, liberation, 2

- 11 tōtō animō...incubuit: inclined with all  
his attention  
in...studium: toward...  
in quō: studium is the antecedent  
versātus est: pf. dep. versor  
ut...sectārētur...exercēret: that...; result,  
impf. subj.  
12 nōn sōlum...sed: not only...but (also)  
eōs quī: those who  
causās dīceret: plead cases; an idiom;  
relative clause of characteristic with impf.  
subj.  
studiōsē: adv  
13 dīligentissimē: superlative adv.  
14 Prīmum: first (of all); adv.  
Sullānōs: supporters of Sulla  
15 Erat: There was

lībertus, -ī m.: freedman, 2  
nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā: no  
one, 6  
ob: on account of , 5  
ostendō (1): show, display, 7  
parricīdium, -ī n.: parricide, treason 1  
philosophus, -ī m.: philosopher, 2  
potentia, -ae f.: power, might, strength, 3  
prīvātim: privately, in private, 1  
Rhodos, -ī f.: Rhodes (island), 2  
Rōscius, -ī m.: Roscius, 1  
sector, -ārī, -ātūs sum: to follow, attend, 1  
studiōsus, -a, -um: eager, zealous, anxious, 2  
stūdium, -ī n.: zeal, desire, pursuit, 5  
Sullānus, -a, -um: of Sulla, 1  
versor, -ārī, versātus: be engaged, involved 1

- quem...audēbat: whom...; relative  
16 Chrysogonī: gen. sg.  
lībertī: gen. in apposition to Chrysogonī  
in...: among..  
eius: his; Roscius  
17 tantā...vī: abl. of manner, irreg. vīs  
ut...vidērētur: that...; result; impf. subj.  
videor, 'seem'  
18 dīcendī: gen. sg. of a gerund (-ing)  
eī: to him; dat. of special adj. pār  
pār: nom. pred. of linking inf. esse  
19 Athēnās: place to which  
grātiā: for the sake of...; + preceding gen.  
20 causā: for the sake of...; + preceding gen.  
Rhodum: to...; acc. place to which

### 30c. Marcus Tullius Cicero

contulit, ubi Molōnem Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, 21 magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset, flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude prīvārētur.

Rōmam reversus, quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllīus vērō 25 quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum enim magna tum esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus fuit Siculīs, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; posteā vērō, dīligentiam et iūstitiam et cōmitātem eius expertī, honōrēs quaestōrī suō maiōrēs quam ullī umquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ē Siciliā reversus Rōmam, in causīs 30 dīcendīs ita flōruit, ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur prīnceps.

**annōna, -ae f.:** year's crop, grain; price, 1  
**cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctūm:** to collect, compel, 6  
**comitās, -tātis f.:** friendliness, kindness, 4  
**conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, 4  
**dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātūm:** offer, give over 6  
**difficultās, -tātis f.:** trouble, difficulty, 1  
**diligentia, -ae f.:** diligence, attentiveness, 2  
**disertus, -a, -um:** eloquent, well-spoken, 1  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēloquentia, -ae f.:** eloquence, 5  
**experior, -īrī, expertūm:** to prove, test, 2  
**fleō, -ere, -ēvī, flētūm:** weep, lament, cry, 3  
**floreō, -ere, -uī:** to bloom, flower, flourish, 1  
**frūmentum, -ī n.:** grain, 3  
**Graecia, -ae f.:** Greece, 2  
**Graecus, -a, -um:** Greek, 4  
**grātūs, -a, -um:** pleasing, grateful, 4  
**hīc:** here, 1

- 21 sē contulit: *carried himself*; i.e. proceeded  
22 magistrum: *as a teacher*; apposition  
Quī: *This one*; a connective relative, Molon  
dīcentem: pres. pple dīcō  
23 flēvisse: pf. inf. fleō  
dīcitur: Quī is still subject  
quod...prīvārētur: *because...; subj. for*  
alleged cause from a character's viewpoint  
per hunc: *through this one*; i.e. Cicero  
laude: *from the...; abl. of separation*  
25 quaestor: *as quaestor*  
Nūllīus: *of no one*; gen. sg. nēmō

**initium, -ī n.:** beginning, initiation, entrance 2  
**iūstitia, -ae f.:** justice, fairness, 1  
**laus, laudis f.:** praise, glory, merit, 4  
**magister, -īrī m.:** Master; helmsman, teacher 6  
**maiōr, maius:** greater, larger; older, 4  
**molestus, -a, -um:** troublesome, annoying, 2  
**Molo, Molōnis m.:** Molon (a person) 2  
**patrōnus, -a, -um:** patron, 1  
**praetor, -ōris m.:** praetor, 3  
**prīvō (1):** deprive of, rob, strip from , 3  
**quaestor, -is m.:** Quaestor 7  
**quaestūra, -ae f.:** quaestorship, 2  
**revertō, -ere, reversī:** turn back, return, 4  
**rhētor, -is m.:** teacher of rhetoric, orator, 1  
**Sicilia, -ae f.:** Sicily, 6  
**Siculī, -ōrum m.:** Sicilians, 1  
**ullus, -a, -um:** any, 4  
**umquam:** ever, 1

- vērō: *indeed; 'in truth'* abl. as adverb  
26 cum...esset: *since...; causal; impf. sum*  
27 initiō: *in the beginning; abl. of time when*  
quōs cōgeret: *whom he compelled...; causal*  
relative clause (quōs = 'cum eōs + subj.')  
29 expertī: *(the Sicilians) having experienced*  
quaestōrī suō: *to their quaestor*; ind. obj.  
30 reversus: *having returned*  
in causīs dīcendīs: dicere causam means  
'to plead a case;' translate this noun +  
gerundive as a gerund (-ing) + obj.  
31 ut...habērētur: *that...was held*; result

### 30d. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Cōnsul deinde factus, L. Sergiī Catilīnae coniūrātiōnem ēgregiā virtūte, cōstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīna reī familiāris, quam profūderat, inopiā et dominandī cupiditāte incēnsus erat 35 indignātusque quod in petītiōne cōnsulātūs repulsam passus esset; coniūrātiōne igitur factā, senātum interimere, cōnsulēs trucīdāre, urbem incendere, dīripere aerārium cōnstituerat. Cicerō autem in senātū, praeſente Catilīnā, vehementem ḍrātiōnem habuit et cōnsilia eius patefēcit; tum ille, incendium suum ruīnā sē 40 restīnctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitū, quem parāverat, profectus est, signa illātūrus urbī. Sed sociī eius, quī in urbe remānserant, comprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt.

---

aerārium, -ī n.: treasury, 2  
carcer, -eris m.: prison, 2  
Catilīna, -ae m.: Catiline, 5  
**comprehēndō, -ere, dī, -prehensum:** to grasp, seize, 5  
**comprīmō, -ere, -pressī:** suppress, restrain, 1  
**coniūrātiō, -ōnis f.:** conspiracy, pact, 2  
cōnstantia, -ae f.: steadfastness, constancy, 1  
cōnsulātus, -ūs m.: consulship, 6  
cupiditās, -tatis f.: desire, 2  
cūra, -ae f.: care, concern, worry, 5  
dīripiō, -ere, -uī, reptus: snatch, ransack, 3  
dominor, -āre, -ātus sum: be lord or master 1  
ēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus: put forth, give out, 5  
ēgregius, -a, -um: excellent, outstanding, 7  
exerceō, -ere, -uī, -ercitum: exercise, 3  
familiāris, -e: of the family; close friend, 1  
incendium, -ī n.: burning fire, 1  
incendō, -ere, -i, -ēnsus: kindle, burn, 7  
indignor, -ārī, indignātum: be offended, 3

33 **Cōnsul:** nom. pred. following PPP faciō  
L. Sergiī Catilīnae: of Lucius Sergius  
Catilīna (called Catilīna or just Catilīna)  
ēgregiā virtūte...cūrā: with...; manner  
34 reī familiāris: of family wealth; or 'of  
family resources,' gen. sg. with inopiā  
35 profūderat: i.e. spent lavishly  
inopiā et cupiditāte: because of...; cause  
dominandī: gen. pl. of a gerund (-ing)  
incēnsus erat: plpf. pass.; i.e. angered  
36 indignātus: PPP indignor  
quod...passus esset: because...; with

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus: bring in, wage, 5  
inopia, -ae f.: poverty, need; lack of, 1  
interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum: take away, 2  
minitor, -āre, -ātus sum: threaten, menace, 1  
necō (1): to kill, slay, put to death, 6  
ōrātiō, -ionis f.: speaking, speech, language, 3  
patiō, -ī, passus: suffer, endure; allow, 7  
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī,: open, disclose, 1  
petītiō, -ōnis f.: seeking (political office), 1  
praesēns, -ntis: present, instant, 1  
profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum: to pour out, 2  
remaneō, ēre, mansī, mansum: remain, 1  
repulsa, -ae f.: rejection, 1  
restinguō, -ere, restinxī: put out, quench, 2  
ruina, -ae f.: ruins, downfall, 3  
Sergiūs, -ī m.: Sergiūs, 1  
signum, -ī n.: sign, signal; military standard, 6  
socius, -ī m.: comrade, companion; ally, 7  
trucīdō (1): slaughter, massacre, 2  
**vehēmēns, -entis:** violent, vehement, strong, 1

plpf. dep. subj. patiō, 'suffer,'  
37 coniūrātiōne factā: abl. abs.  
38 cōnstituerat: had decided; + infns.  
39 praeſente Catilīnā: abl. abs., pres. pple  
habuit: delivered  
40 eius: his; i.e. Catiline's  
ille: that one; i.e. Catiline  
sē restīnctūrum esse: that..; ind disc. fut.  
41 Rōmā: from...; abl. separation  
42 profectus est: pf. dep. proficīscor  
signa: military standards; Catiline's army  
illātūrus: intending to bring...into; fut. pple

## 30e. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īfestī signīs Rōmam petēns, exercitū Antōnī, Cicerōnis collēgae, opprimitur. 45 Quam ātrōciter dīmicātum sit exitus docuit; nēmō hostium bellō superfuit; nam quem locum quisque in pugnandō cēperat, eum mortuus tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est—pulcherrima mors, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem 'patrem patriae' 50 appellāvit.

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dīxit Clōdius, tribūnus plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus,

**Antōnīus, -ī m.:** Antonius, 5

**ātrōciter:** fiercely, cruelly, harshly, 1  
**cadāver, -is n.:** corpse, dead body, 1

**Catilīna, -ae m.:** Catiline, 5

**Clōdius, -ī m.:** Clodius, 2

**collēga, -ae m.:** colleague, partner, 5  
**concidō, -ere, -cidī:** to fall, fall in battle, 1

**dēsistō, -ere, -stītī:** to cease; stand apart, 1  
**dīmicō (1):** to fight, struggle, contend, 3

**doceō, -ere, -ui, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4

**eō, īre, ī, itūrus:** go, 2

**exerceō, -ere, -ui, -ercitum:** exercise, 3

**exitus, -ī m.:** end, death; departure, 3

**incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptum:** begin, 5

**indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum:** declare, appoint 3

**īfestus, -a, -um:** hostile, unsafe, 4

**longē:** far, 4

44 **neque:** not...; modifies dēstitit

**eō magis:** what is more; a common phrase: eō is abl. of degree of difference 'by this (much)'

**ab inceptō:** from the thing undertaken; abl. of separation, a PPP as substantive

45 **Antōnī:** gen. sg.

**collēgae:** gen. in apposition to Antōnī; Antonius was fellow consul with Cicero

46 **Quam...sit:** How fiercely it was fought; ind. question; pf. pass. subj.; impersonal  
**bellō:** abl. means or place where

47 **quem locum...tegēbat:** whatever position each had taken in fighting, (each) was covering this (position)—(when) dead; i.e. no one retreated; the antecedent of relative adj. quem locum is the demonstrative eum

**maestus, -a, -um:** grief-stricken, gloomy, 1  
**magis:** more, 7

**mors, mortis, f.:** death, 6

**nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ā:** no one, 6

**opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum:** oppress, overwhelm, 5

**pugnō (1):** to fight, 3

**pulcher, -ra, -rum:** pretty, beautiful, 2

**quisque, cuiusque:** each one, 3

**reperiō īre -pperī -pertum:** find, discover, 3

**sīc:** thus, in this way, 6

**signum, -ī n.:** sign, signal; military standard, 6

**supersum, -esse, -fūi:** survive, be left, over; 2  
**tegō, -ere, texī, tectum:** to cover; conceal, 1

(locum); mortuus is PPP of morior

48 **ā suīs (virīs):** from...; abl. separation

49 **pulcherrima mors, sī concidisset:** (it would have been), if he had...; past contrary to fact condition (sī plpf. subj. plpf. subj.); the apodosis is missing; superlative adj. of pulcher, 'noble'

**prō:** on behalf of....

51 **appellāvit:** governs a double acc.

52 **paucīs post annīs:** a few years later; 'after by a few years.' degree of difference

**diem dīxit:** appointed a day; i.e. for a trial

53 **quod...necāvisset:** on the charge that...; 'because;' plpf. subj. of alleged cause  
**indictā causā:** although the case had been appointed; concessive; i.e. Cicero executed conspirators before their trial

## 30f. Marcus Tullius Cicero

tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā, prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit ex urbe cēdere quam suā causā caudem fierī. Proficīsentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Deinde Clōdius ēdictum prōposuit, ut Marcō Tulliō ignī et aquā interdīcerētur; illīus domum et vīllās incendit. Sed vīs illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsīderiō Cicerōnis redditum flāgitāre coepit, et 55 māximō omnium ūrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam eī redeuntī ūniversī iērunt; domus eius pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

- accidō, -ere, accidī:** to happen, fall to, 2  
**caedēs, -is f.:** slaughter, killing, 4  
**cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum:** move; withdraw, give up, 4  
**Clōdius, -ī m.:** Clodius, 2  
**dēfendō, -ere, -ndī, dēfēnsūm:** to defend, 6  
**dēprecōr, -ārī, -ātūs:** pray (to avert harm) 1  
**dēsīderiūm, -ī n.:** longing, desire, want, 1  
**diūturnus, -a, -um:** long-lasting, long, 1  
**ēdictum, -ī n.:** proclamation, edict, 2  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditūs:** put forth, give out, 5  
**ēō, īre, īī , itūrūs:** go, 2  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**fiō, fierī, factus sum:** to be made, occur, 3  
**flāgitō (1):** to demand urgently, entreat, 2  
**fleō, -ere, -ēvī, flētūm:** weep, lament, cry, 3  
**ignis, ignis, m.:** fire, 3  
**incendō, -ere, -ī, -ēnsus:** kindle, burn, 7  
**interdīcō -ere -dixī:** forbid, prohibit, 1

54 **veste mūtātā:** abl. abs.

**prō eō:** on behalf of...

**dēprecābātur:** impf. dep. dēprecōr

55 **cum posset...:** although...; concessive cum clause with impf. subj. possum

56 **cēdere:** to withdraw

**quam...:** (rather) than; comparative clause  
**suā causā:** for his own sake; suā is equiv. to the gen. obj. of the preposition causā

56 **proficīsentum:** the one..., i.e. Cicero, pres. pple, add the pronoun as antecedent  
**bonī:** good men; i.e. the senatorial class

57 **prōsecūtī sunt:** pf. dep. prōsequor

- iūcundus, -a, -um:** pleasant, agreeable, 1  
**lūctus, ūs m.:** mourning, grief, sorrow, 1  
**M.:** Marcus, 5  
**mālō , malle, maluī:** prefer, 5  
**mox:** soon, 4  
**mutō (1):** to change, alter, 3  
**obviam:** in the way of, to meet (dat) 1  
**ōrdō, ūrdinis m.:** arrangement, order, rank, 3  
**prōpōnō, -ere, posuī, positūm:** to set forth, 3  
**prōsequor, -quī, prōsecūtūs:** pursue, escort 1  
**reditus, -ūs m.:** return, coming back, 1  
**revocō (1):** call back, summon back, revoke, 3  
**salūs, -ūtis f.:** safety, refuge; health, 4  
**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, desire, pursuit, 5  
**tamquam:** as if, as much as, so to speak, 6  
**Tullius, -ī m.:** Tullius, 5  
**ūniversus, -a, -um:** entire, whole, 2  
**vestis, -is f.:** clothing, 3  
**villa, -ae f.:** villa, cottage, 4

**ut...interficerētur:** that...; ind. command in apposition to ēdictum

**Marcō Tulliō:** dat. ind. obj., i.e. Cicero

58 **ignī et aquā:** from...; abl. separation, i.e. from offers of shelter and food

**illius:** gen. poss. ille; i.e. Cicero

59 **vīs:** violence

**ingenti dēsīderiō:** with...; abl. manner

61 **māximō...studiō:** abl. means

62 **Cicerōnī:** to Cicero; dat. with accidit itinere, quō: on the journey on which...

63 **iūcundius:** neut. comparative adj.  
**redeuntī:** dat. sg. redeō, pres. pple

## 30g. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Gravissimae inimicitiae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et 65 Pompeium ortae sunt, ut rēs nisi bellō compōnī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnitēbātur ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret; sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam movēre posset, Pompeium secūtus est. Tamen ā Caesare victōre veniam accēpit. Cum Caesar occīsus 70 esset, Octāviānō, Caesaris hērēdī, fāvit Antōniōque adversātus est, atque effēcit ut ille ā sēnātū hostis iūdicārētur.

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem, iam diū sibi inimīcum, prōscrīpsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō trānsversīs

**adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum:** to oppose (dat), 1  
**Antōnius, -ī m.:** Antonius, 5  
**calamitās, -ītatis f.:** loss, calamity, 2  
**compōnō, -ere, -posuī:** arrange; collect, 1  
**dēterreō, -ere, -ui:** frighten off, prevent, 3  
**diū:** a long time, long, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** put forth, give out, 5  
**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus:** make, form, 4  
**ēnitor, -ī, ēnītus sum:** to struggle, strive, 1  
**faveō, -ere, fāvī:** to favor, be propitious (dat) 2  
**hērēs, hērēdis, m./f.:** heir, heiress, 2  
**ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum:** go into, enter, 4  
**inimicitia, -ae f.:** hostility, enmity, 1  
**inimīcus, -a, -um:** hostile, unfriendly, 6

65 **illā tempestāte:** at that time; abl. time when; tempestās may mean ‘time’  
66 **ortae sunt:** pf. dep. ūrior  
    ut...vidērētur: so that...; result; impf.  
    subj videor, ‘seem’  
    rēs: the situation, the circumstances  
    nisi: except  
    compōnī: pass. inf. following inf. possum  
67 **summō studiō:** abl. manner  
    ut...dēterrēret: so that...might; purpose  
    inter sē: to one another  
68 **ā...:** from...; abl of separation  
    dēterrēret: supply eōs as object  
    cum...posset: when..., impf. subj.  
69 **neutrum:** i.e. neither Pompey or Caesar  
    ad...ineundam: toward...; translate this

**iūdicō (1):** judge, decide, assess, 3  
**moveō, -ēre, -vī, mōtum:** to move, arouse, 5  
**neuter, -tra, -trum:** neither, 2  
**nisi:** if not, unless, 7  
**occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus:** kill, cut down, 7  
**Octāviānō, -ī m.:** Octavian (C’s nephew), s2  
**prōscrībō, -ere, -scripsī:** proscribe, outlaw 1  
**quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly 10  
**reconciliō (1):** win back, recover, 2  
**societās, -ītatis f.:** association, alliance, 5  
**studium, -ī n.:** zeal, desire, pursuit, 5  
**tempestās, -ītatis f.:** weather; storm, time 2  
**trānsvertō, -ere, -fī, -versum:** turn, change, 1

gerundive (in-eō) as a gerund (-ing) + obj.  
70 **ā Caesare:** from...  
    victōre: as victor; abl. of apposition  
    cum...occīsus esset: plpf. subj. occīdō  
71 **Antoniō:** Mark Antony  
    adversātus est: pf. dep. adversor  
    effēcit: brought it about  
72 **ut...iūdicārētur:** that...; noun result clause; hostis is nom. pred.  
73 **initā...societāte:** abl. abs., PPP inēō  
74 **sibi:** to himself; i.e. to Antony  
    quā rē auditā: this...; abl. abs., with a connective relative (translate the relative as a demonstrative, ‘this’)  
    trānsversīs itineribus: abl. abs.; iter can mean ‘route’ as well as ‘journey’

## 30h. Marcus Tullius Cicero

itineribus in vīllam, quae ā marī nōn longē aberat, fūgit indeque 75  
 nāvem cōnscedit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Cum, aliquotiēns in  
 altum prōvectus, ventīs adversīs relātus esset, neque iactātiōnem  
 maris patī posset, taedium tandem et fugae et vītae eum cēpit; 80  
 aliquandō regressus ad vīllam, “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe  
 servātā.” Adventantibus percussōribus, servī parātī ad dīmicandum 80  
 erant; sed ipse eōs dēpōnere lectīcam et quiētōs patī quod sors  
 inīqua cōgeret iussit. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervīcem  
 praebentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque praecīsae sunt;  
 caput relātum est ad Antōniūm iussūque eius inter duās manūs in  
 rōstrīs positum. 85

**absum, -esse, āfūi:** to be away, be absent, 5  
**adventō (1):** to approach, come to , 1  
**aliquandō:** sometimes, at some time, 3  
**aliquotiēns:** several times, 1  
**altus, -a, -um:** high, lofty, tall, 2  
**Antōniūs, -ī m.:** Antonius, 5  
**cervix, cervīcīs f.:** neck, 1  
**cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctūm:** to collect, compel, 6  
**cōnscedō, -ere, -ndī, -nsum:** climb, mount 1  
**dēponō, -ere, -posūi:** put down, deposit, 5  
**dīmicō (1):** to fight, struggle, contend, 3  
**ēdō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditūs:** put forth, give out, 5  
**fuga, -ae f.:** flight, haste, exile, speed, 2  
**iactātiō, -ōnis f.:** tossing, shaking; motion, 1  
**immōtūs, -a, -um:** unmoved, immovable, 1  
**inīquus, -a, -um:** uneven, unequal, not fair, 2  
**iussus, -ūs m.:** order, *iussū* by order, 2  
**lectīca, -ae f.:** litter, couch-sedan, 2  
**longē:** far, 4  
**Macedonia, -ae f.:** Macedonia, 1

75 **in:** toward...

**aberat:** impf. absum

76 **trānsitūrus:** intending to...; fut. pple  
 in altum: into the deep; i.e. open sea

77 **ventīs adversīs:** by...; abl. of means  
 relātus esset: cum clause plpf. subj. referō  
 78 **patī:** dep. inf. patior, ‘endure’

**posset:** impf. subj. possum; cum clause  
 fugae, vītae: for...; objective gen. sg.

79 **regressus:** pf. dep. pple regredior  
**Moriar:** either (1) 1s fut. dep. or (2)  
 jussive 1s pres. subj. (‘let me...’)

**manus, -ūs f.:** hand; group 7  
**mare, marīs n.:** sea, 6  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.:** ship, boat, 2  
**patiōr, -ī, passus:** suffer, endure; allow, 7  
**percussor, -ōris m.:** murderer, assassin, 2  
**praebēō, -ēre, -ūi, -itūm:** present, put forth, 4  
**praecīdō, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum:** cut off, 3  
**promineō, -ēre:** extend, jut out, overhang, 1  
**quiētūs, -a, -um:** resting, calm, undisturbed 4  
**referō, -ferre, -tūlī:** to report, bring back, 7  
**regredior, -ī, aggressus sum:** step back, 3  
**rōstra, -ōrum n.:** speaker’s platform, 2  
**saepe:** often, 3  
**servō (1):** save, keep, preserve, 7  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 6  
**sors, sortīs f.:** lot, casting of lots, 3  
**taedium, -ī n.:** weariness, disgust, loathing, 1  
**tandem:** finally, at last, at length, in the end, 6  
**vīlla, -ae f.:** villa, cottage, 4

80 **servātā:** PPP; supply agent ‘by me’

**Adventantibus percussoribus:** abl. abs.

**parātī:** predicative nom. PPP, parō

**ad dīmicandum:** for...; + gerund (-ing)

81 **eōs...patī:** that...; ind. disc., dep. patior  
 lectīcam: Cicero is transported along the  
 road in a litter carried by slaves

**quod...cōgeret:** because...; alleged cause

82 **prōminentī, praebentī:** for him...; dat. of  
 interest with two dat. sg. pres. pples

85 **positūm (est):** was placed; caput is subject  
 the body parts were nailed to the platform

## 30i. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Quamdiū rēs pūblica lībera stābat, Cicerō in eam cūrās 86  
cōgītatiōnēsque ferē omnēs suās cōnferēbat et plūs operaē pōnēbat  
in agendō quam in scribendō. Cum autem omnia potestātē ūnīus  
C. Iūlii Caesaris tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec indignīs  
homine doctō voluptātibus. Vītāns cōnspectum forī urbiske, rūra 90  
peragrābat abdēbatque sē, quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Cum  
animus autem nihil agere nōn poterat, sē ad philosophiam referre  
cōnstituit atque ita honestissimē molestiās dēpōnere. Huic studiō  
Cicerō adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et iam senex omnem  
cūram ad scribendum convertit. Eō modō plūra brevī tempore, 95  
ēversā rē pūblicā, scripsit, quam multīs annīs, eā stante, scripserat.

- abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus:** to hide, put away, 2  
**angor, -ōris m.:** anguish, vexation, trouble, 1  
**brevis, -e:** short, brief, 5  
C.: Gaius, 5  
**cōgītatio, -tiōnis f.:** thinking over, reflection 1  
**conferō, -ferre:** bring together, collect, 4  
**conspectum, -i n.:** sight, look; view, 1  
**convertō, -ere, -i, -rsus:** turn, reverse, 6  
**cūra, -ae f.:** care, concern, worry, 5  
**dēdō, -ere:** to give over, surrender, 7  
**dēponō, -ere, -posuī:** put down, deposit, 5  
**doceō, -ere, -ui, -ctus:** teach, tell, 4  
**eō, ire, iī, itūrus:** go, 2  
**ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversum:** overturn, 1  
**ferē:** almost, nearly, closely, 7  
**hīc:** here, 1  
**homō, -inis m./f.:** man, mortal, human, 4  
**honestus, -a, -um:** respectable, honorable, 1  
**indignus, -a, -um:** unworthy, undeserving, 1  
**Iūlius, -i m.:** Julius, 4

- 86 **in eam:** on it; i.e. the republic  
**plūs operaē:** more effort; ‘more of effort,’  
88 **agendō, scribendō:** abl. sg. gerund (-ing)  
**cum...tenērentur:** since...  
**potestātē:** abl. means  
**ūnīus:** of one man; gen. sg. pronomial ūnūs  
89 **angōribus:** dat. ind. obj.  
90 **homine doctō:** of...; abl. of respect  
governed by dat. pl. adj. indignus  
**voluptātibus:** dat. ind. obj.  
**vītāns:** nom. pres. pple; Cicero is subject  
**forī urbiske:** objective gen. sg.

- liber, libera, liberum:** free, 4  
**licet, -ēre, -uit:** it is allowed, permitted, 3  
**modo:** only, merely, simply; just now, 3  
**molestia, -ae f.:** trouble, annoyance, 1  
**opera, -ae f.:** effort, exertion, work, 3  
**peragrō (1):** to pass through, traverse, 1  
**philosophia, -ae f.:** philosophy, 1  
**plūs, plūris n.:** more, 4  
**potestās, -tatis f.:** power; rule, sovereignty, 4  
**quamdiū:** how long?; as long as, 2  
**quantus, -a, -um:** how much, how great, 3  
**referō, -ferre, -tuli:** to report, bring back, 7  
**rūs, rūris n.:** country; fields, estate, 1  
**scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum:** to write, 6  
**senex, senis m.:** old man, 2  
**stō (1):** to stand, 3  
**studium, -i n.:** zeal, desire, pursuit, 5  
**tribō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum:** assign, bestow 3  
**vītō (1):** avoid, evade, shun, 3

- 91 **quantum:** as much as; + impers. licēbat  
92 **nihil agere:** to do anything  
93 **cōnstituit:** decided  
    **huic studiō:** to...; dat. ind. obj.  
94 **adulēscēns...:** as a youth...  
**multum temporis:** much time; partitive gen  
95 **ad scribendum:** acc. gerund (-ing)  
**eō modō:** in this way; abl. of manner  
**plūra:** neut. acc. pl., add the word ‘things’  
96 **ēversā rē pūblicā:** abl. abs.  
**multīs annīs:** within...; abl. of time within  
**eā stante:** while...; abl. abs., eā = rē pūblicā

	<u>1st Declension</u>		<u>2nd Declension (m.)</u>		<u>2nd Declension (n.)</u>	
Nom.	<b>copia</b>	<b>copiae</b>	<b>legatus</b>	<b>legatī</b>	<b>proelium</b>	<b>proelia</b>
Gen.	<b>copiae</b>	<b>copiārum</b>	<b>legatī</b>	<b>legatōrum</b>	<b>proeliī</b>	<b>proeliōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>copiae</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatō</b>	<b>legatīs</b>	<b>proeliō</b>	<b>proeliīs</b>
Acc.	<b>copiaṁ</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatum</b>	<b>legatōs</b>	<b>proelium</b>	<b>proelia</b>
Abl.	<b>copiā</b>	<b>copīs</b>	<b>legatō</b>	<b>legatīs</b>	<b>proeliō</b>	<b>proeliīs</b>
	<u>3rd Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>3rd Declension (n.)</u>			
Nom.	mīles	mīlites			iter	itinera
Gen.	mīlitīs	mīlitum			itineris	itinерum
Dat.	mīlitī	mīlibus			itinerī	itinерibus
Acc.	mīlitem	mīlites			iter	itinera
Abl.	mīlite	mīlibus			itinere	itinерibus
	<u>4th Declension (m/f)</u>		<u>4th Declension (n.)</u>			
Nom.	<b>manus</b>	<b>manūs</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Gen.	<b>manūs</b>	<b>manuum</b>			<b>cornūs</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
Dat.	<b>manuī</b>	<b>manibus</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornuibus</b>
Acc.	<b>manum</b>	<b>manūs</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
Abl.	<b>manū</b>	<b>manibus</b>			<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornuibus</b>
	<u>5th Declension (m/f)</u>					
Nom.	rēs	rēs				
Gen.	rēi	rērum				
Dat.	rēi	rēbus				
Acc.	rem	rēs				
Abl.	rē	rēbus				
	<u>Selected Pronouns</u>					
Nom.	is	<i>he</i>	ea	<i>she</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Gen.	eius	<i>his</i>	eius	<i>her</i>	eius	<i>its</i>
Dat.	eī	<i>to/for him</i>	eī	<i>to/for her</i>	eī	<i>to/for it</i>
Acc.	eum	<i>him</i>	eam	<i>her</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Abl.	eō	<i>with/from him</i>	eā	<i>with/from her</i>	eō	<i>with/from it</i>
Nom.	eī	<i>they</i>	eae	<i>they</i>	ea	<i>they</i>
Gen.	eōrum	<i>their</i>	eārum	<i>their</i>	eōrum	<i>their</i>
Dat.	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>	eīs	<i>to/for them</i>
Acc.	eōs	<i>them</i>	eās	<i>them</i>	ea	<i>them</i>
Abl.	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>	eīs	<i>with/from them</i>
Nom.	quī	que	quod	quī	que	<i>who, which, that</i>
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	<i>whose, of whom/which</i>
Dat.	cūī	cūī	cūī	quibus	quibus	<i>to whom/which</i>
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	<i>whom, which, that</i>
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	<i>by/with/from whom/which</i>

Nom.	ille	illa	illud	<i>that</i>	hic	haec	hoc	<i>this</i>
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	<i>of that</i>	huius	huius	huius	<i>of this</i>
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	<i>to/for that</i>	huic	huic	huic	<i>to/for this</i>
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	<i>that</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	<i>this</i>
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	<i>with/from that</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	<i>b/w/f this</i>
Nom.	illī	illae	illa	<i>those</i>	hī	hae	haec	<i>these</i>
Gen.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	<i>of those</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	<i>of these</i>
Dat.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>to those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>to these</i>
Acc.	illōs	illās	illa	<i>those</i>	hōs	hās	haec	<i>these</i>
Abl.	illīs	illīs	illīs	<i>with/from those</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	<i>with/from these</i>

	reflexive pronoun	possessive reflexive adjective					
Nom.	---	suus	sua	suum	suī	suae	sua
Gen.	suī	suī	suae	suī	suōrum	suārum	suōrum
Dat.	sibi	suō	suae	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs
Acc.	sē	suum	suam	suum	suōs	suās	sua
Abl.	sē	suō	suā	suō	suīs	suīs	suīs

### Adjectives and Adverbs

Decl.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup>	altus, -a, -um <i>high</i>	altior, altius <i>higher</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest, very high, most high</i>
	altē <i>deeply</i>	altius <i>more deeply</i>	altissimē <i>very highly, most highly</i>
3 <sup>rd</sup>	fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>braver, more brave</i>	fortissimus, -a, -um <i>bravest, very brave, most brave</i>
	fortiter <i>bravely</i>	fortius <i>more bravely</i>	fortissimē <i>very bravely, most bravely</i>

### Irregular Adjectives and Adverbs

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
magnus, -a, -um <i>great</i>	maior, maius <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>greatest</i>
parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>
multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	---, plus <i>more</i>	plurimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love**

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	amō amās amat	amāmus amātis amant	amor amāris amātur	I am loved
Impf.	amābam amābās amābat	amābāmus amābātis amābant	amābar amābāris amābātūr	I was being loved
Fut.	amābō amābis amābit	amābimus amābitis amābunt	amābor amāberis amābitur	I will be loved
Perf.	amāvī amāvistī amāvit	amāvimus amāvistis amāvērunt	amāta sum amāta es amāta est	I have been loved was loved
Plpf.	amāveram amāverās amāverat	amāverāmus amāverātis amāverant	amāta eram amāta erās amāta erat	I had been loved
Fut. Pf	amāverō amāveris amāverit	amāverimus amāveritis amāverint	amāta erō amāta eris amāta erit	I will have been loved
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	amem amēs amet	amēmus amētis ament	amer amēris ametur	same as indicative
Impf.	amārem amārēs amāret	amārēmus amārētis amārent	amārer amārēris amāretur	
Perf.	amāverim amāverīs amāverit	amāverīmus amāverītis amāverint	amāta sīm amāta sīs amāta sit	amātae sīmus amātae sītis amātae sint
Plpf.	amāvissēm amāvissēs amāvissētis amāvisset	amāvissēmus amāvissētis amāvissent	amāta essem amāta essēs amāta esset	amātae essēmus amātae essētis amātae essent
<b>Imperative</b>				
	amā	amāte	love!	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	amāns (amantis)	loving		
Perf.	amātūrus, -a, -um	going to love	amātus, -a, -um amandus, -a, -um	having been loved going to be loved
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	amāre	to love	amārī	to be love
Perf.	amāvisse	to have loved	amātūm esse	to have been loved
Fut.	amātūrum esse	to be going to love		

**videō, vidēre, vīdī, visum: to see**

	active		translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	videō vidēs videt	vidēmus vidētis vident	<i>I see</i>	videor vidēris vidētur	<i>I am seen</i>
Impf.	vidēbam vidēbās vidēbat	vidēbāmus vidēbātis vidēbant	<i>I was seeing</i>	vidēbar vidēbāris vidēbātur	<i>I was being seen</i>
Fut.	vidēbō vidēbis vidēbit	vidēbimus vidēbitis vidēbunt	<i>I will see</i>	vidēbor vidēberis vidēbitur	<i>I will be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdī vīdistī vīdit	vīdimus vīdistis vīderunt	<i>I have seen</i>	vīsa sum vīsa es vīsa est	<i>I have been seen</i> <i>was seen</i>
Plpf.	vīderam vīderās vīderat	vīderāmus vīderātis vīderant	<i>I had seen</i>	vīsa eram vīsa erās vīsa erat	<i>I had been seen</i>
Fut.pf.	vīderō vīderis vīderit	vīderimus vīderitis vīderint	<i>I will have seen</i>	vīsa erō vīsa eris vīsa erit	<i>I will have been seen</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	videam videās videat	videāmus videātis videant	same as indicative	videar videāris videatur	same as indicative
Impf.	vidērem vidērēs vidēret	vidērēmus vidērētis vidērent		vidērer vidērēris vidērētur	
Perf.	vīderim vīderīs vīderit	vīderīmus vīderītis vīderint		vīsa sim vīsa sīs vīsa sit	vīsa sīmus vīsa sītis vīsa sint
Plpf.	vīdissem vīdissēs vīdisset	vīdissēmus vīdissētis vīdissent		vīsa essem vīsa essēs vīsa esset	vīsa essēmus vīsa essētis vīsa essent
<b>Imperative</b>					
	vidē	vidēte	<i>see!</i>		
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	vidēns (videntis)		<i>seeing</i>		
Perf.	vīsūrus, -a, -um			vīsus, -a, -um	<i>having been seen</i>
Fut.			<i>going to see</i>	videndus, -a, -um	<i>going to be seen</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	vidēre		<i>to see</i>	vidērī	<i>to be seen</i>
Perf.	vīdisse		<i>to have seen</i>	vīsum esse	<i>to have been seen</i>
Fut.	vīsūrum esse		<i>to be going to see</i>		

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: to lead**

	active	translation	passive	translation	
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	dūcō dūcis dūcit	dūcimus <i>I lead</i> dūcītis dūcunt	dūcor dūceris dūcitur	dūcimur dūciminī dūcuntur	<i>I am led</i>
Impf.	dūcēbam dūcēbas dūcēbat	dūcēbāmus <i>I was leading</i> dūcēbātis dūcēbānt	dūcēbar dūcēbāris dūcēbātur	dūcēbāmur dūcēbāminī dūcēbāntur	<i>I was being led</i>
Fut.	dūcam dūcēs dūcet	dūcēmus <i>I will lead</i> dūcētis dūcent	dūcar dūcēris dūcetur	dūcēmur dūcēminī dūcentur	<i>I will be led</i>
Perf.	dūxī dūxistī dūxit	dūximus <i>I have led</i> dūxistis dūxerunt	ducta sum ducta es ducta est	ductae sumus ductae estis ductae sunt	<i>I have been led</i> <i>was led</i>
Plpf.	dūxeram dūxerās dūxerat	dūxerāmus <i>I had led</i> dūxerātis dūxerant	ducta eram ducta erās ducta erat	ductae erāmus ductae erātis ductae erant	<i>I had been led</i>
Fut. Pf	dūxerō dūxeris dūxerit	dūxerimus <i>I will have led</i> dūxeritis dūxerint	ducta erō ducta eris ducta erit	ductae erimus ductae eritis ductae erunt	<i>I will have been led</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	dūcam dūcās dūcat	dūcāmus same as dūcātis indicative dūcant	dūcar dūcāris dūcatur	dūcāmur dūcāminī dūcantur	same as indicative
Impf.	dūcerem dūcerēs dūceret	dūcerēmus dūcerētis dūcerent	dūcerer dūcerēris dūceretur	dūcerēmur dūcerēminī dūcerentur	
Perf.	dūxerim dūxerīs dūxerit	dūxerīmus dūxerītis dūxerint	ducta sim ducta sīs ducta sit	ductae sīmus ductae sītis ductae sint	
Plpf.	dūxissem dūxissēs dūxisset	dūxissēmus dūxissētis dūxissent	ducta essem ducta essēs ducta esset	ductae essēmus ductae essētis ductae essent	
<b>Imperative</b>					
	dūc	ducite	<i>lead!</i>		
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	ducēns (dūcentis)	<i>leading</i>			
Perf.			ductus, -a, -um	<i>having been led</i>	
Fut.	ductūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to lead</i>	ducendus, -a, -um	<i>going to be led</i>	
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	dūcere	<i>to lead</i>	dūcī	<i>to be lead</i>	
Perf.	dūxisse	<i>to have led</i>	ductum esse	<i>to have been led</i>	
Fut.	ductūrum esse	<i>to be going to lead</i>			

**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take**

	active	translation	passive	translation
<b>Indicative</b>				
Pres.	capiō	capimus <i>I take</i>	capior	capimur <i>I am taken</i>
	capis	capitis	caperis	capiminī
	capit	capiunt	capitur	capuntur
Impf.	capiēbam	capiēbāmus <i>I was taking</i>	capiēbar	capiēbāmur <i>I was being taken</i>
	capiēbās	capiēbātis	capiēbāris	capiēbāminī
	capiēbat	capiēbant	capiēbātur	capiēbāntur
Fut.	capiam	capiēmus <i>I will take</i>	capiar	capiēmur <i>I will be taken</i>
	capiēs	capiētis	capiēris	capiēminī
	capiet	capiēt	capietur	capiēntur
Perf.	cēpī	cēpimus <i>I have taken</i>	capta sum	captae sumus <i>I have been taken</i>
	cēpistī	cēpistis	capta es	captae estis <i>was taken</i>
	cēpit	cēpērunt	capta est	captae sunt
Plpf.	cēperam	cēperāmus <i>I had taken</i>	capta eram	captae erāmus <i>I had been taken</i>
	cēperās	cēperātis	capta erās	captae erātis
	cēperat	cēperant	capta erat	captae erant
Fut. Pf	cēperō	cēperimus <i>I will have taken</i>	capta erō	captae erimus <i>I will have been taken</i>
	cēperis	cēperitis	capta eris	captae eritis
	cēperit	cēperint	capta erit	captae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>				
Pres.	capam	capāmus same as	capar	capāmur same as
	capās	capātis indicative	capāris	capāminī indicative
	capat	capant	capatur	capantur
Impf.	caperem	caperēmus	caperer	caperēmur
	caperēs	caperētis	caperēris	caperēminī
	caperet	caperent	caperetur	caperentur
Perf.	cēperim	cēperīmus	capta sim	captae sīmus
	cēperīs	cēperītis	capta sīs	captae sītis
	cēperit	cēperint	capta sit	captae sint
Plpf.	cēpissem	cēpissemus	capta essem	captae essēmus
	cēpissēs	cēpissētis	capta essēs	captae essētis
	cēpisset	cēpissent	capta esset	captae essent
<b>Imperative</b>				
	cape	capite	take!	
<b>Participle</b>				
Pres.	capiēns (capiēntis)	<i>taking</i>		
Perf.			captus, -a, -um	<i>having been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrus, -a, -um	<i>going to take</i>	capiēndus, -a, -um	<i>going to be taken</i>
<b>Infinitive</b>				
Pres.	capere	<i>to take</i>	cāpī	<i>to be take</i>
Perf.	cēpisse	<i>to have taken</i>	captum esse	<i>to have been taken</i>
Fut.	captūrum esse	<i>to be going to take</i>		

**audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītūm: to hear**

	active	translation	passive		translation
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	audīō audīs audiit	audiōmus <i>I hear</i> audiōtis audioint	audiōr audiōris audiōtūr	audiōmur audiōminī audiointur	<i>I am heard</i>
Impf.	audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat	audiēbāmus <i>I was hearing</i> audiēbātis audiēbānt	audiēbār audiēbāris audiēbātūr	audiēbāmūr audiēbāmīnī audiēbāntur	<i>I was being heard</i>
Fut.	audiām audiēs audiet	audiēmūs <i>I will hear</i> audiētis audiēnt	audiēr audiēris audiētūr	audiēmūr audiēmīnī audiēntur	<i>I will be heard</i>
Perf.	audīvī audīvīstī audīvīt	audiōvīmus <i>I have heard</i> audiōvīstīs audiōvīrunt	audiōta sum audiōta es audiōta est	audiōtae sumus audiōtae estis audiōtae sunt	<i>I have been heard</i> <i>was heard</i>
Plpf.	audiōverām audiōverās audiōverat	audiōverāmūs <i>I had heard</i> audiōverātīs audiōverant	audiōta eram audiōta erās audiōta erat	audiōtae erāmūs audiōtae erātīs audiōtae erant	<i>I had been heard</i>
Fut.pf	audiōverō audiōveris audiōverit	audiōverīmus <i>I will have heard</i> audiōverītīs audiōverīnt	audiōta erō audiōta eris audiōta erit	audiōtae erīmus audiōtae erītīs audiōtae erunt	<i>I will have been heard</i>
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	audiām audiās audiāt	audiāmūs    same as audiātīs    indicative audiānt	audiār audiāris audiātūr	audiāmūr audiāmīnī audiāntur	same as indicative
Impf.	audiērem audiērēs audiēret	audiērēmūs audiērētīs audiērent	audiērēr audiērēris audiērētūr	audiērēmūr audiērēmīnī audiērēntur	
Perf.	audiōverīm audiōverītīs audiōverīt	audiōverīmūs audiōverītīs audiōverīnt	audiōta sim audiōta sīs audiōta sit	audiōtae sīmūs audiōtae sītīs audiōtae sint	
Plpf.	audiōvīsem audiōvīssēs audiōvīsset	audiōvīssēmūs audiōvīssētīs audiōvīsset	audiōta essem audiōta essēs audiōta esset	audiōtae essēmūs audiōtae essētīs audiōtae essent	
<b>Imperative</b>					
	audi	audiētē	hear!		
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	audiēns (audientis)	hearing			
Perf.			audiōtūs, -a, -um	having been heard	
Fut.	audiōtūrus, -a, -um	going to hear	audiendūs, -a, -um	going to be heard	
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	audiōre	to hear	audiōrī	to be heard	
Perf.	audiōvīsse	to have heard	audiōtūm esse	to have been heard	
Fut.	audiōtūrum esse	to be going to hear			

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: to be				possum, posse, potuī, -- : to be able, can			
			translation				translation
<b>Indicative</b>							
Pres.	sum	sumus	<i>I am</i>	possum	possumus	<i>I am able, can</i>	
	es	estis		potes	potestis		
	est	sunt		potest	possunt		
Impf.	eram	erāmus	<i>I was</i>	poteram	poterāmus	<i>I was able, could</i>	
	erās	erātis		poterās	poterātis		
	erat	erant		poterat	poterant		
Fut.	erō	erimus	<i>I will be</i>	poterō	poterimus	<i>I will be able</i>	
	eris	eritis		poteris	poteritis		
	erit	erunt		poterit	poterunt		
Perf.	fuī	fuimus	<i>I have been,</i>	potuī	potuimus	<i>I have been able,</i>	
	fuistī	fuistis	<i>I was</i>	potuistī	potuistis	<i>I was able, could</i>	
	fuit	fuērunt		potuit	potuērunt		
Plpf.	fueram	fuerāmus	<i>I had been</i>	potueram	potuerāmus	<i>I had been able</i>	
	fuerās	fuerātis		potuerās	potuerātis		
	fuerat	fuerant		potuerat	potuerant		
Fut. Pf.	fuerō	fuerimus	<i>I will have been</i>	potuerō	potuerimus	<i>I will have been able</i>	
	fueris	fueritis	<i>been</i>	potueris	potueritis		
	fuerit	fuerint		potuerit	potuerint		
<b>Subjunctive</b>							
Pres.	sim	sīmus	same as	possim	possīmus	same as	
	sīs	sītis	indicative	possīs	possītis		
	sit	sint		possit	possint		
Impf.	essem	essēmus		possem	possēmus		
	essēs	essētis		possēs	possētis		
	esset	essent		posset	possent		
Perf.	fuerim	fuerīmus		potuerim	potuerīmus		
	fuerīs	fuerītis		potuerīs	potuerītis		
	fuerit	fuerint		potuerit	potuerint		
Plpf.	fuissem	fuissēmus		potuissem	potuissēmus		
	fuissēs	fuissētis		potuissēs	potuissētis		
	fuisset	fuissent		potuisset	potuissent		
<b>Imperative</b>							
	xxx			xxx			
<b>Infinitive</b>							
Pres.	esse		<i>to be</i>	posse		<i>to be able</i>	
Perf.	fuisse		<i>to have been</i>	potuisse		<i>to have been heard</i>	
Fut.	futūrum esse*		<i>to be going to be</i>	----			

\* *fore* is a common indeclinable alternative for *futūrum esse*.

eō, īre, i(v)ī, itūrum: to go			sequor, sequī, secūtus-a-um sum: to follow		
	active	translation	deponent		translation
<b>Indicative</b>					
Pres.	eō īs it	īmus ītis eunt	I go	sequor sequeris sequitur	sequimur sequiminī sequuntur
Impf.	ībam ībās ībat	ībāmus ībātis ībant	I was going	sequēbar sequēbāris sequēbātūr	sequēbāmūr sequēbāmīnī sequēbāntūr
Fut.	ībō ībis ībit	ībimus ībītis ībunt	I will go	sequar sequēris sequētūr	sequēmur sequēminī sequentūr
Perf.	īi īstī iit	iīmus īstis iērunt	I have gone, went	secūta sum secūta es secūta est	secūtae sumus secūtae estis secūtae sunt
Plpf.	ieram ierās ierat	ierāmus ierātis ierant	I had gone	secūta eram secūta erās secūta erat	secūtae erāmūs secūtae erātis secūtae erant
Fut. Pf.	ierō ieris ierit	ierimus ieritis ierint	I will have gone	secūta erō secūta eris secūta erit	secūtae erimus secūtae eritis secūtae erunt
<b>Subjunctive</b>					
Pres.	eam eās eat	ēamus ēātis eant	same as indicative	sequar sequāris sequātūr	sequāmūr sequāmīnī sequāntūr
Impf.	īrem īrēs īret	īrēmus īrētis īrent		sequerer sequerēris sequerētūr	sequerēmūr sequerēmīnī sequerēntūr
Perf.	ierim ieris ierit	ierimus ieritis ierunt		secūta sim secūta sīs secūta sit	secūtae sīmūs secūtae sītis secūtae sint
Plpf.	īsse īssēs īsset	īssēmus īssētis īssent		secūta essem secūta essēs secūta esset	secūtae essēmūs secūtae essētis secūtae essent
<b>Imperative</b>					
	ī	īte	go!	sequere	sequitor
<b>Participle</b>					
Pres.	iēns (euntis)	going	sequēns (gen. sequentis)		following
Perf.	---		secūtus, -a, -um		having followed
Fut.	itūrus, -a, -um	going to go	secūtūrus, -a, -um		going to follow
<b>Infinitive</b>					
Pres.	īre	to go	sequī		to follow
Perf.	īsse	to have gone	secūtūm esse		to have followed
Fut.	ītūrum esse	to be going to go	secūtūrum esse		to be going to follow

**volō, velle, voluī: to wish, want**

	active	translation	
<b>Indicative</b>			
Pres.	volō vīs vult	volumus <i>I wish</i>	← Irregular Present Indicative
Impf.	volēbam volēbās volēbat	volēbāmus <i>I was wishing</i>	
Fut.	volam volēs volet	volēmus <i>I will wish</i>	
Perf.	voluī voluistī voluit	voluimus <i>I have wished</i>	
Plpf.	volueram voluerās voluerat	voluerāmus <i>I had wished</i>	
Fut. Pf.	voluerō volueris voluerit	voluerimus <i>I will have wished</i>	
<b>Subjunctive</b>			
Pres.	velim velis velit	velimus      same as indicative	← Irregular Present Subjunctive
Impf.	vellem vellēs vellet	vellēmus      ← Irregular Imperfect Subjunctive	
Perf.	voluerim voluerīs voluerit	voluerīmus	
Plpf.	voluissem voluissēs voluisset	voluissēmus	
<b>Imperative</b>	xxxx	xxxx	wish!
<b>Participle</b>			
Pres.	volēns (gen. volentis)	wishing	
Perf.	xxxx		
Fut.	xxxx		
<b>Infinitive</b>			
Pres.	velle	to wish	← Irregular Infinitive
Perf.	voluisse	to have wished	
Fut.	xxxx		

### Uses of the Subjunctive in the Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita

Below is a list of subjunctives common in Caesar's *Gallic War* and Cicero's *1<sup>st</sup> Catilinarian*. The superscript denotes how many times each subjunctive occurs in *Fabulae Ab Urbe Condita*.

The most common subjunctives in this book are cum-clauses<sup>27</sup> and purpose clauses<sup>15</sup> which use imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Some uses of the subjunctive, notably conditions (if-then clauses) and relative clause of characteristic, are not found in the book.

	<u>how to identify</u>		<u>special translation</u>	<u>example</u>
1. Purpose, adverbial or relative	<i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	may/might would	<i>ut</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>so that</i> Aeneas <b>might send</b>	
2. Result, adverbial or noun clause	<b>tantus, tam, ita + ut/ut nōn</b>	none	<i>ut</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>that</i> Aeneas <b>sent</b>	
3. Cum-Clauses	<i>Cum</i> + subjunctive	none	<i>Cum</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>When</i> Aeneas <b>sent</b>	
4. Indirect Question	interrogatives: e.g. <i>quis, cūr</i>	none	<i>nōvit quōs</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>he learned whom</i> Aeneas <b>sent</b>	
5. Indirect Command	commanding verb + <i>ut/nē</i> (neg.)	none	<i>persuāsit ut</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>he persuaded that</i> Aeneas <b>send</b>	
6. Relative Clause of Characteristic	<i>quī, quod</i> + subj.	none/would	<i>quōs</i> Aeneas mitteret <i>the sort whom</i> Aeneas <b>would send</b>	
7. Verb in Subordinate Clause in Ind. Disc.	any subordinate verb in an acc. + inf. construction	none	<i>eōs, sī id</i> mitteret, <i>lēgere</i> <i>that they read it, if he sent it</i>	
8. Optative Subj. (subj. of wish)	main verb (neg. <i>nē</i> ) often with <i>utinam/ut</i>	May....! would that....!	<i>Utinam eōs mittat?</i> <i>Would that he may see</i>	
9. Jussive Subj.	main verb (neg. <i>nē</i> ) often in 3s or 3p	let/should	Aeneas mittat <i>Let Aeneas send...</i>	
10. Quod clause	quod + subjunctive	none	quod Aeneas mitteret <i>because Aeneas sent...</i>	
11. Future-Less-Vivid	<i>sī</i> pres. subj., pres. subj.	should/would	<i>sī sit, mittat</i> <i>if he should be...he would send</i>	
12. Pres. Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> impf. subj., impf. subj.	were/would	<i>sī esset, mitteret</i> <i>if he were... he would send</i>	
13. Past Contrafactual	<i>sī</i> plpf. subj., plpf. subj.	had/would have	<i>sī fuisse, mīsisset</i> <i>if he had been... would have</i>	

## Alphabetized Core Vocabulary List (Words 8 or More Times)

This is an alphabetized list of the running core vocabulary found at the beginning of this commentary. To use this book properly, readers should review and memorize the running core vocabulary as they read the stories. If they encounter a word in the text that is not found in the corresponding vocabulary, it is most likely in the running core vocabulary and the list below.

- ā, ab, abs:** (away) from, out of, 87
- ac:** and, and also, 17
- acciō -ere -cēpī -ceptum:** receive, accept, 12
- ad:** to, toward; near, 108
- addō, -ere, -dīdī, -ditum:** to bring to, add, 7
- adulēscens, -ntis m./f.:** youth, 9
- adversus, -a, -um:** opposite, facing (acc) 13
- Aenēās, -ae m.:** Aeneas, 7
- Āfrica, -ae f.:** Africa, 12
- ager, agrī m.:** land, field, territory, 19
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum:** drive, lead, spend, 26
- Albānus, -a, -um:** of Alba Longa, Albans, 10
- alius, -a, -ud:** other, another, else, 29
- alter, -era, -erum:** other (of two), second, 7
- Ancus, -ī m.:** Ancus, 6
- animus, -ī m.:** soul, spirit, breath; pride, 17
- annus, -ī m.:** year, 36
- ante:** before, in front of ; adv. before, 8
- anteā:** before, earlier, formerly, previously, 9
- aperiō, -īre, -ūī, apertum:** open, disclose, 5
- appellō (1):** call (by name), name, 17
- apud:** among, in the presence of , 9
- aqua, -ae f.:** water, 8
- arma, -ōrum n.:** arms, equipment, tools, 14
- arx, arcis m.:** citadel, hilltop, 5
- Asia, -ae f.:** Asia Minor, 9
- at:** but; mind you; but, you say, 9
- atque:** and, and also, and even, 43
- audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum:** to hear, listen to, 10
- aut:** or , 17
- autem:** however, moreover, 16
- auxilium, -ī n.:** help, aid, assistance, 11
- bellum, -ī, n.:** war, 53
- bonus, -a, -um:** good, kind, useful, 9
- Brūtus, -ī m.:** Brutus, 13

- Caesar, -is m.:** Caesar, 31
- cāpiō, -ere, cēpī, captūm:** to take, seize, 25
- captīvus, -ī m.:** captive, 10
- caput, capitīs, n.:** head; life, 18
- Carthāginiēnsis, -is m.:** Carthaginian, 14
- Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.:** Carthage, 12
- castra, -ōrum n.:** camp, 12
- causa, -ae f.:** reason, legal case; causā, for the sake of, 8
- Cicerō, Cicerōnis m.:** Cicero, 19
- cīvilis, -e:** civil, of a citizen, 10
- cīvis, -is m/f.:** citizen, fellow citizen, 12
- cīvitās, cīvitātis f.:** city-state; citizenship, 16
- clārus, -a, -um:** clear, distinguished, famous 8
- claudō, -ere, -dī, -sum:** to close, enclose, 6
- Clūsīnus, -a, -um:** of Clusium (town), 5
- coepī, coepisse, coeptūm:** begin, 13
- Collātīnus, -ī m.:** Collatinus, 5
- conciliō (1):** win over, unite, 9
- concordia, -ae f.:** harmony, agreement, 8
- condō, -ere, condidī, -ditum:** to found, store away, hide, 6
- conficiō, -ere:** to finish (off), accomplish, 10
- coniūnx, -iugis m/f.:** husband, wife, spouse, 9
- consensus, -ūs m.:** agreement, consent, 5
- cōnsilium, -ī n.:** plan, advice; council, 14
- constituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** decide, establish, 13
- cōnsul, -is m.:** consul, 33
- contrā:** against, 11
- corpus, corporīs, n.:** body, 10
- cređō, -ere, -didī, -ditum:** believe, trust; lend, 7
- creō (1):** to create, 21
- cum:** with (+ abl.); when, since, although, 127
- cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum:** desire, long for, 8
- Cūria, -ae f.:** senate house, Curia, 7
- Cūriātius, -ī m.:** Curiatius, 7
- dē:** (down) from, about, concerning (abl.), 29
- deinde:** then, thereupon, 31
- deus, -ī m.:** god, divinity, deity, 10
- dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictūm:** say, speak, tell, 37
- dictātor, -oris m.:** dictator, 16
- diēs, -ētī m./f.:** day, time, season, 24
- dō, dare, dedī, datum:** give, put; grant, 36
- domus, -ī f.:** house, home, dwelling, 9
- dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductūm:** lead, draw, 10

- dum:** while, as long as, until, 16  
**duo, duae, duo:** two, 19  
**dux, ducis** m/f.: leader, guide, chieftain, 28  
**ē, ex:** out from, from, out of (+ abl.), 58  
**ēducō** (1): to bring up, rear, train, 5  
**ego:** I, 14  
**enim:** for, indeed, in truth, 24  
**et:** and, also, even, 179  
**etiam:** besides, also, even, 29  
**Etrūscus, -a, -um:** Etruscan, 13  
**exercitus, -ūs** m.: army, 37  
**expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum:** set forth, explain, 5  
**exsilium, -ī n.:** exile, 5  
**Fabius, -ī m.:** Fabius, 9  
**Fabricius, -ī m.:** Fabricius, 10  
**faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum:** make, do, 67  
**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum:** carry, bear, endure, 22  
**ferōx, -ōcis:** fierce, savage, 8  
**filia, -iae** f.: daughter, child, 12  
**filius, -ī m.:** son, child, 22  
**finitimus, -a, -um:** neighboring, bordering, 10  
**flūmen, -inis** n.: river, stream, 12  
**forte:** by chance, 11  
**forum, -ī n.:** forum, 8  
**frāter, -tris** m.: brother, 10  
**fugiō, -ere, fūgī:** to flee, hurry away, 11  
**Gabīi, -ōrum** m.: Gabii (town), 6  
**Gabīnus, -a, -um:** of Gabii, 6  
**Gallus, -a, -um:** Gaul, Gaul, 17  
**gēns, gentis** f.: clan, race, nation, herd, 9  
**gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum:** carry (on), wage, 15  
**gladius, -ī m.:** sword, 6  
**gravis, -e:** heavy, serious, severe; venerable, 8  
**habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itum:** have, hold, 26  
**Hannibal, -is** m.: Hannibal, 10  
**hic, haec, hoc:** this, that; he, she, it, 62  
**Hispānia, -ae** f.: Hispania, 16  
**honor, -ōris** m.: honor; offering, sacrifice, 8  
**hostis, -is** m./f.: stranger, enemy, foe, 26  
**iam:** now, already, soon, 28  
**ibi:** there, in that place, 13

- īdem, eadem, idem:** the same, 8  
**igitur:** therefore, then, accordingly, 14  
**ille, illa, illud:** that (famous); he, she, it, 32  
**imperātor, -ōris m.:** commander, 10  
**imperium, -ī n.:** power to command, rule, 23  
**impetus, -ūs m.:** attack, onset, assault, 8  
**in:** in (+ abl.) , into (+ acc.), 256  
**inde:** from there, then, afterward, 30  
**ingēns (1):** huge, immense, vast, 8  
**inquam, inquis, inquit:** to say, 19  
**īstituō, -ere, -ūī, -ūtum:** set up, establish, 12  
**inter:** between, among (+ acc.), 27  
**interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum:** kill, slay, 26  
**ipse, ipsa, ipsum:** -self; the very, 29  
**īrātus, -a, -um:** anger, 6  
**is, ea, id:** this, that; he, she, it, 167  
**ita:** so, thus, 33  
**Ītalia, -ae f.:** Italy, 17  
**itaque:** and so, 12  
**iter, itineris n.:** way, road, journey, 11  
**iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum:** to order, command, 36  
**iūs, iūris n.:** justice, law, right, 20  
**iuvensis, -is m.:** youth, young man, 11
- L.:** Lucius, 13  
**Latīnus, -a, -um:** Latin, 20  
**lēgātus, -ī m.:** ambassador, envoy, legate, 21  
**legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum:** read, choose, 7  
**lēx, lēgis f.:** law, regulation, decree, 11  
**līberī, -ōrum m.:** children, 9  
**locus -ī m. (pl. loca):** place, region, situation 16  
**Lucumō, Lucumōnis m.:** Lucumo, 5  
**lūdus, -ī m.:** game, sport; school, 6
- māstristratus, -ūs m.:** magistrate, officer, 5  
**magnus, -a, -um:** great, large; important, 27  
**Marius, -ī m.:** Marius, 24  
**māter, mātris f.:** mother, 11  
**mātrīmōnium, -ī n.:** marriage, 7  
**maximus, -a, -um:** greatest; especially 15  
**medius, -a, -um:** middle of, 8  
**mīlēs, mīlitis m.:** soldier, 16  
**mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum:** to send, let go, 26  
**mons, montis m.:** mountain, mount, 11

- morior, morī, mortuum:** to die; *mortuus*, dead 13  
**Mūcius, -iī m.:** Mucius, 7  
**mulier, mulieris f.:** woman, 5  
**multitūdō, -tūdinis f.:** multitude, 10  
**multus, -a, -um:** much, many, abundant, 24  
**nam:** for, 12  
**nascor, nascī, nātus sum:** be born, grow, 14  
**nē:** lest, that not, no, not, 12  
**nec:** and not, nor; nec...nec (neither...nor), 16  
**neque:** and not; neither...nor, 14  
**nihil:** nothing, 13  
**nōbilis, -e:** noble, 10  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.:** name, 19  
**nōn:** not, by no means, not at all, 47  
**novus, -a, -um:** new, 19  
**nox, noctis, f.:** night, 10  
**nūllus, -a, -um:** none, no, not any, 12  
**Numa, -ae m.:** Numa, 6  
**Numitor, -ōris, m.:** Numitor, 7  
**nuntiō (1):** announce, 7  
**omnis, omne:** every, all, 59  
**opus, -eris n.:** work, deed, toil, 9  
**orior, orīrī, ortus sum:** arise, spring up, 8  
**pār, paris:** equal, similar, even, 8  
**parō (1):** prepare, make (ready), 13  
**pars, partis, f.:** part; direction; faction, 26  
**pater, patris, m.:** father, 40  
**patria, -ae f.:** fatherland, country, 9  
**paucī, -ae, -a:** little, few, scanty, 10  
**pāx, pācis f.:** peace, 31  
**pecūnia, -ae f.:** money, 8  
**per:** through, over, across, 28  
**perīculum, -i n.:** risk, danger, peril, 8  
**persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum:** persuade, 9  
**petō, -ere, -īvī, petītum:** to seek, head for, 20  
**plebs, plēbis, f.:** common people, masses, 31  
**Pompeius, -i m.:** Pompey, 26  
**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum:** put, place, 9  
**pōns, pontis m.:** bridge, 7  
**populus, -i m.:** people; population, 35  
**Porsena, -ae m.:** Lars Porsena, 8  
**possum, posse, potuī:** be able, can, avail, 33

- post:** after, behind (+ acc.); afterward, next, 15
- postea:** after this, afterwards, 26
- praeda, -ae f.:** plunder, spoils (often, cattle) 7
- praesidium, -ī n.:** garrison, protection, 5
- prīmus -a -um:** first, 30
- prīncēps, -cipis m.:** leader; foremost, first 9
- prō:** before, in front of, for, 11
- proelium, -ī n.:** battle, 19
- proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum:** set out, depart, 16
- profugiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum:** flee, escape, 8
- propter:** on account of, because of, 8
- proximus, -a, -um:** nearest, next, 5
- pūblicus, -a, -um:** public, of the people 19
- puer, puerī, m.:** boy, 15
- pugna, -ae f.:** fight, 10
- Pyrrhus, -ī m.:** Pyrrhus (King of Epirus), 8
- quamquam:** although, 8
- que:** and, 149
- quī, quae, quod (quis? quid?):** who, which, that, 253
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam:** certain, 22
- quidem:** indeed, in fact, assuredly, certainly, 10
- Quīntius, -ī m.:** Quintius, 5
- quoque:** also, 18
- rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum:** to seize, snatch, 6
- redeō, -ire, -ivī:** go back, return, come back, 22
- rēgia, -ae f.:** palace, 9
- rēgnō (1):** to rule, reign, 17
- rēgnum, -ī n.:** kingdom, realm, power, 21
- Rēgulus, -ī m.:** Regulus, 9
- relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum:** leave behind, 10
- Remus, -ī m.:** Remus, 12
- rēs, reī, f.:** thing, matter, affair, business, 55
- resistō, -ere, -stītī:** stand still, halt; oppose, 7
- restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum:** replace, restore, 9
- rēx, rēgis m.:** king; *adj.* ruling, royal, 83
- Rōma, -ae f.:** Rome, 54
- Rōmānus, -a, -um:** Roman, 91
- Rōmulus, -ī m.:** Romulus, 22
- Sabīnus, -a, -um:** Sabine, 6
- sacer, sacra, sacrum:** sacred, holy, 8
- Scipiō, Scipiōnis m.:** Scipio, 27
- sē:** himself, herself, itself, themselves, 89

- sed:** but, moreover, however, 46  
**sēdes, sēdis f.:** seat; abode, home, 6  
**senātus, -ūs f.:** senate, 38  
**sequor, -ī, secūtus sum:** follow, attend, pursue, 17  
**Servius, -ī m.:** Servius, 13  
**servus, -ī, m.:** slave, 6  
**Sex.:** Sextus, 5  
**Sextus, -ī m.:** Sextus, 4  
**sī:** if (only), whether, in case that, 18  
**sōlus, -a, -um:** alone, only, lone, sole, 13  
**spēs, -eī f.:** hope, 8  
**statuō, -ere, -uiī, -ūtum:** decide, establish, set up, 8  
**sub:** under, 8  
**Sulla, -ae m.:** Sulla, 23  
**sum, esse, fui, futūrum:** to be, 412  
**summus, -a, -um:** highest, greatest, top of, 8  
**superior, -ius:** higher, upper, 6  
**superō (1):** to overcome, defeat, 12  
**suus, -a, -um:** his, her, its, their (own), 38  
  
**tam:** so, so much, so very, such, 8  
**tamen:** nevertheless, however, 22  
**Tanaquil, -is f.:** Tanaquil, 6  
**tantus, -a, -um:** so great, so much, so large, 14  
**Tarquinius, -ī m.:** Tarquinius, 46  
**tēlum, -ī n.:** weapon, arrow, spear, 6  
**tempus, -poris n.:** time, 17  
**teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum:** to hold, keep, 8  
**Tiberis, is m.:** Tiber, 13  
**tōtus -a, -um:** whole, entire, 12  
**trānseō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum:** pass (by), 14  
**trēs, tria:** three, 12  
**tribūnus, -ī m.:** tribune, officer, 11  
**tum:** then, at that time, 34  
**Turnus, -ī m.:** Turnus, 9  
  
**ubi:** where, when, 17  
**ūnus, -a, -um:** one, 18  
**urbs, urbis, f.:** city, 59  
**ut:** as, when (+ ind.); so that, in order that, 76  
**uterque, utraque, utrumque:** each (of two), both, 6  
**uxor, uxōris f.:** wife, spouse, 10  
  
**veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum:** come, go, 29  
**verbum, -ī n.:** word, speech, 8

- vērus, -a, -um:** true, real, 8  
**via, -ae, f.:** way, road, 9  
**victor, -ōris m.:** conquerer, vanquisher, 9  
**victoria, -ae f.:** victory, 9  
**videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum:** to see, 27  
**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum:** conquer, defeat, 19  
**vir, virī m.:** man, male, 20  
**virgō, virginis f.:** maiden, virgin, 11  
**virtūs, -ūtis f.:** valor, manhood, excellence, 12  
**vīs, vīs, f.:** force, power; *pl.* vīrēs, strength, 13  
**vīta, -ae f.:** life; livelihood, 9  
**vocō (1):** call, name; invite, summon, 9  
**volō, velle, voluī:** will, wish, be willing, 18  
**voluptās, -tātis f.:** pleasure, delight, 8  
**vōx, vōcis, f.:** voice, 7